

Class E178

Book .1

.W695







371 2

Joe W Thompson

Nov 3 1869

Dear Mr,

The enclosed contains  
the same as the  
one I gave you in  
last page.

John H. Thompson  
May 8 1858  
New York

312 poplar  
st

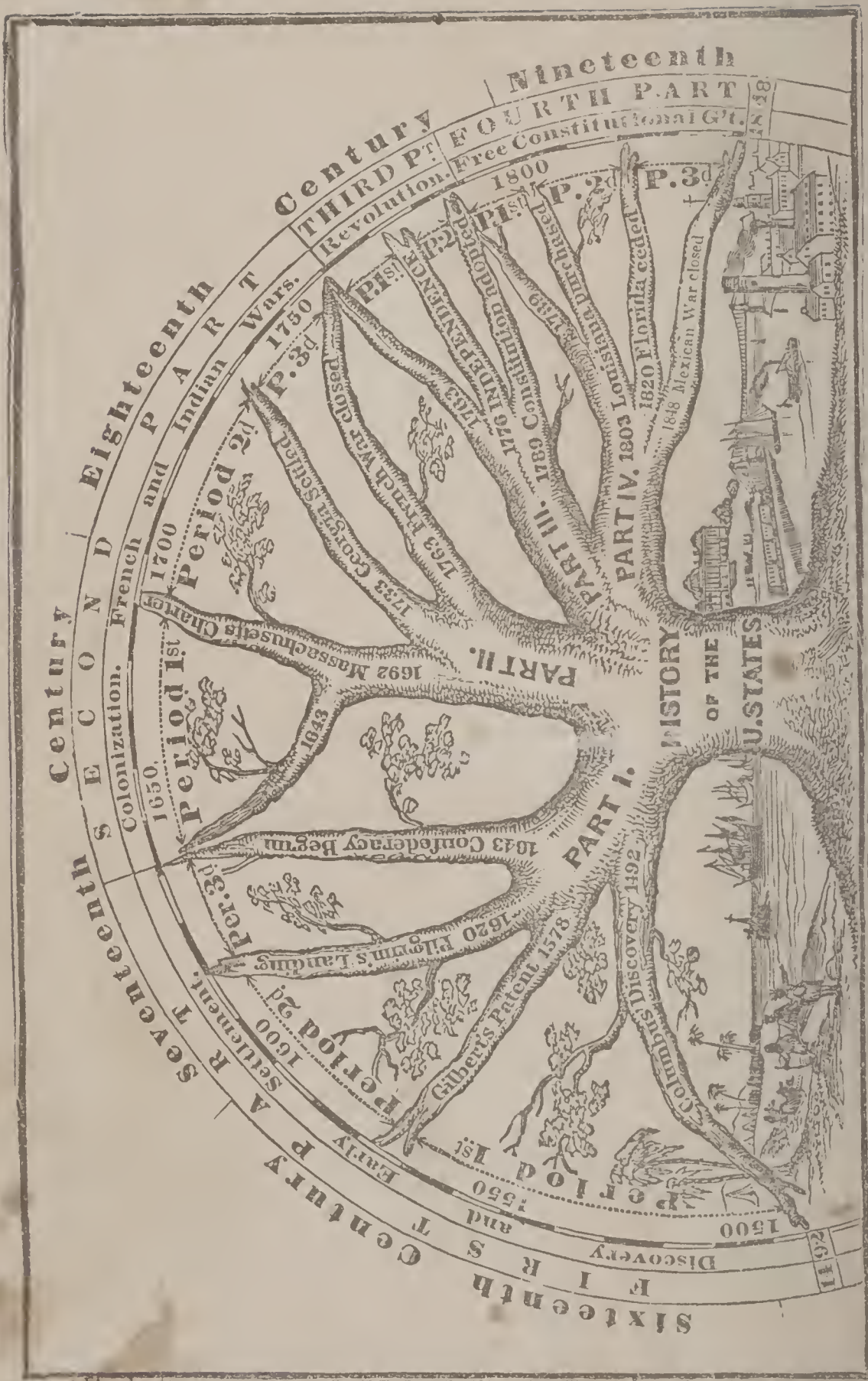




2

$\frac{2104584}{5873 = 2^2}$





CHRONOLOGICAL PLAN OF WILLARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

ABRIDGED HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES,  
LIBERTY  
PEACE AND SAFETY  
WITHIN  
THE CHAIN OF UNION  
WITHOUT  
VIOLENCE AND BRAUD  
OR  
REPUBLIC OF AMERICA



NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION.

BY EMMA WILLARD.

NEW YORK:

A. S. BARNES & BURR,

51 & 53 JOHN STREET.

SOLD BY BOOKSELLERS, GENERALLY, THROUGHOUT THE UNITED STATES

1860.

E 178

.1

W 695

**LINES TO EXPLAIN THE TITLE VIGNETTE**

In Union's Chain, within its spell,  
FREEDOM and PEACE and SAFETY dwell;  
Nor Lion Force, nor Serpent Guile,  
Shall harm the blessed Maids the while.

CITY OF NEW BEDFORD, MASS.

*January 15, 1850.*

At a meeting of the SCHOOL COMMITTEE, held this evening, it was

*Voted,* That "WILLARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," be introduced into the High School, and the several Grammar Schools in the City.

WILLIAM HOWE, SECRETARY.

OFFICE OF THE CONTROLLERS OF PUBLIC SCHOOLS, {  
FIRST SCHOOL DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA. }

*Philadelphia, January 31, 1851.*

At a meeting of the CONTROLLERS OF PUBLIC SCHOOLS, First District of Pennsylvania, held at the Controllers' Chamber, on Tuesday, December 10th, 1851, the following Resolution was adopted:—

*Resolved,* That "WILLARD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," be introduced as a class book into the Public Schools of this District.

ROBERT J. HEMPHILL, SECRETARY.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1849,

By A. S. BARNES & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

---

1187/15  
108



## P R E F A C E .

---

THE leading objects of the author of this work, have been to give the events of the history with clearness and accuracy; with such illustrations of time and place addressed to the eye, as shall secure their retention in the memory; and, at the same time, with such an order of arrangement, as will enable the mind to recall, at need, what it thus retains. This we regard as important, not only with respect to this particular study; but as rightly laying out the ground-plan of the intellect, so far as the whole range of history is concerned. We have endeavoured to make the book convenient,—by side notes with dates,—by numbered paragraphs of suitable length for reading classes,—and by questions on each paragraph, placed at the bottom of the page. These questions are so put, that youthful teachers may avail themselves of the author's long experience, to acquire a manner of questioning, which, while it is not obscure, will yet oblige the pupil to think, and which will bring into relief prominent points.

We have, indeed, been desirous to cultivate the memory, the intellect, and the taste. But much more anxious have we been to sow the seeds of virtue, by showing the good in such amiable lights, that the youthful heart shall kindle into desires of imitation. And we have been careful to give clear conceptions of those deeds, which are proper to imitate; while with regard to bad actions, we have, as far as possible, given the result, rather than the detail.

LC: 271-6065

There are those, who rashly speak, as if in despair of the fortunes of our republic ; because, say they, political virtue has declined. If so, then is there the more need to infuse patriotism into the breasts of the coming generation. And what is so likely to effect this national self-preservation, as to give our children, for their daily reading and study, such a record of the sublime virtues of the worthies of our earliest day,—and of Washington and his compatriots, as shall leave its due impress ? And what but the study of their dangers and toils,—their devotion of life and fortune, can make our posterity know, what our country, and our liberties have cost ? And what but the History of our peculiar, and complicated fabric of government, by which, it may be examined, as piece by piece the structure was built up, can impart such a knowledge of the powers it gives, and the duties it enjoins, as shall enable our future citizens, to become its enlightened and judicious supporters ?

*Hartford, Conn.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

Chapter.	Page
I. Definitions, &c. . . . .	13
II. The Aborigines, . . . . .	16

## PART I.

PERIOD	I. First Discovery—Columbus, &c. . . . .	21
I.	II. English Discoveries—French, . . . . .	24
1492.	III. Spanish Discoveries, Adventures and Cruelties—St. Augustine, . . . . .	27

PERIOD	I. Unsuccessful attempt of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others, . . . . .	33
II.	II. First settlement of Virginia, . . . . .	38
1578.	III. Early settlement of Virginia—continued, . . . . .	42
	IV. Virginia—Hudson river—Canada, . . . . .	45

PERIOD	I. Departure of the Pilgrims from England and their sojourn in Holland, . . . . .	51
III.	II. Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America, . . . . .	55
1620	III. The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets, . . . . .	58
	IV. Grand Council of Plymouth—New Hampshire—Massachusetts Bay, . . . . .	61
	V. The Colony of Massachusetts Bay, . . . . .	63
	VI. Rhode Island and its Founder, . . . . .	65
	VII. Connecticut and its Founders, . . . . .	68
	VIII. The Pequod War, . . . . .	72
	IX. Intolerance of the times—Anne Hutchinson—Rhode Island—New Hampshire—Delaware, . . . . .	76
	X Maryland—Virginia from 1631 to 1641, . . . . .	78
	XI. Massachusetts threatened—the Puritans in England—Vane—UNION BEGUN, . . . . .	81

## PART II.

	Chapter.	Page
PERIOD I. 1643.	I. Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion, 87	87
	II New York settled by the Dutch—taken by the English. 92	92
	III Pennsylvania and its Founder, - - - 93	93
	IV New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants, - 99	99
	V Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians, 101	101
	VI. King Philip's War—Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets, - - - - - 104	104
	VII. The Regicides—New Hampshire and Maine—Charter of Massachusetts annulled, - - - - 108	108
	VIII. New York—its Governors—Leisler—Quakers in Mas- sachusetts, - - - - - 112	112
	IX. Jesuit Missionaries of France—their Discoveries, - 115	115
	X. North and South Carolina—The Great Patent—Mr. Locke's Constitution, - - - - - 120	120
	XI. French and Indian War, - - - - 122	122
<hr/>		
PERIOD II. 1692.	I. Sir William Phipps—Cotton Mather—Salem Witch- craft—Schools—Yale College, - - - - 127	127
	II. European Politics—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War—Queen Anne's War soon begins, - - - - - 130	130
	III. Fletcher—Piracy—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York, - - - - - 133	133
	IV. Pennsylvania—Penn's second visit—Maryland, - 135	135
	V. The Huguenots—War with the Spaniards—Tuscaro- ras and Yamassees, - - - - - 136	136
	VI. Extension of the French Empire—New France, - 140	140
	VII. Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor, - - - - - 141	141
<hr/>		
PERIOD III. 1733.	I Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spa- niards of Florida—The Slave Trade—War of the French with the Chickasaws, - - - - 147	147
	II. Old French War—Capture of Louisburg—French and English claims to the basin of the Mississippi, - 150	150
	III. George Washington—his birth, parentage, and educa- tion—his conduct in places of trust, private and public, - - - - - 153	153

Chapter.	Page.
IV. Congress at Albany—Convention of governors in Virginia—Braddock, . . . . .	157
V. Remainder of the Campaign of 1755—Campaign of 1756, 161	
VI. Campaigns of 1757 and 1758, . . . . .	163
VII. The Campaign of 1759—Wolfe, . . . . .	166
VIII. Wars with the Indians, . . . . .	170

PART III.

PERIOD I. 1763	I. Causes of the Revolutionary War, . . . . .	175
	II. Congress at New York—Repeal of the Stamp Act . . . . .	179
	III. Second attempt to tax America—Opposition, . . . . .	182
	IV. Seizure of 'Tea—Boston Port Bill—Arrival of British Troops, . . . . .	186
	V. Congress at Philadelphia, . . . . .	188
	VI. War approaches—Massachusetts—British Parliament, 190	
	VII. The War begins by the Battle of Lexington, . . . . .	193
	VIII. Battle of Bunker Hill—Washington commander-in-chief, . . . . .	196
	IX. Invasion of Canada—Death of Montgomery, . . . . .	199
	X. Washington enters Boston—Disasters in Canada, . . . . .	203

PERIOD II. 1776.	I. Lord Howe attempts pacification—American defeat at Long Island, . . . . .	209
	II. Disasters following the defeat on Long Island, . . . . .	212
	III. American successes at Trenton and Princeton, . . . . .	216
	IV. Difficulties and exertions of Congress—Campaign of 1777, . . . . .	218
	V. Burgoyne' Invasion,—1777, . . . . .	220
	VI. Battle of Brandywine—British in Philadelphia—Germantown,—1777, . . . . .	224
	VII. Battle of Monmouth—Seat of War transferred to the South,—1778, . . . . .	229
	VIII. Campaigns of 1779 and 1780—the British conquer the South, . . . . .	232
	IX. Arnold's Treason, . . . . .	237
	X. Robert Morris—Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line—Cornwallis at the South, . . . . .	241
	XI. Campaign of 1781—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Cornwallis taken at Yorktown, . . . . .	245



Chapter	Page
XII. Vermont—Measures of Peace—Fears and Discontents of the Army happily quieted, . . . .	248
XIII. Depression subsequent to the War—Shays' Rebellion—Constitution formed, . . . .	251

## PART IV.

PERIOD I. 1789.	I. Organization of the New Government—The Funding System—Party lines strongly drawn, . . . .	24
	II. The Moravians—The Indians of the North West, . . . .	25
	III. America resents the indignities of France—Adams's Administration—Jefferson's, . . . .	266

PERIOD II. 1803.	I. War with Tripoli—Troubles with England and France, . . . .	273
	II. War of 1812—Condition of the Country—Hull's Surrender, . . . .	279
	III. Naval Successes, . . . .	282
	IV. Campaign of 1813—Massacre of Frenchtown, . . . .	285
	V. Northern Army—Loss of the Chesapeake—Creek War, . . . .	289
	VI. The Niagara Frontier—Battles of Chippewa and Bridgewater, . . . .	291
	VII. Washington taken by the British—Baltimore threatened, . . . .	295
	VIII. British invasion and defeat at New Orleans, . . . .	300
	IX. Peace with England—Naval combats—War with Algiers, . . . .	302
	X. Internal Improvements—Seminole War, . . . .	305

PERIOD III. 1820	I. The Missouri Question—The Tariff—Gen. Lafayette's Visit, . . . .	311
	II. Black Hawk's War—The Cholera—Nullification, . . . .	315
	III. The Aboriginal Tribes of the Mississippi go to the Far West—The Florida War, . . . .	319
	IV. The Bank Question—The Revulsion.—Van Buren's Administration—Harrison's Election and Death. . . .	324
	V Mr. Tyler's Administration—Mobs—Disturbances in Rhode Island-- Anti-Rentism—Mormonism, &c. . . .	328

Chapter.	Page.
VI. Texas--Mexico--Causes of Annexation and the Mexican War, . . . . .	333
VII. Mexican War--Army of Occupation, . . . . .	343
VIII. Army of the Centre--General Wool's march--Battle of Buena Vista, . . . . .	351
IX. Army of the West--Conquest of New Mexico and California, . . . . .	357
X. Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua--Revolt in New Mexico, . . . . .	362
XI. Scott's Invasion--Vera Cruz--Cerro Gordo, . . . . .	365
XII. State of the Army--Its march--Contreras--Churubusco, . . . . .	369
XIII. Armistice--Molinos del Rey--Chapultepec--Mexico, . . . . .	374
XIV. Puebla--Huamantla--Atlixco--Treaty of Peace, . . . . .	379

---

PERIOD I. Oregon--American California--Capt. Wilkes' Exploring Expedition--Capt. Fremont's Explorations . . . . .	387
1848. II. Train of Events by which California became a part of the American Republic--The Macnamara Project--Discovery of Gold, . . . . .	391
III. Taylor's Inauguration--Gloomy Close of the 30th Congress--The Causes of Danger and Trouble, as connected with the Slavery Question, . . . . .	394
IV. Congressional Eloquence of the First Session of the Thirty-first Congress, . . . . .	398
V The Committee of Thirteen--The "Omnibus Bill"--Death of Taylor and Inauguration of Fillmore--Separate Passage of the Compromise Measures--The Cuban Expedition--Liberia, . . . . .	401

THE  
STUDY OF AMERICAN HISTORY,

INTRODUCED BY

TEACHING THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

---

1. THE large painted chronographer, prepared to accompany this work, is to be hung in full view of the class, and the teacher furnished with a pointing rod about four feet in length, black at the end, as the paper of the chronographer is white.

2. *The proper use of the pointer constitutes an intelligible language addressed to the eye.* Therefore, the person using it should use it significantly, and never otherwise, and should always point in the same manner when he means the same thing.

3. In teaching the chronographer, when the person pointing has occasion to refer to a simple date, which is a point of time, let him carry the pointer directly to that point, and, without zigzag motions, rest it there while he has occasion to speak of that date or epoch. But if he is speaking of a period of time between two dates or epochs, as, for example, of Period I., let him carry the pointer directly to the earliest date (1492), and then move it slowly, and without wavering, over Period I., stopping exactly at its close (1578); always, in such cases, carrying the pointer with the course of time—that is, from left to right.



4. Whenever the teacher is using the pointer, to teach the chronographer, the pupil must give his eye, his ear, and his mind ; and then the chronographer will, by a mysterious process of the mind, be formed within, and become a part of the mind of every attentive scholar—where he may, ever after, have the plan, and read the principal dates of his country's chronology. But in order to have the internal chronographer perfect, it is necessary to observe attentively, and to learn patiently, at various times and in repeated lessons, the different parts of the one presented to the eye.

5. As success, in this case, depends on the class fixing their eyes on the chronographer, with the desire to learn it, short and lively lessons, in which the class shall be questioned as the teacher points, and in which all answer together, will be much better than long and dull ones.

6. Some explanations of the chronographer will, however, be needed. They will be given here, in connexion with questions and instructions on the general subject of chronology.

#### CHRONOGRAPHER EXPLAINED.

7. The word *chronographer* literally signifies something which delineates time. It is composed of two Greek words—*chronos*, time, and *grapho*, to delineate.

8. The picture presented is a chronographer of American history, because it refers to that history only. It is divided into two parts. The *outer part* is composed of several circular lines, the whole of which, taken together, make up what is here called the *circle of time*. It represents the whole time of the American history ; that is, the complete succession of years from the discovery of America in 1492, to the present day.

9. The *inner part* of the chronographer is called the *historic tree*. The *four large limbs* of this tree represent the four

parts into which the history is divided. *The branches* of these limbs represent epochs of the history. The body and limbs of the tree are painted wood colour, and the branches are painted green.

10. An epoch is an important event in any history, which, having happened on some certain day, or in some one year, is regarded but as a point in time. These branches, then, which represent the epochs, *meet the circle of time in certain points*

11. In mathematics, the place where one line meets another is called a point. Points may divide a line : so we suppose *our circular line of time to be divided, by these points or epochs, into periods*. The word *epoch* marks the exact time at which any event of history may have happened ; and the word *period* is here used to denote an unbroken succession of years, whether few or many.

12. To avoid confusion, remark here, that each of the four parts of the history has one more epoch than period : for example, Part I. has four epochs and three periods. It of course has four branches, and three spaces between them. Parts II. and IV. have also each four branches and three spaces. Part III. has three epochs and two periods. The reason of this is, that the same epoch is used for the end of one period and the beginning of another.

#### CIRCLE OF TIME.—LINE OF CENTURIES.

13. The outer circumference of the circle of time is the *line of centuries*. It represents the three centuries and a half into which the American history is divided. A century is a hundred years.

14. All Christian countries reckon time from the birth of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, which is called the Christian era, or great Christian epoch. In 1850, there will have been just eighteen centuries and a half from that point

of time. During nearly fifteen of those centuries, America was unknown to the people of Europe, from whom we are descended.

15. This continent was discovered in 1492, eight years before the close of the 15th century. Tracing, then, on the chronographer, from 1492 to 1500, we find eight years only belonging to the 15th century. From 1500 to 1600 is the whole of the 16th century; from 1600 to 1700, the 17th century; from 1700 to 1800, the 18th century; and from 1800 to the *present day*, is nearly half of the 19th century: so that the whole course of American history is about three centuries and a half. It was exactly three centuries and a half in the year 1842.

16. Since the end of the year 1800, we have lived in the 19th century: so, young persons past eighteen are said to be in their nineteenth year. When the year 1800 had passed, then *eighteen centuries* were completed from the birth of our Saviour, and the time since, and now going on, belongs to the 19th century, and will belong to it till the year 1900 is compleated.

17. Some persons have disputed whether the dates which make exact hundreds, such as 1700 and 1800, belong to the 17th and 18th centuries. They say, "As 1701 belongs to the 18th century, why should not 1700 also?" Now, to make this matter plain, let us go back to the 1st century.

*Teacher.* Would 99 years make a century?

*Class.* Ninety-nine years would not make a century.

*Teacher.* When would the 1st century be completed?

*Class.* The 1st century would be completed at the end of the 100th year.

*Teacher.* Would 199 years make two centuries?

*Class.* One hundred and ninety-nine years would not make two centuries.

*Teacher.* What year must be added to make two centuries?

*Class.* The 200th year must be added to make up the two centuries.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 100 belong ?

*Class.* To the 1st century, since that century is not completed till the *end* of the year 100.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 101 belong ?

*Class.* To the 2d century.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 300 belong ?

*Class.* To the 3d ; for the 3d is only *completed* at the close of this year.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 1700 belong ?

*Class.* To the 17th.

*Teacher.* To what century does the date 1845 belong ?

*Class.* To the 19th century.

*Teacher.* You now understand that any date in a century belongs to a century one higher than the *hundreds* which express the date—excepting only those dates which are expressed by exact hundreds. Thus, 1704 belongs to the 18th century ; 1825 to the 19th ; while 1700 belongs to the 17th century, and 1800 to the 18th.

18. *Teacher.* The graduated part of the circle of time is called the *scale of years*. This is first divided, as you see, by alternate light and shade, into *tens of years*. Then, by black lines through the light tens, and white ones through the black tens, the whole scale is divided into years : so that, having any given date, you can at once refer it, on the chronographer, to its proper place. For example, suppose I ask you, where, on the circle of time, is the place of King Philip's war, which occurred in 1675 ? First, look for the large figures which denote the centuries, until the eye catches **1600** : then trace along to the right, through 70, until you reach 75.



## HISTORIC TREE.

19. The first large limb of the historic tree represents Part I. of the history. Observe the points of intersection of the first and fourth branches with the graduated circle of time. The first point is at 1492, the epoch of the discovery of America by Columbus; and the fourth is 1643, when the first *Confederacy* or *Union* took place. This is an important epoch, as it marks the time when several colonies confederated together, thus laying the foundation of our great Federal Republic.

20. This FIRST PART, then, extends from 1492 to 1643. Its subject, as you read just above the scale of years, is, THE DISCOVERY AND EARLY SETTLEMENT of the different parts of the country. It occupies, as you see, a century and a half, viz., eight years of the 15th century, the whole of the 16th, and nearly half of the 17th. It extends through a longer time than either of the other parts of the history. There are, however, fewer events in it for the historian to notice.

21. The SECOND PART, as you perceive from the points of intersection of the extreme branches, extends from 1643, the epoch of the beginning of the confederacy, to 1763, the close of the French war. Previously to this war, the English had the government over what has since been called the United States. By the war they gained dominion over Canada also—taking it from the French, who had discovered and settled that country. The Second Part of the history, as you see by the graduated circle, occupies 120 years. It embraces the last half of the 17th century, and the first part of the 18th. When we speak by centuries, we do not pretend to be perfectly accurate. The subject of the Second Part is, COLONIZATION—FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS, that is, the colonization of this country by the English, and

the wars which our hardy and suffering forefathers had with the natives and the French of Canada.

22. The **THIRD PART** of the history is shorter in time than either of the others, comprising only 26 years in the last half of the 18th century. Interesting events in this part of the history are more numerous than in either of the other parts. Its subject is, **THE REVOLUTION**—in which the Americans, having been oppressed by the British Government, fought the troops which they sent over, and, under the command of Washington, defeated them, and made the United States of America a free and independent nation. The epoch to which this part extends, is the adoption of the present constitution of the United States—1789.

23. The **FOURTH PART** extends from the adoption of the constitution to the present time. It comprises, to now, in 1845, fifty-six years—the whole time of our *free constitutional Government*. It occupies the last portion of the 18th century, and what is passed of the 19th.

#### GENERAL REMARKS.

24. The pupils, having now learned the general plan of the chronographer, will be able to answer questions from it; and while the class are studying the book, the teacher should give them some exercises every day.

25. To acquire our system of chronology, the description of the chronographer should not only be well learned, but the attention of the pupils should be called to it during every recitation, by requiring them to show to what part of the plan given, dated events belong.

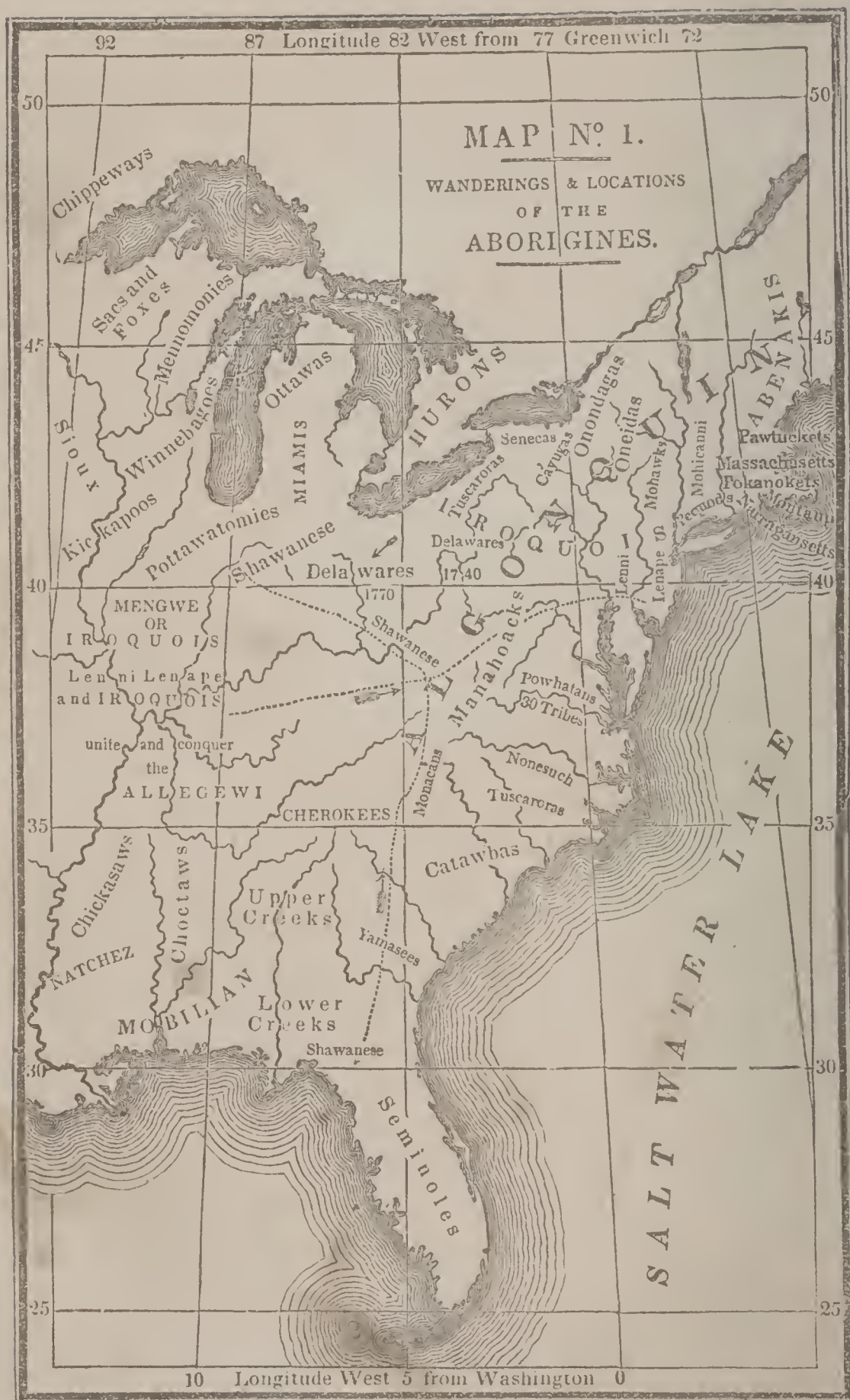
26. In regard to Geography, as connected with History, it is no less important that the association of the event, with the visible representation of its place on the map, should be strongly made. Hence, the pupils should always be required to trace on their maps the routes of navigators,

armies, &c., and to show the locations of cities and battle-fields. The best of all plans in this respect is, for pupils to draw for themselves, on slates or blackboards, sketches of the countries of which they study, putting down the places mentioned in their lessons.

27. The drawing of the chronographer is also recommended. After the study of a period is completed, let the pupil draw the part of the circle of time belonging to that period. When he has studied a Part, let him delineate that Part on the circle of time : and so on, till he learns to draw the whole circle without a model. Having done this, let him connect with it the Historic Tree, whose branches, like so many indexes, or hands of a clock, point to the time of the epochs which they represent.

28. The teacher of this work may, by reading a copy of the author's larger History on the same plan, be able to relate to his class enlarged details and interesting anecdotes of the characters herein named, of which the limits of this book did not allow the insertion. Such incidents not only instruct, but they make scholars love the class-room, and give them confidence in the knowledge of their teacher. One important office of the common-school library, is to put such books into the instructor's hands as shall aid him in giving his pupils more enlarged views of their subjects of study.









Smith showing his Compass.

## INTRODUCTION.

### CHAPTER I.

#### Definitions, &c.

1. THE subject of this work is the United States of America; or, as those States are sometimes called, the Republic or Nation of America. CHA. I.  
Subject

What constitutes a nation? First, there must be a country, with the natural divisions of land and water; second, there must be men, women, and children to inhabit that country; and third, those inhabitants must be bound together in one, by living under a common government, which extends its protection over all, and which all are bound to obey. Its triple  
division.

2. To every nation there belongs a *history*: For whenever the inhabitants of any large portion of the earth are united under one government, *important public events* must there have taken place. *The record of these events* constitutes the history of that country. Any na-  
tion's  
history

3. The events of history should always be recorded, with the circumstances of *time* and *place*. To tell *when* events happened, is to give their chronology; to

1. What is the subject of this work? What three parts compose a nation?—2. What constitutes any nation's history? 3. How should events be recorded? What is it to give their chronology?

CH. I. tell *where* they happened, their geography. The history of a nation, is therefore inseparably connected with its geography and chronology. Chronology may properly be called the skeleton of history, geography the base on which it stands.

4. First, let us inquire, where is the country of which we desire to know the history? In the vast universe, is a system of planets surrounding a sun, hence called the solar system. The third planet from the sun is called the earth. On the earth's surface, the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA occupies a northern portion of the smaller of two continents. In extent, it is one of the largest nations of the world.

5. In longitude, the Republic of America ranges through sixty degrees, from the Atlantic ocean to the Pacific. In latitude, it reaches from the Cape of Florida, in north latitude twenty-five degrees, to British and Russian America in forty-nine. Thus stretching through the greater part of the northern temperate zone, it includes every variety of climate, from the hot unhealthy swamps of Florida, to the cold mountainous regions of northern New England, and the north-western territories.

6. The soil and productions of our country are as various as its climate. Compared with other countries, it contains a large proportion of arable land; and what is of the utmost consequence to the accommodation of man, it is *well watered*. On the whole, it may be pronounced, one of the most fertile, healthy, and desirable regions of the earth.

7. In observing the United States, there is much to convince us, that an Almighty, Overruling Providence, designed from the first, to place here a great, united

3. Their geography? Are chronology and geography connected with history?—4. In regard to the universe where, as astronomy teaches, are the United States? In regard to the earth's surface, or as regards geography, where is this country? What can you say of its extent?—5. What of its longitude? Of its latitude? Climate?—6. Soil and productions? Its natural advantages generally?—7. Does this region, seem designed for one great nation, or several small ones?

people. Although this country, being one nation, is by means of its mighty rivers, well enabled to carry its inland productions to the ocean, and thence to foreign markets ; yet, if it were divided, like southern Europe, into different nations, this would not be the case. CH. I.

8. For this country is not, like southern Europe, indented with deep bays, gulfs, seas, and channels ; whereby many small nations, can each be accommodated with a portion of the sea-board. If our long rivers were owned in part by one government, and in part by another, the commerce of the inland nations, would be perpetually hampered, by those who owned the sea-board, and the mouths of the rivers. For they would be likely to insist on being paid for the use of their ports ; and this would naturally breed quarrels and blood-shed. This is one reason among many, to show that the American people should continue to be ONE NATION ; and, in the words of Washington, “frown indignantly on the first attempt to sever the union.” One unnecessary evil of division.

9. The government of this vast nation, which contains more than twenty-three millions of inhabitants, is a **FEDERATIVE REPUBLIC**. It is *federative*, because in it there are several separate, independent states, confederated under one head, or general government. It is *a republic*, because the rulers are chosen by the people. The manner in which they are to be chosen, and in which they are bound to administer the government, is set forth in the **CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES**. This therefore, should be early learned, and thoroughly understood by every American. The Am. government made for all.

10. The government of the United States is acknowledged by the wise and good of other nations, to be the most free, impartial, and righteous government Should be understood by all.

7. Why is it in regard to commerce better for one than for several ? What part of the world admits of several small nations, and why ? — 8. Mention one among many evils, which would result from dividing this nation into several smaller ones ? What is the language of Washington on this subject ? — 9. How many inhabitants has the United States ? What is its form of government ? Why federative ? Why a republic ? Where can we learn the form of government ? — 10. What is the character of this government ?

It is equitable and should be sustained



CH. II. of the world; but all agree, that for such a government to be sustained many years, the principles of truth and righteousness, taught in the Holy Scriptures must be practised. *The rulers must govern in the fear of God, and the people obey the laws.*

## CHAPTER II.

### The Aborigines.

The red men. 1. BEFORE the territory of which our history treats, was inhabited by the ancestors of its present inhabitants, it was occupied by another and a different race. The red men were here, when the European settlers came; and either as friends or as enemies, for a time they dwelt contiguous to each other, and their history is blended.

The first occupants. 2. The aborigines, or natives of the country, were by the Europeans, called Indians. As found by the earliest settlers, they may be considered under three general divisions. First, the DELAWARES or ALGONQUINS; second, the IROQUOIS, and third, the MOBILIANS.

Three grand divisions. 3. The Delawares, or Algonquins, were formerly called the *Lenni Lenape*, and the Iroquois the *Mengwe*. They have a tradition that, in ancient times, each came, though in somewhat different directions, from far distant western regions. Happening to meet as they approached the Mississippi, they united, and made war upon the Allegewi, a more civilized people, who inhabited the great valley of the Mississippi, and dwelt in cities. The *Allegewi* were defeated and fled down the river. Perhaps the Mobilian tribes were their de-

10. What is necessary to its being permanently sustained?

CHAPTER II. — 2. What term is used to distinguish the race found in this country by our ancestors? What three general divisions of them? — 3. Give an account of the tradition of the two former, respecting the direction from which they anciently came. Where did they unite? What more civilized nation did they find? What happened to this nation?

scendants. Perhaps portions of them went still further south, and were the builders of those cities, the ruins of which, have lately been found in Central America

CH. II.

4. The Lenape and Mengwe, says the tradition, soon divided. The former crossed the Alleghany mountains, explored, and took possession of the sea coast, fixing their chief place of council, or seat of government, on the Delaware river. This river received from a European nobleman the name, which it communicated to the Indian confederacy. As this confederacy increased in numbers, various tribes went off from the parent stock. But they still looked up to the Delawares, and gave them, long after, the reverential title of "grand-father."

Del. Riv  
er the  
principal  
seat of  
the Dela-  
wares.

5. Of these branches of the Delaware or Algonquin race, the first who figure in the early history of our nation, were the POWHATANS, a confederacy of thirty tribes; so called from their great sachem, Powhatan. His principal residence was on James river, near the site of Richmond. His authority extended throughout the lowlands, and to the falls of the rivers.

Powhat-  
ans—thir-  
ty tribes.

6. Farther west, and extending to the mountains, were two confederacies, with whom the Powhatans were at war: the *Manahoacks*, consisting of eight tribes on the north, and the *Monacans* of five, stretching southerly into Carolina. Afterwards the latter changed their name, to that of *Tuscaroras*, removed northerly, and joined the Iroquois. The *Yamasees* were in South Carolina.

Manaho-  
acks—  
eight  
tribes.

Monac-  
ans—five  
tribes.

7. *The Algonquins of New England* next find place

3. What conjectures may be formed respecting their descendants? — 4. According to the tradition what course did the Lenape take? Where fix their place of council? When they became numerous what became of the various tribes of their descendants? What were their sentiments and language towards the Delawares? Trace out the course of the Delawares on Map I.—5. Which of them are first brought into notice? What the number of tribes? Their principal seat? How far did their limits extend? — 6. Give an account of the Manahoacs? Of the Monacans? Tell from Map I, which is the most northerly, the Manahoacs or Monocans. Where were the Catawbis? The Yamasees?

CE. II. in our history. The first known, were the *Pokanokets* or *Wanpanoags*, which produced the two most remarkable savage chiefs of New England, the good Massasoit, and his valiant son, King Philip. Their residence was at *Montaup* or Mount Hope, near Bristol, in Rhode Island.

The first  
N. E.  
tribe  
known to  
English.

8. The government of the sachem extended over the southern part of Massachusetts, and the eastern of Rhode Island. A number of tribes of different names were his subjects; among others the Nausets of Cape Cod. In 1614, Capt. Hunt, an English ship-master, who accompanied Capt. Smith in exploring the coast, wickedly seized and carried off twenty-seven of these unoffending natives, and sold them in Europe as slaves. One of them, named Tisquantum, found his way to England, where he learned the English language, was kindly treated, and sent back to his country. He was afterwards of great service to the first English settlers, as interpreter.

1614.

III  
usage of  
the na-  
tives by  
the En-  
glish.

Indians  
of the  
Merri-  
mack.

9. The PAWTUCKETS made their principal seat upon the Merrimack, near its mouth, and extended themselves south, until they met the territories of the Massachusetts. The MASSACHUSETTS were scattered about the bay, which bears their name. Their territories extended to the Pawtuckets on the north, and the Pokanokets on the south. The authority of their chief sachem was acknowledged by several minor tribes, some of whom resided as far west as Deerfield. The principal person of this confederacy, as found by the English, was the squaw sachem, or "Massachusetts Queen." Her residence was beautifully located on a hill at Milton, eight miles south of Boston.

Of Mas-  
achusetts  
Bay.

10. The NARRAGANSETTS held their chief seat and the residence of their grand sachem on the island of

7. Learn from the Map what are the principal tribes of New England, and more particularly from the book, the location of the Pokanokets. What noted chiefs were there of this tribe? — 8. What wicked act did an English captain do? To what Indians? Did any one taken away return? — 9. What can you say of the Pawtuckets? Of the Massachusetts? Their principal person? Her residence?



Canonicut, in the bay which still bears their name.— CH. II  
 Westerly they extended to within four or five miles of  
 the Paucatuck river, where their territories met those  
 of the Pequods. On the east they joined the Pokanó-  
 kets. Their grand chief, Canonicus, was, when the  
 English arrived, an aged man; and he had associated  
 with him in his government, his nephew, Miantonomoh.  
 The commodious and pleasant location of the Narra-  
 gansetts, appears, in their case, to have abated the na-  
 tural ferocity of the savage character.

Indians  
of Nar-  
ragansett  
Bay.

11. The more barbarous PEQUODS occupied the  
 eastern portion of Connecticut, their lands meeting those  
 of the Narragansetts. The residence of their great  
 sachem, Sassacus, was on the heights of Groton, near  
 the river then called the Pequod, since, the Thames.  
 The Mohegans, under Uncas, whose seat was where  
 Norwich now stands, were subject to the haughty chief  
 of the Pequods; but they bore his yoke with impa-  
 tience, and when he made war upon the whites, Uncas  
 took part against him. The Indians of northern New  
 England had the general appellation of *Taranteens* or  
*Abenakis*.

Of east-  
ern Con-  
necticut

12. The New England tribes had, a short time pre-  
 vious to the settlement of the English, suffered a plague  
 of unexampled mortality. It was probably the yellow  
 fever; for we are told that its victims, both before and  
 after death, "were of the color of a yellow garment."  
 Not less than nine-tenths of the inhabitants seem, in  
 some parts of the country, to have been destroyed.  
 Thus Divine Providence prepared the way for another  
 and more civilized race.

Plague  
among  
the abo-  
rigines

13. The IROQUOIS, Mengwe or Mingoes, were found  
 by the earliest settlers in Canada, inhabiting the shores  
 of the St. Lawrence. At first they appear to have been

---

10. Give an account of the location of the Narragansetts?—  
 Their grand chief? His associate? The effects of their position  
 on their character?—11. Describe the position of the Pequods.  
 Their sachem's name and place of residence. That of the Mo-  
 hegan sachem.—12. What remarkable visitation of Providence  
 occurred among the natives a short time before the English came?  
 How great a proportion were destroyed?—13. How were the  
 Iroquois found by the discoverers of Canada?

CH. II. less warlike, than the Hurons or Wyandots, by whom they were attacked. The Iroquois were driven by them, from the banks of the St. Lawrence; and dividing into five tribes, the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks, they spread themselves by degrees, east of Lake Erie, and south of Ontario, along the romantic waters of northern New York, to which they have left their bold and harmonious names. The place of their grand general council, or congress of chiefs, was at Onondaga.

The  
Five  
Nations  
in west-  
ern New  
York.

14. Here they made a stand, and became the most fearless, subtle, and powerful of savages. They conquered the Hurons, fought the Delawares, and put in fear all the surrounding tribes. Finally, in the contests between France and England, they were courted by both parties as allies, and dreaded by both as foes. Of the FIVE NATIONS, the Mohawks were the most warlike. Their chief seat was at Johnstown, on the beautiful river, which still bears their name.

Become  
very  
powerful

15. Of the Mobilians, the most extensive and powerful confederacies were the CREEKS, situated mostly in Georgia; the CHEROKEES in the mountainous region north and west; and the CHOCTAWS and CHICKASAWS, nearer to the Mississippi.

Powerful  
southern  
confeder-  
acies

16. The NATCHEZ have excited much interest on account of the difference of their language from that of the surrounding tribes. Natchez, on the Mississippi, marks their location. The SHAWANESE, the native tribe of Tecumseh, once resided on the banks of the Suwaney river in Florida. From thence they migrated northward, first to Pennsylvania, and afterwards to Ohio.

13. To what place did they change their location? What were the names of each of the Five Nations? Where was their general council held? — 14. What character did they now assume? What nations contend with? By what nations was their alliance courted? Which tribe was the most warlike? — Where was its principal seat? Learn from the map the location of the Mobilian tribes. — 15. Which were the most extensive and powerful? Which are the most northerly? Which are partly in Georgia? — 16. Which near the Mississippi? Where are the Shawanese? Which tribe has a language by itself?



# PART I.

FROM 1492 TO 1648.



Return of Columbus.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE DISCOVERY OF } 1492 { AMERICA BY COLUMBUS,  
TO  
THE FIRST PATENT GRANTED } 1578. { LANDS IN AMERICA—GIVEN BY Q.  
BY AN ENGLISH SOVEREIGN TO } ELIZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT.

### CHAPTER I.

First Discovery—Columbus, &c.

1. THOUSANDS of years had elapsed since the creation of the world, and the inhabitants of the eastern hemisphere were yet ignorant, that, on the face of the planet, which they inhabited, was another continent of nearly equal extent. Nor did they become acquainted with this fact by any fortunate accident; but they owed its proof, to the penetration and persevering efforts of a man, as extraordinary, as the discovery which he made.

P.T. 1

P.D. I.  
CH. I.

Former  
ages ig-  
norant of  
geogra-  
phy.

1. What did the people of the eastern hemisphere know about this continent three hundred and fifty years ago? Did they learn its existence by accident?

P.T. I.

P.D. I.

CH. I.

1447.

Birth  
and rare  
talents of  
Colum-  
bus.

2. This was CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, a native of Genoa, born in 1447. He possessed all those energetic impulses of the soul which lead to high achievement; and, with these he combined judgment the most grave and solid, prudence and patience the most steady and unoffending, piety the most devout, and, what ensured his success, the most untiring perseverance ever manifested by man.

3. Columbus had married the daughter of one of the Portuguese discoverers, then deceased; whose widow, finding how eagerly her son-in-law sought such sources of information, gave to him all the maps and charts which had belonged to her husband. Marco Polo, a Venetian, had travelled to the east, and returned with wonderful accounts of the riches of Cathay and the island of Cipango, called, generally, the East Indies, and now known to be China and Japan.

Circum-  
stan-  
ces fa-  
vorable  
to his ge-  
nius.

4. The idea that the earth was round, was ridiculed by most persons at that time; but it was fully believed by Columbus, on the evidence of its figure, exhibited in eclipses of the moon. Hence, he believed, that those rich countries described by Marco Polo might be found by sailing west; and he formed the design to lead the way, through unknown oceans.

Offers  
his ser-  
vices to  
reigning  
sove-  
reigns.

5. Columbus believed that great advantages would accrue to the nation who should patronize his undertaking; and, with filial respect, he first offered his services to his native state, but had the mortification to find them rejected. He then applied to John II. of Portugal; to Henry VII. of England; and to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. But these monarchs could not comprehend his schemes, and would not encourage them.

---

2. Who was the discoverer? What was his character? — 3. What woman gave him sources of information? What traveller had excited his mind about distant countries? What countries? 4. In what opinion was Columbus in advance of his contemporaries? Why did he believe in the true figure of the earth? How did he suppose he could reach those rich countries called the East Indies? — 5. To whom did Columbus first offer his services? With what success? Whose patronage did he next solicit? What sovereign of England? What sovereigns of Spain?

6. At the court of Spain, he had spent two years in a succession of mortifying repulses; and at length, quite discouraged, he was preparing to go to England, when he was recalled by a mandate from Isabella. Not knowing how to raise the sum of money requisite for defraying the expenses of the voyage, the excellent queen determined to sacrifice her jewels; but this was prevented by the extraordinary exertions of her ministers.

PT. I.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

They are  
accepted  
by Isa-  
bella.

7. Columbus made his first voyage, the most interesting of any in the annals of navigation, in 1492. He discovered the first found land of the New World, on the eleventh of October. It was an Island called by the natives Guanahani, but to which he piously gave the name of San Salvador, the Holy Saviour.

1492  
Colum-  
bus dis-  
covers  
the New  
World.

8. In his third voyage he discovered the continent on the coast of South America, fourteen months after the Cabots had reached its shores in the north-east. By the ingratitude of Ferdinand, he was, like a condemned criminal, sent home in chains. Americus Vesputius, a native of Florence, having made a voyage to the New World, received from the public an honor which belonged to Columbus, that of giving a name to the continent. In 1502, the great discoverer made his fourth and last voyage, when, having returned to Spain, his patroness, Isabella, being dead, his just claims disregarded, and himself neglected, he sunk beneath his sufferings, and died, in the 59th year of his age. When the good meet with calamities in this world, it is pleasant to reflect, that there is a future state, where they will be made happy.

Sent  
home in  
chains.

Deprived  
of na-  
ming the  
country.

He dies  
in Vallo-  
lolid in  
Spain  
1506

9. Many attempts were now made to show that the country had been previously discovered. The Welsh brought forward the story of Madoc, son of Owen

Welsh  
story of  
Madoc.

6. Who was the only one to understand his views or favor them? What sacrifice was she prepared to make? — 7. When did Columbus make his first voyage? What land did he first discover? When? What name give? — 8. What did he discover in his third voyage? Did any persons discover the continent before him? How was he treated? After whom was the continent named? In what year did he make his last voyage? What occurred soon after? — 9. From what story did the Welsh claim to be the discoverers of the western continent?



P'T. I. Gwyneth, who, in the twelfth century, had sailed west,  
 P'D. I. discovered a country, and afterwards conducted a colo-  
 CB. II. ny thither, which was heard of no more. If this story  
 be true, there yet exists no proof, that the region found  
 was America.

Nor-  
 wegian  
 claims.  
 Vine-  
 land.  
 10. The Norwegians discovered Iceland and Green-  
 land, during the ninth century, and there established  
 colonies. Biorn, or Biron, an Icclander, in a voyage  
 to Greenland, during the eleventh century, was driven  
 south-west in a storm, and found a region which, from  
 its great number of vines, he called Vineland; but  
 here, also, proof fails, that the place found, had its  
 locality on the American coast.

## CHAPTER II.

### English Discoveries—French.

America  
 is con-  
 nected  
 with four  
 nations  
 of Eu-  
 rope.  
 1. THE principal European nations who first disco-  
 vered and colonized our county, are  
 I. The English,  
 II. The French,  
 III. The Spanish,  
 IV. The Dutch.

1496. 2. John Cabot, a native of Venice, had, with his  
 family, settled in England. He and his renowned son,  
 Sebastian, were men of great learning, enterprise, and  
 ability. By a commission of Henry VII., dated March  
 5th, 1496, (the oldest American state paper of England)  
 they had authority to discover and colonize any hea-  
 then countries not before known to Christians.

1497. 3. They sailed from England in May, 1497, and in  
 June, discovered the Island of Newfoundland, which

10. From what the Norwegians?

CHAPTER II.—1. What European nations discovered and  
 settled our continent? — 2. Who was John Cabot? Who Se-  
 bastian? Who gave them a commission, and at what time? 3  
 What important discovery did they make?



they called Prima Vista. Steering northward, they made the first discovery of the continent, on the coast of Labrador, in latitude about  $55^{\circ}$ . On their return they pursued a southerly direction for an uncertain distance.

P'T. I  
P'D. I  
CH. II

4. Sebastian Cabot sailed a second time,—reached Labrador in latitude  $58^{\circ}$ , thence turning southerly, he became the discoverer of the coast of the United States; along which he proceeded, as far as to the southern latitude of Maryland.

**1498**  
Sebas-  
tian Ca  
bot dis-  
covers  
cur coast

5. The French King, Francis I., in 1524, sent out John Verrazani, a native of Florence, who reached the continent in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. His crew looked with wonder upon the wild costume of the natives, made of the skins of animals, and set off by necklaces of coral and garlands of feathers. As they sailed northward along the coast, they thought the country very inviting, it being covered with green trees, among which were many fragrant flowers.

The  
French  
also em-  
ploy an  
Italian  
discover-  
er.

**1524**

6. At a fine harbor, supposed to be that of Newport in Rhode Island, Verrazani remained fifteen days, and there found “the goodliest people he had seen.” From thence he followed the north-eastern shore of New England, finding the inhabitants jealous and hostile. From Nova Scotia, he returned to France, and wrote a narrative of his voyage, which is still existing.

Verraza-  
ni in N  
England

7. James Cartier was the discoverer to whom the French trace the extensive empire which they possessed in North America. Cartier, after a prosperous voyage of twenty days, made Cape Bonavista, the most easterly point of Newfoundland. Sailing around the north-eastern extremity of the island, he encountered severe weather and icy seas. Then stretching to the south-west, he discovered, on St. Lawrence's day, the noble gulf which bears the name of that saint.

**1534.**  
James  
Cartier  
makes  
great dis-  
coveries

3. At what place?—4. Who discovered the coast of the United States? and how far?—5. What Italian did the king of France send out? Where did he reach our shore?—What account did he give of the natives?—6. What Indians do you suppose he encountered at Newport? 7. Who was the greatest discoverer employed by the French? During Cartier's first voyage, what great discoveries did he make?

P.T. 1 8. In 1535, he sailed on a second voyage, entered  
 P.D. I. the gulf of St. Lawrence, proceeded up the river, to  
 CH. II. which he gave the same name, and anchored at an  
 island, which, abounding in grapes, he named Bacchus  
 1535. Isle, now the Isle of Orleans. He continued his voy-  
 age to the Island of Hochelega, to which he gave the  
 name of Mont Real. After a severe winter he return-  
 ed in the spring with dreary accounts of the country.  
 He, however, named it *New France*, and it was also  
 called *Canada*, but at what time, or whether from any  
 significancy in the word, is not known.

Cartier's  
 second  
 voyage.

New 9. France now possessed a country in the New  
 France. World, through which, flowed a river, more majestic  
 than any in Europe. Francis De La Roque, lord of  
 Roberval, in Picardy, obtained from the king full au-  
 thority to rule, as viceroy, the vast territory around the  
 bay and river of St. Lawrence. Cartier was necessary  
 to him, and received the title of chief pilot and captain-  
 general of the enterprise. The prisons were thrown  
 open, and with their inmates, Cartier sailed.

His third  
 made un-  
 der Rob-  
 erval.

May, 10. He built a fort near the site of Quebec, and there  
 1541. spent a winter, in which he had occasion to hang one  
 of his disorderly company, and put several in irons  
 In the spring he took them back to France, just as Ro-  
 berval arrived with supplies and fresh emigrants. By  
 him, however, nothing permanent was effected; and  
 after a year, he abandoned his viceroyalty.

May,  
 1541.  
 Cartier  
 founds  
 Quebec.

1562. 11. Coligni, the distinguished high admiral of France  
 Admiral was the friend of the Huguenots, a name given to  
 Coligni the French Protestants. These were objects of such  
 hatred and fear to the monarchs, that they were plot-  
 ting their destruction, and when a project was formed  
 by the admiral to plant with them a colony in America,  
 it found ready favor. He therefore sent out, under the  
 command of John Ribault, distinguished as a brave

1562.  
 Admiral  
 Coligni  
 sends out  
 Ribault

8. Give an account of his second voyage? What can you say  
 of the name of the country? — 9. Under whose authority did he  
 make this third voyage? What kind of people were brought  
 over as colonists? — 10. Did any good result take place?  
 What can you say of Roberval? — 11. Who was Coligni? —  
 Whose friend was he? What project did he contrive? Whom  
 did he send as leader of the colony?

and pious protestant, two ships loaded with conscientious Huguenots, many of whom were of the best families in France.

P'T. I.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

12. They approached land in the delightful clime of St. Augustine; and, on the first of May, discovered the St. John, which they called the river of May. Sailing along the coast north-easterly, they fixed on Port Royal entrance. There they built a fort, and called it Carolina, a name which is preserved in that of two of our states. Ribault left there a colony, and returned to France.

He builds  
Ft. Caro-  
lina in S.  
Carolina  
1564

13. The commander of the fort provoked a mutiny, and was slain. The colonists longed for home. They put to sea without suitable provisions, and being found in a famishing state by a British vessel, they were carried to England.

Colonists  
abandon  
it.

14. The persevering Coligni soon after sent out another colony under the worthy Laudonniere. Upon the banks of the river of May, with psalms of thanksgiving, they made their dwelling place, and erected another fort, called also Carolina. The next year Ribault arrived with vessels containing emigrants and supplies; and taking the command, the colony seemed happily planted.

1566.  
Ft. Caro-  
lina in  
Florida  
built.

### CHAPTER III.

Spanish Discoveries, Adventures, and Cruelties.—St. Augustine.

1. JOHN Ponce De Leon, a Spanish soldier, who had once voyaged with Columbus, had received an impression, common in those times, that there existed in the New World a fountain, whose waters had power to

Ponce de  
Leon  
seeks the  
fountain  
of life.

12. What country did they first reach? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it? — 13. What happened after Ribault had departed? — 14. By whom did Coligni send out another colony? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it? Who came and for what purpose?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was John Ponce de Leon? What induced him to come to the New World?



P'T. I. arrest disease, and give immortal youth; and he set  
 P'D. I. forth to seek it. On Easter Sunday, called by the  
 CH. III. Spaniards Pascua Florida, and a little north of the  
**1512.** latitude of St. Augustine, he discovered what he deemed,  
 from the blossoms of the forest trees, a land of  
 flowers. The fountain of life was not there; but  
 Ponce took possession of the country in the name of  
 the Spanish king, and called it Florida.

Discovers  
 Florida.

**1520.** **Wicked-** 2. The part of South Carolina, in the vicinity of the  
**ness of** Combahee river, was soon after visited by a Spaniard,  
**Vasquez** named Vasquez De Ayllon. The country was named  
**de** Chicora, and the river, the Jordan. De Ayllon invited  
**Ayllon.** the natives to visit his ships, and when they stood in  
 crowds upon his deck, he hoisted sail and carried them  
 off. Thus, torn from their families, they were, as slaves,  
 condemned to ceaseless toil. De Ayllon afterwards  
 attempted to conquer the country; but the hostility  
 of the natives could not be overcome, and numbers of  
 Spaniards perished in the fruitless attempt.

**1528.** 3. By another unsuccessful effort, under the adven-  
**Unsuc-** turer Narvaez, to conquer Florida and the adjoining  
**cessful** country, an army of three hundred Spaniards wasted  
**attempt** away, till but four or five returned.  
**of Nar-**

**Ferdi-** 4. They however insisted that Florida was the rich-  
**nand de** est country in the world; and Ferdinand De Soto,  
**Soto.** already famous as the companion of Pizarro, the cruel  
 conqueror of Peru, obtained a commission from Charles  
 V. to conquer the country. He sailed, with a con-  
 siderable force, to Cuba, of which he had been made  
 governor; and there adding to his army, he landed in  
 1539, at Espirito Santo, in Florida, with six hundred  
 soldiers; an army greater, and better supplied, than  
 that, with which Cortez conquered Mexico.

**1539**  
**Lands in**  
**Florida.**

5. He expected to find mines and utensils of gold;

---

1. What country did he discover? Observe the dates, and tell which discovered Florida first, the French just mentioned, or this Spaniard? Tell the dates in each case. — 2. Give an account of the expedition of Vasquez de Ayllon. What do you think of his conduct? — 3. What can you say of Narvaez? — 4. What expedition did Ferdinand de Soto undertake? Give an account of his preparations—his numbers—his place of landing in America. — 5. His objects.



and being from time to time deluded by the natives, he pursued these illusions, which ever fled as he approached. He went north, crossed the Alleghany mountains, then marched southerly to Mobile, where he fought a bloody battle with the people of a walled city. At Pensacola he met ships from Cuba, with supplies for his exhausted army; and too proud to be wise, he continued to pursue a shadow, rather than retrace a false step.

P'T. I.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

His ob-  
ject to  
find gold.

6. The hope of the precious metals still lured him on, and he now bent his course to the north-west, and in latitude  $34^{\circ}$  he discovered the Mississippi. He continued west until he reached the Wachita, when, becoming dispirited, he turned his course; descending that stream to its junction with the Red river. Thence he went down its current; and where the Red mingles its waters with the Mississippi, he died. His body was inclosed in a hollow oak, and committed to the broad stream. The officer who succeeded him in command, conducted the poor remains of the army, down the Mississippi.

April 25  
1541  
He dis-  
covers  
the Mis-  
sissippi.

May 21.  
1542  
He dies

7. When the news reached Spain, that Florida had been colonized by French Huguenots, the cruel monarch, Philip II., gave to Pedro Melendez de Aviles a commission, to take possession of that country, and to destroy the heretics. Five hundred persons accompanied Melendez, who were men with families, soldiers, mechanics and priests. Coming upon the coast south of the French settlement, he discovered the harbor of St. Augustine on the day of that saint, and here he laid the foundation of the city of St. AUGUSTINE, the oldest by more than forty years, of any within the limits of our republic.

Melen-  
dez sent  
from  
Spain.

Sept. 8,  
1565  
He  
founde  
St. Au-  
gustine

8. The French had received from Melendez the terrible notice, that he had come to destroy every person

5. His route and return to the coast? — 6. His second route and great discovery? Where did he die? How was his body disposed of? What became of his army? — 7. What king sent to destroy the French colony? Whom did he send? What description of persons, and how many accompanied him? What is there remarkable about the city which he founded? — 8. What notice did he give the French?

P.T. I. who was not a catholic. Ribault, supposing that the  
 P.D. I. Spaniards would attack by sea, embarked to meet them.  
 CH. III. A tremendous storm shipwrecked his whole fleet. The  
 Sept. 21, Spaniards, meantime, crossed the forest and attacked by  
 He de- land. Unprepared and surprised, the defenseless fort  
 stroys soon surrendered, when all, without distinction of age  
 Fort or sex, were murdered. The shipwrecked mariners  
 Carolina and 900 were afterwards found, feeble and exhausted, upon the  
 Hugue- shore. Melendez invited them to come to him, and  
 nots. trust to his compassion. They came, and he slew them.

9. When the news of this massacre of nine hundred  
 French subjects reached the French king, Charles IX  
 he took no notice of it, for so bigoted was he, that he  
 wished the entire destruction of the Huguenots. Yet  
 Aug. 22, 1568. so deep was the feeling among the people of France,  
 Gouges kills 200 Spaniards. that three years afterwards, individuals headed by the  
 gallant chevalier Gouges, made a descent on the settle-  
 ment of Florida, and put to death two hundred Span-  
 iards. The Spanish colony was thus checked, but it  
 was not destroyed; and it proved to be the first perma-  
 nent settlement, made by Europeans upon the shores  
 of our republic.

8. Where was Ribault when Melendez attacked the French  
 fort? How did he treat the people in the fort? How the ship-  
 wrecked?—9. Who took vengeance on the Spaniards? In  
 what manner? Was the Spanish colony destroyed? What has  
 it proved to be?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(Referring to events of Period I., Part I.)

What is the event or epoch which marks the beginning of  
 this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chro-  
 nographer.

The Cabots discovered the continent in 1497. Point out  
 the place of this date on the Circle of Time. Verrazani  
 sailed along the coast in 1524. Point out on the chronogra-  
 pher this date. Cartier made his two voyages in 1534–35  
 Point out these years. The time of Cartier's founding Que-  
 bec was 1541. Show the place of this date.

Ribault built Fort Carolina, in South Carolina, in 1564.  
 Laudonniere built Fort Carolina, in Florida, in 1566. Point  
 to these dates. St. Augustine was founded in 1565. Where  
 is this date on the chronographer? At what epoch does this  
 period terminate? Point to its place on the chronographer.

The teacher can select other dates and require the pupils  
 to locate them on the chronographer.





MAP No. 2. 1578.

Exhibiting the Discoveries  
of the  
EARLY NAVIGATORS.

NORTH AMERICA  
FRANCE

MISSISSIPPI R.

Remote and Heathen Lands  
Patented by Queen Elizabeth  
to Sir Humphrey Gilbert 1578.

First discovery of the Continent  
made here by the Cabots 1497.  
L A B R A D O R

Quebec

Hochelega now-Montreal

Sebastian Cabot 1498.

ATLANTIC

Verrazani 1524.

OCEAN

Ponce de Leon 1512

Ribault 1564.

COLUMBUS 1492.

The vessels of Columbus  
were the Santa Maria,  
Nina and Pinta.

Mississippi R. discovered  
by De Soto 1541.

Mobile

Pensacola

Carolina or  
Ft. Charles Bay

St. Augustine

Fleet of  
De Soto 1539.

Spiritus  
Santo Bay

YUCATAN

CUBA

HAITI

Long. 19 West from Washington. 0

Long. 10 East.





Elizabeth's Patent to Sir H. Gilbert.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
PATENT GRANTED BY QUEEN ELI- } 1578 { ELIZABETH TO SIR. H. GILBERT.  
TO  
LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS } 1620. { AT NEW PLYMOUTH.

### CHAPTER I.

Unsuccessful attempts of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others.

1. QUEEN ELIZABETH, the reigning sovereign of England, gave to Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1578, by an open or patent letter, "all such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands," as he should discover in North America, and of which he should take possession; these lands not having been occupied before, by any other Christian power. She vested in him and his heirs the right of property, and guaranteed that all, who should settle there, should enjoy the privileges of free citizens and natives of England. The patentee was to acknowledge the authority of the sovereign of England, and pay one-fifth of all the gold and silver obtained.

1578.  
Gilbert's  
patent.

CHAPTER I.—1. From whom did Sir Humphrey Gilbert receive his patent? What lands did it give him? What rights vest in him and his heirs? What guarantee to those who should settle the country? What enjoin upon the person who received the patent?

**P.T. I.** 2. In Gilbert's first attempt to plant a colony, he put  
**P.D. II.** to sea, but was obliged to return. In his second, he  
**CH. I.** reached Newfoundland, where he took possession of  
 the country for his sovereign, by raising a pillar in-  
**1579,** scribed with the British arms. From thence, he sailed  
 to south-westerly, till he reached the latitude of the mouth  
**1583.** of the Kennebec. Here the largest of his three vessels  
 Gilbert's was wrecked, and all her crew perished.  
 two voy-  
 ages.

His  
 disasters  
 and  
 death.  
**1583.**  
 Sept. 22.

3. Gilbert now finding it impossible to proceed, set his face towards England, keeping in the smallest of his remaining vessels, a barge of only ten tons; for his generous heart refused to put any to a peril, he was himself unwilling to share. The passage was stormy, but his pious mind found comfort in the reflection which, as he sat reading in the stern of his barge, he uttered to his companions in the larger vessel; "we are as near heaven at sea, as on land." In the night, the lights of his little bark suddenly vanished, and he was heard of no more.

Sir W.  
 Raleigh  
 sends  
 Amidas  
 and  
 Barlow.

4. Sir Walter Raleigh, the brother-in-law of Gilbert, obtained from Queen Elizabeth, a transfer of his patent. Raleigh had learned from the unsuccessful emigrants of France, the mildness and fertility of the south, and thither he dispatched two vessels, under Philip Amidas, and Arthur Barlow. They approached the shore at Pamlico Sound, and on landing in Ocracok or Roanoke Island, they found grapes abundant, and so near the coast, that the sea often washed over them.

Beautiful  
 example  
 of native  
 hospi-  
 tality.

5. The natives were as kindly as their climate and soil. The king's son, Granganimo, came with fifty of his people, and received them with distinguished courtesy. He invited them to his dwelling at twenty miles distance on the coast; but when they went, it chanced he was not at home. His wife came out to meet them

2. In Gilbert's first attempt what happened? In his second how far did he proceed? In what manner take possession? What disaster did he meet, and at what place? — 3. What trait of generosity did he exhibit? What were the last words he was heard to utter? — 4. Who obtained a similar patent? Whom did Sir W. Raleigh send out? To what place did they go? What account did they give of Roanoke Island? — 5. What of the natives? How did an Indian lady behave?

She ordered some of her people to draw their boat ashore to preserve it, and others to bring the Englishmen on their backs through the surf. She then conducted her guests to her home, and had a fire kindled, that they might dry their clothes, which were wet with rain. In another room, she spread a plentiful repast of fish, venison, esculent roots, melons, and fruits. As they were eating, several Indians, armed with bows and arrows, entered. She chid them, and sent them away, lest her visiters should suffer from alarm.

6. When the navigators returned to England, and made this report to Elizabeth, she was induced to call the country VIRGINIA, as a memorial that the happy discovery had been made under a Virgin queen. This name soon became general throughout the coast.

Queen Elizabeth names Virginia.

7. Raleigh now found many adventurers ready to embark in his project; and in 1585, he fitted out a squadron of seven ships, under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, who followed the course of Amidas and Barlow, and touched at the same islands. In one of these he cruelly burned a village, because he suspected an Indian of having stolen a silver cup. He then left a colony under Captain Lane, at the island of Roanoke. The colonists, reduced to great distress for want of provisions, were, the next year, carried to England by Sir Francis Drake, who was returning from a successful expedition against the Spaniards in the West Indies.

1585.  
Seven ships under Grenville.

Colony at Roanoke under Lane.

8. Soon after their departure, they were sought by a ship, which had been sent by Raleigh with supplies; and afterwards by Sir Richard Grenville. He not finding them, most unwisely left fifteen of his crew to keep possession of the island, and then returned to England. Of this small number nothing was afterwards heard. Probably they were destroyed by the injured and revengeful savages.

Fifteen men lost.

---

6. Who gave a name to the country? What name?—7. Whom did Raleigh next send? When? What was done by Sir R. Grenville? What can you say of the colony which he left?—8. What of another small colony?



P'T. I. 9. In 1587, Raleigh again sent out a colony of one  
 P'D. II. hundred and fifty adventurers to the same island, under  
 CH. I. Captain White. He soon returned to England to sol-  
 1587. cit supplies for the colony. Before he departed, his  
 Second daughter, Mrs. Dare, gave birth to a female infant, the  
 Roanoke first child of English parents born in America. The  
 colony. infant was baptized by the name of Virginia.

10. The attempts made by Raleigh for the relief of  
 this colony were unremitted, but unsuccessful; and  
 three years elapsed before he could procure the means  
 of sending Captain White to their relief. It was then  
 too late. Not one remained; nor, though repeatedly  
 Raleigh's sought, has any clue to their fate ever been found.  
 lost Appalled and in danger of perishing himself, White  
 colony. returned, without leaving one English settler on the  
 shores of America.

1602. 11. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, with thirty-two  
 Gosnold men, sailed from Falmouth, and steering due west, he  
 visits N. was the first English commander who reached the  
 England. country by this shorter and more direct course. He  
 approached the coast near Nahant, then bearing to the  
 south he discovered and named Cape Cod, which was  
 the first ground in New England ever trod by English-  
 men.

12. From Cape Cod he sailed round Nantucket, and  
 discovered Martha's Vineyard. He then entered Buz-  
 zard's Bay, and finding a fertile island, he gave it, in  
 honor of the Queen, the name of Elizabeth. Near its  
 western shore, on a small island in a lake, he built a  
 fort and store-house, and prepared to leave a small  
 natives colony. But the natives became hostile, and his in-  
 hostile. tended settlers would not remain. Having freighted  
 his vessel with sassafras root, then much esteemed in  
 medicine, he hoisted sail and reached England with all

---

9. What of the second? What name was given to the first na-  
 tive born English child? — 10. Were attempts made to relieve  
 this colony? Does any one know what became of Mrs. Dare,  
 or her child, or any of the colony? — 11. Give some account of  
 Gosnold? Point out on the map his course? Tell where he ap-  
 proached. What discoveries he made? — 12. At what place  
 did he prepare to colonize? Was he successful in planting a  
 colony?



his men, after a passage of five weeks, the shortest then known.

13. Henry IV., of France, in 1603, granted to the Sieur de Monts, the country called *Acadia*, extending from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude. The next year De Monts sailed from France, taking Samuel Champlain as his pilot. He entered an extensive bay, called it La Baye Francaise, [Bay of Fundy,] and on its eastern side, he founded Port Royal. He discovered and named the rivers St. John and St. Croix, and sailed along the coast as far as Cape Cod.

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. I.

**1603.**  
Henry  
IV.  
grants  
Acadia.

DeMonts  
founds  
Port  
Royal.

14. The English becoming alarmed at this encroachment on territory which they claimed, James I., the successor of Elizabeth, dividing the country into two districts nearly equal, granted the southern part, or first colony of Virginia, included between the 34th and 41st degrees, to a company of merchants called the London Company; and the northern or second colony of Virginia, included between the 38th and 45th degrees, to another corporation, called the Plymouth Company. The king vested these companies with a right of land along the coast, fifty miles each way, and extending into the interior one hundred miles from the place of settlement.

**1606**  
(From  
38° to  
41° the  
same  
granted  
to both  
compa-  
nies.  
But  
wherev-  
er one  
made a  
settle-  
ment  
the oth-  
er might  
not set-  
tle with-  
in 100  
miles.)

15. The Plymouth Company, in 1607, sent out Admiral Raleigh Gilbert, with a hundred planters, under Captain George Popham, the president of the company. They landed at the mouth of Kennebec river, where they built and fortified a store-house. The sufferings of the colony, through the winter, were severe. They lost their store-house by fire, and their president by death, and the next year returned to England, considering the country "a cold, barren, mountainous desert," where, in the quaint language of that period, they declared, "they found nothing but extreme extremities."

Settle-  
ment at  
Kenne-  
bec.

**1607**

12. What of his voyage in regard to time? — 13. What was granted to De Monts? By whom? What voyage and discoveries did he make? Who accompanied him? — 14. Between what two companies did the English now divide the country? — What names give to each division? Trace the two divisions on Map III, unless you draw the Maps, and have one of your own to exhibit. — 15. Whom did the Plymouth company send out? What was the success of the settlement at Kennebec?

P'T. I. 16. Thus, after a period of one hundred and ten  
 P'D. II. years, from the time that Cabot discovered North  
 CH. II. America, and twenty-four years after Raleigh planted  
 the first colony, there was not, until 1607, an English  
 man settled in America.

## CHAPTER II.

### First settlement of Virginia.

1. IN 1607, the London Company sent out Captain Christopher Newport, with three ships, and one hundred and five men; among whom was the navigator, Gosnold, and Captain John Smith, the Father of Virginia.

Chesa-  
peake  
discover-  
ed.

1607

2. The fleet sailed by the West Indies, and being driven north of Roanoke in a storm, an accidental discovery was thus made of the entrance of the Chesapeake bay, the boundaries of which were now named Capes Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons.

James-  
town,  
May 13.

3. The adventurers sailed at once into the bay, and up the Powhatan river, to which they gave the name of the James. Upon its banks, fifty miles from its mouth, they fixed their residence, and raised a few huts. The place was called Jamestown, an appellation which it still retains, although nothing now remains but a few falling ruins.

What a  
charter  
is.

4. The King of England, James I., had given the colonists a charter; that is a writing, made like a deed, which he signed, and to which the great seal of England was affixed. These written instruments when made for the settlers, in a wise and righteous manner, gave them privileges which were of great value. But, in this case, the charter left with the king all the power to govern the country.

16. In 1607 what might be said of English colonization?

CHAPTER II.—1. Whom did the London company send out? 2. What discovery was accidentally made? — 3. What course did the fleet take? Where did the emigrants settle? — 4. What is a charter? Did these emigrants receive a favorable charter?

5. To the colonists no assurance was given, but the vague promise, that they should continue to be Englishmen. Religion was established by law, according to the forms and doctrines of the church of England. There was, for the present, no division of property; and for five years, all labor was to be for the benefit of the joint stock.

P'T I.

P'D. II.

CH. II.

No priv-  
ileges to  
the set-  
tlers.

6. The government was to be administered by a council, nominated by the king, but to reside in the colony. As soon as the emigrants landed, the council was organized. They chose Edward Wingfield, their president. They were envious of Captain Smith. He was the proper person to be their head, because he had more talents and more zeal for the settlement, than any other man. But troubles gathered fast, and then they were glad to have Smith for a leader.

First  
president  
Wing-  
field, 2d,  
Smith.

7. The neighboring Indians soon annoyed the colony by their petty hostilities. Their provisions failed, and the scanty allowance to which they were reduced, as well as the influence of a climate to which they were not accustomed, gave rise to disease; so that the number of the colonists rapidly diminished. Sometimes four or five died in a day, and there were not enough of the well, to give decent burial to the dead. Fifty perished before winter, among whom was the excellent Gosnold.

Disasters.

Aug. 22.  
Death of  
Gosnold.  
**1607**

8. The energy and cheerful activity of Smith, threw the only light, which glanced upon the dark picture. He so managed as to awe the natives, and at the same time to conciliate and obtain from them supplies of food; while, among the emigrants, he encouraged the faint hearted, and put in fear the rebellious. Winter at length came, and with it, relief from diseases of climate, and plentiful supplies of wild fowl and game.

Excel-  
lent man-  
agement  
of Smith

9. The London company, with an ignorance of geography, which even then was surprising, had given directions that some of the streams flowing from the

---

5. How was it about religion?—property? — 6. What about the government? Who was chosen president? — 7. What misfortunes befel the colony? — 8. What can you say of the conduct of Captain Smith? — 9. What directions had Smith received? From whom?



P.T. 1. north-west should be followed up, in order to find a  
 P.D. II. passage to the South Sea. Smith was superior to the  
 CH. II. company in intelligence, but he knew the duties of a  
 subordinate; and he therefore prepared to explore the  
 head waters of the river Chickahominy, which answered  
 as nearly as any one, to their description.

Smith  
 can obey  
 as well as  
 com-  
 mand.

1607.  
 Powhat-  
 an and  
 his  
 brother.

10. Powhatan, the chief of the savage confederacy on the waters of the James and its tributaries, had been visited by the colonists early after their arrival. His imperial residence, called from its beautiful location, Nonesuch, consisted of twelve wigwams near the site of Richmond. Next to him in power was his brother, Opechacanough, who was chief of the Pamunkies on the Chickahominy. Smith embarked in a barge on that river, and when he had ascended as far as possible in this manner, he left it, with the order that his party should not land till his return; and, with four attendants, he pursued his objects twenty miles farther up the river.

Indians  
 capture  
 Smith

11. The Indians who had watched his movements, fell upon his men, took them prisoners, and obliged them to discover the track of their captain. He, in pursuit of game, soon found himself hunted by swarms of savage archers. In this extremity he bound to his breast, as a shield, an Indian youth, who was with him; and then he shot three Indians, wounded others, and kept the whole party at bay. Attempting to retreat to his canoe while yet watching his foe, suddenly he sank to his middle, in an oozy creek. The savages dared not even then touch him, till, perishing with cold, he laid down his arms and surrendered.

His ad-  
 dress

12. They carried him to a fire, near which, some of his men had been killed. By his Indian guide and interpreter, he then called for their chief. Opechacanough appeared, and Smith politely presented to him his pocket compass. The Indians were confounded at the motions of the fly-needle, which, on account of the

---

9. What did he know, and what do? — 10. Whom had the colonists visited? Where? Who was chief of the Indians on the Chickahominy? What was the beginning of Smith's adventures on that river? — 11. Relate the circumstances of his capture?



mysterious glass, they could see, but could not touch. He told them wonderful stories of its virtues, and proceeded, as he himself relates, “by the globe-like figure of that jewel, to instruct them, concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the world continually,” by which his auditors were filled with profound amazement.

13. Their minds seemed to labor with the greatness of the thought, that a being so superior was in their power; and they vacillated in their opinion whether or not it was best to put him to death; and as often changed their conduct. They took him to Powhatan, thence led him round from one wondering tribe to another; until, at the residence of Opechacanough, these superstitious dwellers of the forest, employed their sorcerers or powows, for three days, to practice incantations, in order to learn, from the invisible world, whether their prisoner wished them well or ill.

His treatment by the savages.

14. The decision of his fate was finally referred to Powhatan. At his residence, that majestic savage received him in state, but he condemned him to die. Two stones were brought and laid before the chief, and two savages stood with uplifted war-clubs. Smith was dragged to the spot, and his head placed upon the stones. Pocahontas, a young Indian girl, rushed forward, and with cries and tears begged of Powhatan, her father, to spare him. He refused. She then ran and knelt beside the victim, and laid her young head upon his. Then the stern savage relented, and Smith was saved.

His rescue by Pocahontas.

15. Smith having now learned much of the Indians, their country, modes of warfare, dispositions and language, and having also by his great address and honorable bearing, won their affection and confidence, his captivity proved, under Divine Providence, a means of establishing the colony.

1608  
Good brought from evil.

16. During his absence, however, there had been

---

12 Of the manner in which he gave the natives a great idea of his knowledge?—13. Of their thoughts and behaviour towards him?—14. Relate the circumstance of his sentence and deliverance?—15. What view may be taken of Smith's captivity?

P'T. I. disorder and misrule; and when he returned to James  
 P'D. II. town he found only thirty-eight persons remaining  
 CH. III. The spirits of the people were broken; and all, filled  
 with despondency, were anxious to leave a country so  
 inhospitable. He prevailed upon them, however, partly  
 State of by force and partly by persuasion, to remain till the  
 the colony. next year; when Newport arriving from England, with  
 some supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants,  
 hope again revived.

1608. 17. During the year 1608, Captain Smith explored  
 the Chesapeake bay to its head, discovered its fine  
 streams, and gained new information concerning the  
 native productions and inhabitants of the country. In  
 an excursion which he made up the Rappahannock,  
 Smith he had a skirmish with the Mannahoacks, a tribe de-  
 explores scended from the Delawares, and took prisoner a  
 the Ches- brother of one of their chiefs. From him he first  
 apeake. heard of the Iroquois, who, the Indian told him,  
 "dwelt on a great water to the north, had a great many  
 boats, and so many men, that they waged war with all  
 the rest of the world."

18. Immediately on his return he was chosen presi-  
 dent of the council. He found the recent emigrants  
 "goldsmiths and gentlemen." But he promptly gave  
 them their choice, to labor for six hours a day, or have  
 His decis- nothing to eat. He represented to the council in En-  
 ion and g-land that they should send *laborers*; that the search  
 wisdom. of gold should be abandoned, and that "nothing should  
 be expected except by labor."

### CHAPTER III.

Early settlement of Virginia—continued.

1. THE London Company had gradually become  
 enlarged by accessions of men of influence, some of

16. What had happened during Smith's absence? What  
 was the effect of his return? — 17. What did Smith explore?  
 What learn from report? — 18. What happened on his return?  
 What course did he take? What was his advice sent to England?

CHAPTER III.—1. What had been the progress of the London  
 Company?

whom were of the nobility and gentry. Without at all consulting the wishes, and against the interests of the colony, they now obtained from the king a new charter, by which they were to hold the lands in fee; and all the powers of government formerly reserved to the crown, were hereafter to vest in the company. The council in England, chosen by the stockholders, was to appoint a governor, who was to rule the colonists with absolute sway.

P. T. I.  
P. D. II.  
CH. III.

Government  
made  
worse

2. The company now collected five hundred adventurers, many of whom were men of desperate fortunes and abandoned characters. They appointed as governor for life the excellent Lord Delaware, and freighted with the emigrants nine ships, of which Captain Newport was to take the command.

Newport  
sent with  
five hun-  
dred.

3. As Lord Delaware was not ready to embark with the fleet, the admiral, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, were empowered to govern the colony until his arrival. Newport took into his own ship Gates and Somers. Arriving at the Bermudas, a terrible storm separated the fleet. The admiral's vessel was stranded on the rocky shores of Bermuda; a small ketch perished, and only seven of the vessels reached Jamestown.

Wreck-  
ed at  
Bermuda

4. Smith now found himself without authority; and the three persons who alone possessed it, were perhaps in the depths of the ocean. His genius, however, sustained him; and he compelled to submission the disorderly gallants who had just arrived.

1609.  
Smith  
yet at the  
head.

5. Pocahontas repeatedly saved the life of Smith, and preserved this earliest English settlement from destruction. In the various fortunes of the colony, she was its unchanging friend, often coming with her attendants to bring baskets of provisions in times of scarcity, and sometimes giving notice of hostile designs.

Native  
kindness

1. What did they obtain? What was the character of the instrument obtained? — 2. What was the number, and what was the description of the persons sent out? What office had Lord Delaware? What Capt. Newport? — 3. What was the fate of Newport's ship? What persons had he on board? — 4. As neither the governor, or his substitutes were there, what was the position and conduct of Smith? — 5. What is said of Pocahontas?



P'T. I. 6. At length, an accidental explosion of gunpowder  
 P'D. II. so injured Smith, that no medical skill there, could  
 CH. III properly manage his case; and delegating his au-  
 Smith thority to George Percy, he returned to England.—  
 leaves After his departure, all subordination and industry  
 Virginia ceased among the colonists.

7. The Indians, no longer afraid, harassed them, and withheld their customary supplies. Their stores were soon exhausted. The domestic animals were devoured; and, in two instances, the act was perpetrated of feeding on human flesh. Smith left four hundred and ninety persons. In six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number to sixty; and those so feeble and forlorn, that in ten days more they must all have perished.

Great  
 scarcity  
 and dis-  
 tress.

8. In the meantime, Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the rocks of Bermuda, had found there the means to construct a vessel; and now approaching Jamestown, they anticipated a happy meeting with their friends. But, instead of this, but few remained, and they wasted to skeletons. Gates was obliged to yield to the universal cry, desert the settlement, and re-embark with the whole colony. They departed in the morning, and falling down the stream with the tide, they descried, at evening, near the river's mouth, three ships. Lord Delaware, their paternal governor had arrived with supplies; and their hearts were cheered with the consoling thought that God had delivered them. And then the residue returned, a chastened, and a better people.

Depart-  
 ure of the  
 colony.

June,  
 1610.  
 its re-  
 turn.

1611  
 May 10,  
 Sir Tho-  
 mas Dale  
 arrives

9. The colony again became flourishing; but in March, 1611, the governor's health declined, and he was obliged to leave the country. On the departure of Lord Delaware, Percy was again at the head of affairs, until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, in May. Although good order and industry now prevailed, yet

6. What now happened to Smith? What was the conduct of the colonists? — 7. What consequences ensued? — 8. Relate the circumstances of Sir Thomas Gates arrival? What was he obliged to do? Where were the people, and what their feelings on Lord Delaware's arrival? — 9. How long did Lord Delaware remain in the country?



## A BAD MAN MAKES A BAD GOVERNOR.

the state of the colony was not flourishing, and Dale immediately wrote to England for aid. In less than four months, Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with six ships and three hundred emigrants.

10. Pocahontas, after the departure of Capt. Smith, received Christian baptism under the name of Rebecca; and then married John Rolfe, a young Englishman of the colony. She went with her husband to England, where special attention was paid her by the king and queen, at the instigation of Smith. She had been told that he was dead; and when he came to see her she turned away, and for a time could not, or would not speak. He kindly soothed her, and at length she addressed him as her father, and recalled the scenes of their early acquaintance. Having given birth to a son, she was about to return, when she sickened and died, at the age of twenty-two. Her son survived and reared an offspring, which is perpetuated in some of the best families in Virginia.

P'T. I.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

1613

Baptism  
and  
mar-  
riage of  
Poca-  
hontas.

Her  
death.

## CHAPTER IV.

Virginia—Hudson River—Canada.

1. In 1617, Captain Argall was made acting governor of Virginia. Lord Delaware having attempted to reach the settlement, died on the passage. Argall governed with so much rigor, as to excite universal discontent. Not only did he play the tyrant over the colonists, but he cheated the company. The rumor of his oppression made emigration unpopular. By the influence of the good Sir Edwin Sandys, the benevolent Yearlly was sent over to take his place.

1617.  
Argall's  
miscon-  
duct.

9. On what occasion did their numbers receive an accession?  
10. With whom did Pocahontas go to England? What took place there? Whom did she meet and how? Has she left descendants?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What is here said of Argall? What effect had the report of his bad conduct? Who was sent as governor?

P'T. I.

P'D. II.

CH. IV.

**1619.**The first  
general  
assembly.

2. Governor Yearly called the first general assembly which was held in Virginia, consisting of representatives, chosen from among the people, who were to act conjointly with the governor and council appointed by the company, in all matters of importance. The colonists, who, till then, had been nothing more than the servants of the company, were thus raised to the distinction and privileges of freemen.

They  
meet at  
James-  
town.

3. In this assembly, which met at Jamestown, eleven boroughs were each represented by two burgesses. For this cheering dawn of civil liberty, the colonists expressed to the company "the greatest possible thanks," and forthwith "fell to building houses and planting corn."

Young  
women  
sent as  
wives.

4. In order to attach the colonists more entirely to their new settlements, there was, about this time, sent out, by the advice of Sandys, a considerable number of young women of humble birth, but of unexceptionable character, as wives for the young planters. The price paid for the passage of each was at first one hundred, and afterwards, one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. To fail of discharging debts so incurred, was esteemed particularly dishonorable.

**1620.**Convicts  
sent to  
the colo-  
ny.

5. About this time were introduced also into the colony, by order of King James, many idle and dissolute persons, then in custody for their offences. They were dispersed throughout the colony, and employed as laborers.

Slavery  
com-  
mences.**1609.**Hudson  
River  
discovered

6. A Dutch ship from Africa arriving at Jamestown, a part of her cargo of negroes was purchased by the colony. This was the commencement of negro slavery in the United States.

7. In 1609, occurred the discovery of the Hudson river, which has proved the finest for navigation of any in republican America. Henry Hudson, the discoverer,

---

2. What important privilege did the people obtain? Of whom did the first assembly consist?—3. Where did they meet?—What did they express, and what do?—4. What was done to attach them to their new homes? What price was paid?—5. What unwholesome settlers were introduced?—6. When did slavery commence?—7. Who discovered the great river of New York?

was an Englishmen by birth, but was in the service of the Dutch East India Company. The next year, the Dutch sent ships to this river, to open a trade with the natives; but the Court of England disowned their claim to the country. The Dutch, however, followed up their good fortune, and soon erected Forts Orange and Manhattan, near the sites of Albany and New York.

8. In 1608, Champlain, under De Monts, conducted a colony to America, and founded Quebec. Wishing to secure the friendship of the adjacent natives, he consented, the next year, to accompany them on an expedition against the Iroquois, with whom they were at war. They entered upon the lake which now bears, in honor of its discoverer, the name of Champlain, and traversed it until they approached its junction with Lake St. Sacrament, now Lake George. Here, in the vicinity of Ticonderoga, a bloody engagement took place, in which Champlain and his allies were victorious.

P'T. I.

P'D. II.

CH. IV.

**1608.**Cham-  
plain  
founds  
Quebec.**1609**Discov-  
ers  
Lake  
Cham-  
plain.

9. Captain Smith, after his return from Virginia, explored the north-eastern coast of the United States with a trading squadron of two ships. Smith sailed in the largest, and the other was commanded by Captain Hunt; before mentioned as having kidnapped twenty-seven of the subjects of Massasoit. Smith accurately examined the shore, with its bays and rivers, from the mouth of the Penobscot to Cape Cod, and having drawn a map, he laid it, on his return, before Prince Charles, with a hint, that so beautiful and excellent a country deserved to bear an honorable name. The Prince listened to his suggestion, and declared that it should thereafter be called NEW ENGLAND.

**1614.**Smith in  
N. Eng-  
land.With  
Captain  
Hunt.

10. The French having established themselves within the limits of the northern colony of Virginia, Capt. Argall was sent from Jamestown to dispossess them.

---

7. What was done by the Dutch? Were the English satisfied? What important cities were begun? — 8. Relate what was done by Champlain at the North? — 9. In what enterprise was Captain Smith now engaged? With whom? What was done on Smith's return?



P'T. I. He destroyed Port Royal, and all the French settle-  
 P'D. II. ments in Acadia. On his return he visited the Dutch  
 CH. IV. at Manhattan, and demanded possession of the country  
 Argall in the name of the British sovereign. The Dutch  
 subdues traders made no scruple to acknowledge the supremacy  
 the of King James, and, under him, that of the governor  
 French and of Virginia.  
 Dutch.

---

10. Relate Captain Argall's expedition and its results ?

---

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period ? What is its date ? Point it out on the chronographer. Sir Walter Raleigh obtained a transfer of Gilbert's patent in 1583, and sent two vessels to the south under Amidas and Barlow. Queen Elizabeth named the country which they discovered, Virginia. Point out the place of this date.

Raleigh sent out a squadron of seven ships under Sir Richard Grenville, in 1585. Point out this date on the chronographer. Both these attempts to colonize the country were unsuccessful, and Raleigh again sent out a colony in 1587, under Captain White. Show the place of this date.

Gosnold discovered Cape Cod in 1602. What is the place of this date ? De Monts discovered the bay of Fundy and founded Port Royal in 1604. Point out this date. The London and Plymouth Companies were established by James I., in 1606. Point out the place of this year. Chesapeake Bay was discovered by Captain Christopher Newport, and Jamestown founded in 1607.

Captain Smith was taken prisoner by the Indians and rescued by Pocahontas the same year. Point out its place on the chronographer. The London Company obtained a new charter from James I. in 1608, and Lord Delaware was appointed governor. Show the place of this year.

Governor Yeardley called the first General Assembly, in Virginia, in 1619. What is the place of this date ? Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson river in 1609. Champlain, under De Monts, discovered Lake Champlain in the same year. Point out the place of the year. In 1614, Captain Smith explored the northeastern coast of the United States which Prince Charles named New England. Point out the place of the date. At what epoch does this period terminate ? What is its date ? Point out its place on the chronographer.



The teacher can, if he chooses, change the order of the questions and ask, "When did Raleigh send out?" &c. Then say to the pupil, "Locate the year." But the author would not recommend that the pupil's memory should be severely taxed to remember dates.





The Cabin of the May Flower.

## PERIOD III.

FROM  
THE LANDING {1620} OF THE PILGRIMS,  
TO  
THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE CONFEDERACY, {1643} BY THE UNION OF THE  
NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

### CHAPTER I.

Departure of the Pilgrims from England, and their sojourn in Holland.

1. In 1592, a law was passed in England, requiring all persons to attend the established worship, under penalty of banishment, and if they returned, of death. Among those who could not conscientiously comply with these exactions, were JOHN ROBINSON and his congregation, who lived in the north of England. They belonged to that sect of the Puritans, or dissenters from the church of England, called Separatists.

2. To enjoy their religion, the pastor, and his whole flock, determined to exile themselves to Holland. But

CHAPTER I.—1. Who were John Robinson and his congregation? — 2. What was their object in seeking to change their country?

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. I.  
**1592.**  
Robinson  
and his  
people.



**P.T.I.** this was a difficult undertaking. Once they embarked  
**P.D.III.** with their families and goods at Boston, in Lincoln-  
**CH. I.** shire. But the treacherous captain had plotted with  
**1607.** English officers, who came on board the vessel, took  
 Attempt to go to  
 Holland. their effects, searched the persons of the whole com-  
 pany for money, and then, in presence of a gazing  
 multitude, led them on shore, and to prison. They  
 were soon released, except seven of the principal men,  
 who were detained and brought to trial, but at length  
 freed.

**1608.** 3. Again they bargained with a Dutch ship-master  
 Second attempt. at Hull, who was to take them in from a common, hard  
 by. At the time appointed, the women and children  
 sailed to the place of rendezvous in a small bark, and  
 the men came by land. The bark had grounded; but  
 the Dutch captain sent his boat and took the men from  
 the strand. But, in the meantime, the authorities of  
 Hull had notice; and the Dutch commander, at the sight  
 of a large armed company, having a fair wind, with oaths,  
 hoisted anchor, and sailed away; although the pilgrims  
 even wept, thus to leave their wives and children.

**Distress of the women.** 4. Behold now these desolate women, the mothers  
 of a future nation, their husbands forcibly carried off  
 to sea, while on land an armed multitude are approach-  
 ing! They are taken, and dragged from one magistrate  
 to another, while their children, cold and hungry, and  
 affrighted, are weeping and clinging around them. But  
 their piteous condition and Christian demeanor soft-  
 ened, at length, the hearts of their persecutors, and  
 even gained friends to their cause.

**Storm at sea.** 5. The men, in the meantime, encountered one of  
 the most terrific sea storms ever known, continuing  
 fourteen days, during seven of which, they saw neither  
 sun, moon, or stars.\*

At length they all arrived in Holland. They settled  
 at first in Amsterdam. They did not, however, find

\* For the use of *or* after *neither*, which euphony here requires, we have the authority of Noah Webster, and the usage of the best English writers.

2. What happened on their first attempt?—3. What on their second?—4. What trouble did the women meet with?—5. What the men? When in Holland, where did they first settle?



cause to be satisfied, and they removed to Leyden. Here, by hard labor and frugal honesty, they lived highly respected; but after a few years they experienced evils, which made them think of another removal.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III  
CH. I.

6. Not only were their own toils constant and severe, but they were obliged to employ their children, so that they were necessarily deprived of education. And the health of the young, often fell a sacrifice to the length of time and confined positions, in which they labored. Some died, and some became deformed. Their morals also were likely to suffer from the habitual profanation of the sabbath, witnessed around them.

Leyden

Reasons  
for re-  
moval.

7. The Pilgrims had heard of America; and in its wilderness, they believed that they might serve God unmolested, and found a church, where not only the oppressed in England, but unborn generations, might enjoy a pure worship. The Dutch wished them to colonize under their government. But they still loved their country; and they sent agents to England, to procure, by the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys, a patent under the Virginia Company.

Agents  
go to En-  
gland.

8. For the encouragement of this company, disheartened by the failures at Chesapeake Bay, Robinson, and Brewster, the ruling elder of his church, wrote to Sir Edwin, showing, in five particulars, the difference of their motives, their circumstances, and characters, from those of other adventurers. *First*, "We verily believe the Lord is with us, to whose service we have given ourselves, and that he will graciously prosper our endeavors, according to the simplicity of our hearts therein. *Second*, We are all well weaned from the delicate milk of our mother country, and inured to a strange and hard land, wherein we have learned patience.

Letter to  
Sir E.  
Sandys.

9. *Third*, our people are as industrious and frugal as any in the world. *Fourth*, We are knit together in a

The Pil-  
grims a  
peculiar  
people

5. Where remove? In what estimation were they held? — 6. What reasons had they for another removal? — 7. What for thinking of America? What did the Dutch wish? What moved the Pilgrims to send agents to England? — 8. Who wrote a letter? To whom? To show what? Mention the first particular! The second? — 9. The third? — fourth?

P'T. I. sacred bond of the Lord, whereof we make great con-  
 P'D. III. science, holding ourselves tied to all care of each other's  
 CH. I. good. *Fifth*, It is not with us as with other men, whom  
 small discontentments can discourage, and cause to wish  
 themselves at home again. We have nothing to hope  
 for from England or Holland, and our lives are draw-  
 ing towards their period."

Contract  
with  
London  
mer-  
chants.

10. By the aid of Sandys, the petitioners obtained the patent. But they needed money. To provide this, their agents formed a stock company, jointly, with some men of business in London, of whom Mr. Thomas Weston was the principal; they to furnish the capital, the emigrants to pledge their labor for seven years, at ten pounds per man; and the profits of the enterprise, all houses, lands, gardens, and fields, to be divided at the end of that time among the stockholders, according to their respective shares.

Aug. 3d,  
1620.  
Prepara-  
tion.

11. They then prepared two small vessels, the May-Flower and the Speedwell; but these would hold only a part of the company, and it was decided that the youngest and most active should go, and the older, among whom was the pastor, should remain. If they were successful, they were to send for those behind; if unsuccessful, to return, though poor, to them.

Parting  
at Delft-  
Haven.

12. Previous to their separation, this memorable church worshipped together for the last time, on an appointed day, when they humbled themselves by fast-  
 ing, and "sought of the Lord a right way for them-  
 selves and their children." When they must no longer  
 tarry, their brethren accompanied them from Leyden  
 to the shore at Delft-Haven. Here the venerable pas-  
 tor knelt with his flock upon the ground; and the  
 wanderers, while tears flowed down their cheeks,  
 heard for the last time, his beloved voice in exhorta-  
 tion, and in prayer for them. "But they knew they  
 were PILGRIMS, and lifted up their eyes to heaven,  
 their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

9. The fifth. — 10. What did they obtain? What did they then need? How contrive to procure it? — 11. What did the agents then prepare? Could all go? Which part was to go? On what condition did the others remain? — 12. Give an account of their parting?

## CHAPTER II

## Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America.

1. From Delft-Haven, the Pilgrims sailed to Southampton, in England. Among the leaders of the party was ELDER BREWSTER, who at this time was fifty-six, but sound in body, as in spirit. JOHN CARVER was near his age, beloved and trusted, as he was good and wise. WILLIAM BRADFORD was strong, bold, and enduring; but withal, a meek and prudent Christian. Next these in honor, and superior in native endowments, was EDWARD WINSLOW. He was at this time twenty-six; Bradford was thirty-two. MILES STANDISH had been in the English army, and was a brave and resolute officer.

P.T. 1  
-----  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

Leading  
men.

2. After remaining in Southampton a fortnight, the party put to sea. But misfortunes befalling, they returned, left the Speedwell, and finally, to the number of one hundred, they set sail from Plymouth, in the solitary May-Flower. On the 6th of September, they took their last, sad look, of their native shore. After a stormy and perilous passage, they made land, on the 9th of November, at Cape Cod.

Sept. 6,  
Final de  
parture

3. The mouth of the Hudson had been selected as the place of their settlement, and they accordingly steered southerly; but soon falling in with dangerous breakers, and all, especially the women, being impatient to leave the ship, they determined to return and settle on or near the Cape. The next day they turned the point of that singular projection, and entered the harbor, now called Provincetown.

Nov. 9,  
at Cape  
Cod.

4. They fell on their knees to thank the kind Power who had preserved them amidst so many dangers; and

---

CHAPTER II.—1. From Holland where did the Pilgrims next go? Name their leading men. What is said of the first named? The second? The third? The fourth? The fifth?—2. What happened when they first put out to sea? From what place did they last depart? In what vessel? How many persons? What was the length and character of the passage? What the first land made?—3. On what place had they intended to settle? Why did they change their minds?—4. What was their first act on arriving?



P'T. I. then "they did," says Cotton Mather, "as the light of  
 P'D. III. nature itself directed them, immediately, in the harbor,  
 CH. II. sign an instrument, as the foundation of their future  
 1620. and needful government;" solemnly combining them  
 Nov. 11 selves into a civil body politic, to enact all such ordi-  
 Compact nances, and frame all such constitutions and offices, as,  
 signed in the cabin. from time to time, should be thought most meet and  
 convenient for the general good; *all which they bound themselves to obey.*

An  
 Important trans-  
 action.  
 5. This simple, but august compact, was the first of a series, by which the fetters of a vast system of political oppression have been broken. Upon some parts of the old continent that system still remains; building upon the fiction, that sovereigns own the world and its inhabitants, having derived all from God; and that the people are to have only such a measure of personal freedom, and such possessions, as kings may choose to bestow. Here was assumed for the first time the grand principle of a *voluntary confederacy of independent men; instituting government, for the good, not of the governors, but of the governed.*

100 of the  
 Pilgrims.  
 6. There were the same number of persons on board the May-Flower as had left England; but one, a servant, had died; and one, a male child, Peregrine White, was born on the passage. Carver was immediately chosen governor, and Standish, captain.

Nov. 11. They go on shore the same day in which they sign the compact.  
 7. No comfortable home, or smiling friends, awaited the Pilgrims. They, who went on shore, waded through the cold surf, to a homeless desert. But a place to settle in must be found, and no time was to be lost. The shallop unfortunately needed repairs, and in the meantime a party set out to make discoveries by land. They found "a little corn, and many graves;" and in a second excursion they encountered the chilling blasts of a November snow storm, which laid in some, the foundation of mortal disease. The country was wooded, and tolerably stocked with game.

4. What their next step? For what did they combine into one body? To what did they bind themselves? — 5. What may be said of this compact? Upon what action are some governments founded? What was here assumed? — 6. What number of persons arrived? What officers were chosen? — 7. What can you say of their first arrival? What had they to do? What excursions did they make?



8. When the shallop was finished, Carver, Bradford and Winslow, with a party of eighteen, manned the feeble bark, and set forth. Steering along the western shore of Cape Cod, they made, in three days, the inner circuit of the bay. "It was," says one of the number, "very cold; for the water froze our clothes, and made them many times like coats of iron." They landed occasionally to explore; and at night, inclosed with only a slight barricade of boughs, they stretched themselves upon the hard ground.

9. On the second morning, as their devotions closed, they received a shower of Indian arrows; when, sallying out, they discharged their guns, and the savages fled. Again they offered prayers with thanksgiving; and proceeding on their way, their shallop was nearly wrecked by a wintry storm of terrible violence. After unspeakable dangers, they sheltered themselves under the lee of a small island, where, amidst darkness and rain, they landed, and with difficulty, made a fire. In the morning, they found themselves at the entrance of a harbor. The next day was the Sabbath. They rested and kept it holy, though all that was dear to them depended on their promptness.

10. The next day, *the pilgrims landed on the rock of Plymouth*. Finding the harbor good, springs abundant, and the land promising for tillage, they decided to settle here, and named the place from that which they last left in England. In a few days they brought the May-Flower to the harbor; and on the 25th of December they began building, having first divided the whole company into nineteen families, and assigned them contiguous lots, of size according to that of the family, about eight feet front, and fifty deep, to each person. Each man was to build his own house. Besides this, the company were to make a building of twenty feet square, as a common receptacle. This was

P'T I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. II.  
**1620.**  
Dec. 6,  
A party  
set sail  
in the  
shallop.

Dec. 8.  
Attack'd  
by the  
Nau-ets.  
Satur-  
day,  
Dec. 19.  
At  
Clarke's  
Island,  
just  
within  
Plym'th  
harbor.  
Sun. 11

Mon  
day, 12  
Pilgrim  
land on  
Ply-  
mouth  
Rock.

8. What party set sail in the shallop? What course did they take? What sufferings encounter? — 9. What happened on the second morning? Recollect Capt. Hunt, and say if these Indians had any cause to dislike the English? Relate what further happened, and where the Pilgrims landed? How did they spend the Sabbath? — 10. On what day and year did the Pilgrims land on the rock of Plymouth? At what time commence building? How proceed with it? How divide the land?

P.T. 1. soonest completed, but was unfortunately destroyed by fire.

P.D. III.  
CH. III.

They  
suffer,  
but re-  
pine not.

April 5,  
1621.

11. Their huts went up but slowly ; for though their hearts were strong, yet their hands had grown feeble, through fatigue, hardship, and scanty fare. Many were wasting with consumptions. Daily some yielded to sickness, and daily some sunk to the grave. Before spring, half of their number, among whom were the governor and his wife, lay buried on the shore. Yet they never repined, or repented of the step they had taken ; and when, on the 5th of April, the May-Flower left them, not one, so much as spoke of returning to England. They rather confessed the continual mercies of a "wonder-working Providence," that had carried them through so many dangers, and was making them, the honored instruments, of so great a work.

NOTE.—The dates in this part of History are of course given according to Old Style, since New Style was not adopted by the English government until 132 years after this period. For a clear explanation of this subject, see the word *Style*, in Webster's large dictionary.

## CHAPTER III.

The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets.

March  
16,  
First  
visit

1. THE Pilgrims had as yet seen but few of the natives, and those hostile, when Samoset, an Indian, who had learned a little English at Penobscot, boldly entered their village, with a cheerful "Welcome Englishmen." He soon came again, with four others, among whom was Tisquantum, who had spread favorable reports of the English among his countrymen, and was afterwards of great service as an interpreter.

The re-  
ception.

2. They gave notice that Massasoit, the sachem of the Pokanokets, was hard by. He appeared on a hill, with a body of attendants, armed, and painted with gaudy colors. The chief desired that some one should

11. What was their condition during this first winter ? Did they repine and complain ?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was Samoset ? Tisquantum ? — 2. What notice did they give ? Who was Massasoit ? What did he do, and what desire ?

be sent to confer with him. Edward Winslow, famed for the sweetness of his disposition and behavior, as well as for his talents, courage, and efficiency, was wisely chosen. Captain Standish found means to make a martial show, with drums and trumpets; which gave the savages wonderful delight.

3. The sachem, on coming into the village, was so well pleased with the attentions paid him, that he acknowledged the authority of the king of England, and entered into an alliance, offensive and defensive, with the colonists, which remained inviolate for more than fifty years.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. III.  
  
Alliance  
with  
Massa  
soit

4. In July, Edward Winslow and Stephen Hopkins, went on an embassy to Massasoit, at Montaup. The sachem was much pleased, with the present of a red coat, from Governor Bradford, who had succeeded Carver. The envoys obtained from him an engagement, that the furs of the Pokanokets should be sold to the colony.

1621.  
July.  
Embassy

5. Massasoit feared the Narragansetts, and was doubtless, on that account, desirous of cultivating the friendship of the English. Canonicus, the old hereditary chieftain of that confederacy, perhaps offended at this intimacy, or regarding the whites as intruders, meditated a war against them. This he openly intimated, by sending to Governor Bradford, a bunch of arrows, tied with the skin of a rattlesnake. Bradford stuffed the skin with powder and ball, and sent it back; and nothing more was heard, at that time, of war.

Narra-  
gansetts  
threaten.  
Jan.  
1622.

6. The next year, news came to Plymouth, that Massasoit was sick. Winslow taking suitable articles, went to Montaup. He found the Indians bewailing, and practising their noisy powows or incantations, around the sightless chieftain. Affectionately he extended his hand and exclaimed, "Art thou Winsnow?" (He could not articulate the liquid l.) "Art thou Winsnow? But, O, Winsnow! I shall never see thee

Winslow  
visits the  
sick  
chief

2. What was done, and who chosen by the Pilgrims? — 3. What alliance made? — 4. What visit was afterwards made? What trade secured? — 5. What Indians was Massasoit afraid of? How did their chief threaten the Pilgrims? How did Governor Bradford reply? — 6. Give an account of Winslow's second visit to Massasoit.



P'T I more." Winslow administered cordials, and he re-  
 P'D. III covered. He then revealed a conspiracy which the  
 CH. III. Indians had formed and requested him to join. "But  
 now," said he, "I know that the English love me."

A ren-  
 counter. 7. Agreeably to Massasoit's advice, that a bold stroke  
 should be struck, and the heads of the plot taken off,  
 the intrepid Standish, with a party of only eight, went  
 into the hostile country, attacked a house where the  
 principal conspirators had met, and put them to death.

8. In justice to the Indians, it should be stated,  
 that they were provoked to this conspiracy, by "Mas-  
 ter Weston's men." These were a colony of sixty  
 Englishmen, sent over in June, 1622, by Thomas  
 Weston. Though hospitably received at Plymouth,  
 they stole the young corn from the stalk, and thus  
 brought want and distress upon the settlers the en-  
 suing winter and spring. They then made a short-  
 lived and pernicious settlement, at Weymouth.  
 Weston was a London merchant, once the friend of  
 the Pilgrims.

1624 to 1626. 9. Notwithstanding all the hardships, all the wisdom  
 and constancy, of the colonists, the partners of the  
 concern in London complained of small returns; and  
 even had the meanness to send a vessel to rival them  
 in their trade with the Indians. Winslow went to  
 England, and negotiated a purchase for himself and  
 seven of his associates in the colony, by which the  
 property was vested in them; and they sold out to the  
 colony at large, for the consideration of a monopoly  
 of the trade with the Indians for six years.

10. New Plymouth now began to flourish. For  
 the land being divided, each man labored for himself  
 and his family. The government was a *pure democ-*  
*racy*, resembling that now exercised in a town meet-  
 ing. Each male inhabitant had a vote; the governor  
 had two.

---

7. In what respect did the Pilgrims follow the sachem's ad-  
 vice? — 8. By whom had the natives been provoked? — 9. On  
 what account did Winslow go to England? What bargain did  
 he make? To whom did the eight first purchasers sell out?  
 And for what consideration? — 10. Why did New Plymouth  
 now flourish? What was their government at first?



11. Numbers of their brethren of the church at Leyden came over within the first few years to join the settlement. The people of Plymouth gave a thousand pounds to assist them to emigrate. But the good Robinson was not permitted to enter the land of his hopes and affections. He died in Leyden, 1625, to the great grief of the Pilgrims.

P'T.I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IV.  
**1625.**  
Death of  
Robinson.  
son.

## CHAPTER IV.

Grand Council of Plymouth.—New Hampshire—Massachusetts Bay.

1. In November, 1620, the same month in which the Pilgrims arrived on the American coast, James I. issued a charter, or patent, to the duke of Lenox, the marquisses of Buckingham and Hamilton, the earls of Arundel and Warwick, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and thirty-four associates; styling them the "Grand Council of Plymouth, for planting and governing New England, in America." This patent granted them the territory between the "fortieth and forty-eighth degrees of north latitude, and extending throughout the main land from sea to sea.

**1620.**  
Grand  
Council.  
Sweep-  
ing pa-  
tent.

2. This territory, which had been previously called North Virginia, now received the name of New England, by royal authority. From this patent were derived all the subsequent grants, under which, the New England colonies were settled. But the persons who transacted business for the company, were unacquainted with geography, and avaricious. They accordingly made their grants in an ignorant or dishonest manner; so that much trouble ensued.

North  
Virginia  
called  
New  
England

11. Did any of their brethren from Leyden come over? Did the good Robinson?

CHAPTER IV.—1. Of whom did the Grand Council of Plymouth consist? Of whom receive a charter? When? What was the territory granted them?—2. How was the name changed? What was derived from this patent? How was the business of the company transacted?

P'T. I

P'D. III  
CH. IV.Gorges  
and  
Mason.

3 Sir Ferdinando Gorges had been an officer in the navy of Elizabeth, and a companion of Sir Walter Raleigh. He was ambitious, and perhaps thought he should become the duke or prince of some large territory. He was the prime mover in getting up the Grand Council of Plymouth, and was made its President. Similar motives actuated Captain Mason, and he became its Secretary.

**1621.**March 9,  
Patent of  
Mariana.

4. Mason procured from the Grand Council the absurd grant of "all the land from the river of Naumkeag, (Salem,) round Cape Ann, to the mouth of the Merrimack, and all the country lying between the two rivers, and all islands within three miles of the coast." The district was to be called *Mariana*.

**1622.**Charter  
of Maine  
and  
N. H.

5. The next year Gorges and Mason jointly obtained of the Council another patent of "all the lands between the Merrimack and Kennebec rivers, extending back to the great lakes, and river of Canada." This tract received the name of *Lacaonia*. Under this grant some feeble settlements were made at the mouth

**1623.**Settle-  
ments.

of the Piscataqua, and as far up the river, as the present town of Dover.

Mr.  
White,  
the pat-  
ron of  
Mass.

6. The persecution of the Puritans in England continued, and Mr. White, a minister of Dorchester, projected another colony to America. As early as 1624, a few persons were established on the site of Salem.

**1628.**Patent  
for Mass.

7. Several gentlemen of Dorchester purchased of the Grand Council in 1628, a patent "of that part of New England which lies between three miles north of the Merrimack river, and three miles to the south of Charles river, and extending from the Atlantic to the South Sea." This tract was in part covered by Mason's patent.

The pio-  
neer of  
Salem.

8 John Endicot, a rugged puritan, began in Salem, the "wilderness-work for the colony of Massachusetts." He brought over his family, and other emigrants, to the number of one hundred. Roger Conant

---

3. Who was Sir F. Gorges? What person had similar objects? — 4. What patent did Mason obtain? — 5. What patent did Mason and Gorges obtain jointly? — 6. Who projected another colony to America? Where was a settlement begun? — 7. What patent was obtained? — 8. Who was the pioneer for the Bay state? Where did he begin? How many bring over?

and two other persons from New Plymouth, had selected this spot, then called Naumkeag, for their settlement; and Conant was there, to give, to Endicot and his party, such welcome to the New World, as the desert forest could afford.

9. The next year, the proprietors in England, obtained of King Charles a charter, confirming the patent of the Council of Plymouth, and conveying to them powers of government. They were incorporated by the name of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England." The first general court of the company was held in England, when they fixed upon a form of government for the colony, and appointed Endicot governor.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.

1629  
Charter  
to the  
Bay  
Comp

10. About three hundred persons sailed for America during this year. A part of them joined Mr. Endicot at Salem, and the remainder, exploring the coast for a better station, laid the foundation of Charlestown.

Charles-  
town  
founded.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Colony of Massachusetts Bay.

1. A more extensive emigration was now thought of, than had been before attempted. But an objection arose; the colony was to be governed by a council residing in England. To obviate this hindrance, the company agreed to form a council of those who should emigrate, and who might hold their sessions thereafter in the new settlement.

The  
"best"  
sent.

2. On the election, the excellent JOHN WINTHROP was chosen governor. He had afterwards for his

8. Who was on the spot to receive them? — 9. What did the proprietors obtain? Where hold their first court? Whom make governor? — 10. How many came over during 1629? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER V.—1. What objections arose to an extensive emigration? What was done to obviate it? — 2. Who was chosen to go over as governor?



**P.T. I.** eulogy, a praise beyond that of any other person in  
**F.D. III.** the colony. "He was," say they, "unto us as a mo-  
**CH. V.** ther, parent-like distributing his goods, and gladly  
**1630.** bearing our infirmities; yet did he ever maintain the  
 Fifteen figure and honor of his place, with the spirit of a true  
 hundred gentleman." The company had determined to colo-  
 emigrate. nize only their "best." Eight hundred accompanied  
 Winthrop; and, during the season, seventeen vessels  
 were employed, bringing over in all, fifteen hundred  
 persons.

**Arrive at** 3. Winthrop and his friends, found no luxurious  
**Salem in** table spread for them in the wilderness; but they freely  
**June.** gave of their own stores, to the famished and enfeebled  
 sufferers, whom they met. Regarding Salem as suffi-  
 ciently peopled, the newly-arrived, located themselves  
 without delay, beyond its limits. Their first care,  
 wherever they went, was to provide for the ministra-  
 tion of the gospel. Settlements were soon begun, and  
 churches established at Charlestown, Dorchester, Bos-  
 ton, Roxbury, Lynn, and Watertown.

**1632.** 4. Unused, as many of these settlers were, to aught  
 but plenty and ease, the hardships before them, though  
 borne with a willing mind, were too much for the  
**Hard-** body, especially in the case of women. Many died,  
**ships en-** though in the joy of believing. Among these, was the  
**dured.** beloved Arbella Johnson, of the noble house of Lin-  
 coln. Her husband, Isaac Johnson, the principal of  
 the emigrants in respect to wealth, felt her loss so se-  
 verely, that he soon followed her to the grave. He  
 made a liberal bequest to the colony, and died "in  
 sweet peace."

**1631.** 5. Agreeably to the charter which the Company of  
**Affairs of** Massachusetts Bay had received from the king, the vo-  
**govern-** ters agreed that important regulations should be enact-  
**ment.** ed in an assembly of all the freemen. A meeting was  
 convened at Boston, in October; when Winthrop was  
 re-elected governor, and Thomas Dudley, who had

---

2. What his character? What kind of persons and how many  
 accompanied him? — 3. What was the conduct of Winthrop and  
 his friends? Where were the first villages and churches? — 4.  
 What can you say of the hardships endured? Who among  
 others died? — 5. When was an assembly held in Boston? Who  
 was chosen to office?



been a faithful steward to the earl of Lincoln, was chosen deputy-governor.

P.T. 1.

P.D. III

Ch. VI

6. At the first, the freemen all went to Boston to vote, every man for himself. The government then was a *simple democracy*. But the settlements were soon so spread, that some would have to go many miles. They then concluded to choose certain of their number, as is now done in our freeman's meetings, to go to the seat of government and do their public business for them. This was changing the government to a *representative democracy*. The same change took place in most of the other colonies.

Govern-  
ment  
changes.

7. Charles I., the son and successor of James I., was no less violent in his religious and political despotism; and emigrants continued to flock to New England. In the year 1635, not less than three thousand arrived, among whom, was the younger Henry Vane, afterwards much known in the history of England.

1635.

3000 emi-  
grate to  
N. E.

8. The high manner of Vane, his profound religious feeling, and his great knowledge, so wrought in his favor, that, disregarding his youth, the people rashly withdrew their suffrages from the good Winthrop, and chose him governor, the year after his arrival.

Vane  
governor.  
1636.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Rhode Island and its first Founder.

1. ROGER WILLIAMS, a puritan minister, had been driven from England by persecution. When he arrived in Massachusetts, he proclaimed, that the only business of the human legislator is with the actions of man as they affect his fellow-man; but as for the thoughts and

Feb. 5,  
1631.Views on  
tolera-  
tion.

6 What kind of government was first in use in the colonies generally? To what kind was it changed? — 7. Who succeeded James I. as king of England? Was he less violent in persecution? What can you say respecting emigration and emigrants? — 8. What can you say of Henry Vane?

CHAPTER VI.—Who was Roger Williams? What new opinions did he proclaim?

**P'T I.** feelings of his mind, and the acts or omissions of his  
**P'D. III.** life, as respects religious worship, the only law-giver  
**OH. VI.** is God; and the only human tribunal, a man's own  
 conscience.

**1635.**  
**Williams**  
**settled at**  
**Salem.**

2. The minds of the puritan fathers were troubled by these new and strange doctrines, which they believed would, unless checked, destroy all that they had suffered so much to establish. Williams, the eloquent young divine, frank and affectionate, had, however, won the hearts of the people of Salem; and they invited him to settle with them as their pastor. The general court forbade it. Williams withdrew to Plymouth, where he remained as pastor for two years; and then returned to Salem, where he was again gladly received by the people.

**Salem**  
**disfranchised.**

**Williams**  
**banished.**

3. The court punished the town for this offence, by withholding a tract of land, to which they had a claim. Williams wrote to the churches, endeavoring to show the injustice of this proceeding; whereupon the court ordered, that, until ample apology was made for the letter, Salem should be disfranchised. Then all, even his wife, yielded to the clamor against him; but he declared to the court, before whom he was arraigned, that he was ready to be bound, or, if need were, to attest with his life, his devotion to his principles. The court, however, pronounced against him the sentence of exile.

**1636.**

4. Winter was approaching, and he obtained permission to remain till spring. The affections of his people revived, and throngs collected to hear the beloved voice, soon to cease from among them. The authorities became alarmed, and sent a pinnace to convey him to England; but he had disappeared.

5. Now a wanderer in the wilderness, he had not, upon many a stormy night, either "food, or fire, or company," nor better lodging than the hollow of a tree. At last, a few followers having joined him, he

---

2. How did they affect the minds of the Puritan settlers? Relate what happened respecting Williams? — 3. What did the general court after Salem had twice received Williams? What letter did Williams write? What was the consequence? — 4. Was the sentence of Williams immediately executed? 5. What happened now to Williams?

fixed at Seckonk, since Rehoboth, within the limits of the colony of Plymouth. Winslow was now governor there; and he felt himself obliged to communicate to Williams, that his remaining would breed disturbance between the two colonies; and he added his advice to that privately conveyed to Williams, by a letter from Winthrop, "to steer his course to Narragansett Bay."

P.T.I.  
P'D III  
CH. VI.

He goes  
to the  
Narra-  
gansetts.

6. Williams now threw himself upon the mercy of Canonicus. In a little time he so won upon him, that he extended his hospitality to him and his suffering company. He would not, he said, *sell* his land, but he freely *gave* to Williams, whose neighborhood he now coveted, and who was favored by his nephew Miantonomoh, all the neck of land between the Pawtucket and Moshasuck rivers, "that his people might sit down in peace and enjoy it forever." Thither they went; and, with pious thanksgiving, named the goodly place PROVIDENCE.

Receives  
a noble  
gift.

7. By means of this acquaintance with the Narragansetts, Williams learned that a conspiracy was forming to cut off the English, headed by Sassacus, the powerful chief of the Pequods. The Narragansetts had been strongly moved by the eloquence of Mononotto, associate chief with Sassacus, to join in the plot. They wavered; but Williams, by making a perilous journey to their country, persuaded them rather to unite with the English, against their ancient enemies.

The  
Narra-  
gansetts  
favor the  
English.

8. Anxious to do good to his brethren, though they had persecuted him, Williams next wrote to Governor Winthrop; who, taking the alarm, invited Miantonomoh to visit him at Boston. The chieftain went, and there entered into a treaty of peace and alliance with the English; engaging to them the assistance of the Narragansetts against the Pequods. Williams founded, at Providence, the first Baptist Church in America.

5. What advice did he get, and from whom? — 6. To whom did he apply for shelter? Could he buy land of the sachem? Who favored him? What noble gift did he receive? — 7. What did Williams learn and what do respecting the Narragansetts? — 8. What letter did he write? What church did he found?

## CHAPTER VII.

## Connecticut and its Founders.

P'T I

P'D. III.  
CH. VII.The  
Dutch,  
the dis-  
coverers  
of Conn.  
River.

1. THE Dutch and English both claimed to be the original discoverers of Connecticut river; but the former had probably the juster claim. The natives along its valley were kept in fear by the more warlike Pequods on the east, and the terrible Mohawks in the west; and hence they desired the presence of the English, as defenders.

An invi-  
tation.  
1631.

2. As early as 1631, Wahquimacut, one of their sachems, being pressed by the Pequods, went to Boston, and afterwards to Plymouth, earnestly requesting that an English colony might be sent to his pleasant country. Governor Winthrop declined his proposal; but Edward Winslow, then governor of Plymouth, favored the project, and visited, and examined the valley.

Dutch fix  
at Hart-  
ford.

3. The Plymouth people had been, some time previous, advised by the Dutch to settle on Connecticut river; and they now determined to pursue the enterprise. They fixed on the site of Windsor, as the place to erect a trading-house. But the Dutch changed their minds, and were now determined to take the country themselves. They, therefore, erected a small trading fort, called the house of Good Hope, on a point of land in Sukeag, since Hartford, at the junction of the Little river with the Connecticut.

October,  
1633.Ply-  
mouth  
people at  
Wind-  
sor.

4. The materials for the Plymouth trading-house being put on board a vessel, Captain Holmes, who commanded, soon appeared, sailing up the river. When opposite to the Dutch fort he was commanded to stop, or he would be fired upon; but he resolutely kept his course; and the Windsor house, the first in Connecticut, was erected and fortified before winter.

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What can you say of the discovery of Connecticut River? What of the natives of its valley? — 2. What request was made by one of the sachems? How was it received? — 3. What did the Dutch advise, and what do? Where did the Plymouth people locate? — 4. How proceed in respect to building? What can be said of the house they built?



5. The Grand Council first patented Connecticut to the earl of Warwick. That nobleman transferred his patent to Lord Say and Seal, and Lord Brooke, with others. John Winthrop, son of the worthy governor of Massachusetts, having been sent to England on business for that colony, took an agency for the two Lords patentees, and was directed by them to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut river.

P<sup>t</sup>. I.  
P<sup>d</sup>. III  
CH. VII.

Patent of  
Coun

The  
younger  
Win-  
throp.

6. The patent granted all that part of New England which extends "from Narragansett river one hundred and twenty miles on a straight line, near the shore, towards the south-west, as the coast lies toward Virginia, and within that breadth, from the Atlantic ocean to the South Sea." These bounds show how little was known by the Grand Council of the geography of the country.

1631.  
Extent of  
the pa-  
tent.

7. Before Mr. Winthrop's commission was known, THOMAS HOOKER and his church had determined to leave Newtown, since called Cambridge, and plant themselves upon Connecticut river, in accordance with the invitation given by the sachem. They obtained for that object, a reluctant permission from the general court of Massachusetts.

1633.  
to  
1635.

Hooker  
at New-  
town

8. Other parties around the Bay were also in motion. In August, a few pioneers, from Dorchester selected a place at Windsor, near the Plymouth trading-house; and others, from Watertown, fixed on Pyquag, now Wethersfield.

Windsor  
and  
Weth-  
ersfield.

9. Having made such preparations as they were able, a party, intending to be in advance of Hooker, set out in October, with their families, amounting in all to sixty persons, men, women, and children. To proceed rapidly across a trackless wilderness, through swamps and over mountains, was impossible; and when the tedious journey was accomplished, winter was at hand; and it set in earlier than usual, and was uncommonly severe.

Hard-  
ships  
endured

---

5 Who gave the patent of Connecticut? Who was the first patentee? To whom did he transfer? What agent did they appoint? What directions give? — 6. What territory did the patent include? — 7. Where were Thomas Hooker and his church first settled? Where did they determine to go? What right had they to go there? — 8. What other parties had similar designs? — 9. Give an account of the party who went in advance of Hooker?

P'T. I. 10. After enduring such hardships as human nature  
 P'D. III shudders to contemplate, most of the party, to save  
 CH. VII. life, got on board a vessel, and at length reached Mas-  
 Return sachusetts. A few remained, who lived on malt and  
 to the acorns. These resolute puritans were not, however,  
 Bay. discouraged, but most of those, who left the settlement  
 in the winter, returned in the spring with Hooker and  
 his company.

Fort at 11. Winthrop, in the meantime, commenced building  
 Say- the projected fort. A few days afterwards, a Dutch  
 brook, vessel, which was sent from New Netherlands, ap-  
 Attack peared off the harbor to take possession of its en-  
 and trance. The English having by this time mounted two  
 repulse. pieces of cannon, prevented their landing. They pro-  
 ceeded to complete the fort, which was named after  
 the two Lords patentees, Say-Brook.

12. The Pilgrims, in the exercise of their wonted  
 virtues, now sold their claim to lands in Windsor, to  
 the people of Dorchester; and the patentees were con-  
 tent, that the Massachusetts settlement should proceed.

Hooker 13. Thomas Hooker is regarded as the principal  
 in Eng- founder of Connecticut. In him a natural "grandeur  
 land. of mind" was cultivated by education, and chastened  
 by religion and adversity. He was commanding and  
 dignified in his ministerial office; yet, in private life he  
 was generous, compassionate, and tender. So attract-  
 ive was his pulpit eloquence, that in England he drew  
 crowds, often from great distances, of noble, as well  
 as plebeian hearers.

1633. 14. His congregation in England esteemed his min-  
 Meets his istry as so great a blessing, that, when persecution  
 church a drove him from his native land, they desired still to be  
 lesson. with him, although in these "ends of the earth." A  
 portion of his people had preceded him, and were al-  
 ready settled at Newtown, since Cambridge. As he  
 landed, they met him on the shore. With tears of

---

10. Were they discouraged? — 11. What happened at the  
 mouth of Connecticut river? — 12. What peaceable compromise  
 was made among the various settlers? — 13. Describe the prin-  
 cipal founder of Connecticut. — 14. What showed the affection  
 of his people in England? Did the church come to America  
 together?

affection he exclaimed, "Now I live ! if ye stand fast in the Lord!"

P'T. I.

P'D. III.

CH. VII.

15. Associated with Hooker, both in council and action, was JOHN HAYNES, a gentleman of excellent endowments, of unaffected meekness, and possessed of a very considerable estate. So desirous were the people of Massachusetts to detain him, that they made him their governor ; but he would not separate himself from his friend and pastor.

A good  
man

16. Warned by the calamities of the preceding autumn, Hooker would not delay, although his wife was so ill, as to be carried on a litter. The company departed from Newtown early in June, driving their flocks and herds. Many of them were accustomed to affluence ; but now, they all,—men, women and little children,—travelled on foot, through thickets, across streams and over mountains,—lodging at night upon the unsheltered ground. But they put their cheerful trust in God ; and we doubt not the ancient forest was, night and morning, made vocal with His praise.

June,  
**1636**  
The  
journey  
across  
the wil-  
derness

17. At length they reached their destined location, which they named Hartford. The excellent Haynes was chosen chief magistrate ; and the soil was purchased of the natives. The succeeding summer was one of the utmost exertion. Houses were to be built, lands cleared, food provided for the coming winter, roads made, the cunning and terrible savage to be guarded against, and, chiefly, a church and state to be organized. All was to be done,—and all was accomplished, by wisdom, union, and labor.

Good  
conduct  
and  
success

---

15. Give an account of John Haynes. — 16. Describe the journey of Hooker and his people ? — 17. Where was their location ? Who was made governor ? How did they get the right of soil ? What had they to do ? By what means did they accomplish their undertakings ?



## CHAPTER VIII.

## The Pequod War.

**P.T. I.** 1. THE Pequods were endeavoring to unite the In-  
**P.D. III.** dian tribes in a plot to exterminate the English, espe-  
**CH. VIII.** cially those of the colony, named from its river, CON-  
 NECTICUT. They had sought, as we have seen, the  
 alliance of their former enemies, the Narragansetts,  
 but through the influence of Roger Williams, Mian-  
 tonomoh, the war-chief of that nation, remained true to  
 the whites. Uncas, the Mohegan sagamore, formerly  
 a vassal, and of the same family with Sassacus, was  
 now his inveterate foe.

**1636.**  
 The  
 Pequods  
 hostile.

2. The Pequods murdered Captain John Oldham,  
 near Block Island. They made other attacks, and car-  
 ried away some prisoners. They cut off stragglers  
 from Saybrook, and had become so bold as to assault  
 the fort, and use impudent and threatening language.  
 Every where they were, or seemed to be, lurking, with  
 purposes of murder. The whole settlement, thus con-  
 stantly excited, was in the feverish condition of intense  
 and continual fear. The people neither ate, slept, or  
 labored,—or even worshipped God in the sanctuary,  
 without arms and ammunition at hand.

**July,**  
**Distress**  
**of the**  
**settlers.**

3. A general court was called on the last of May,  
 at Hartford. Thirty persons had already been killed,  
 and the evidence was conclusive that the savages de-  
 signed a general massacre. The court, therefore,  
 righteously declared war.

**1637.**  
 May,  
 The  
 court  
 declare  
 war.

4. The quota of troops from the three towns now  
 settled, shows the rapid progress of the settlement.  
 Hartford was to furnish ninety men, Windsor forty-  
 two, and Wethersfield eighteen, making one hundred  
 and fifty. John Mason was chosen captain. The

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1 & 2. What causes had the Pequod Indi-  
 ans given to the Connecticut people, to declare war against them?  
 What was the condition of the people?—3. When and where  
 did the general court meet? What did they do?—4. What  
 troops were to be raised, and how apportioned?



troops embarked at Hartford; sailed down the river and along the coast to Narragansett Bay. Miantonomoh furnished them two hundred warriors, Uncas sixty. There were actually embodied of the English, only seventy-seven, of whom twenty, commanded by Captain Underhill, were from Massachusetts. Guided by a Pequod deserter, they reached Mystic, one of the two forts of Sassacus, at dawn of day.

5. Their Indian allies showed signs of fear, and Mason arranging them at a distance around the fort, advanced with his own little army. If they fell, there was no second force to defend their state, their wives and helpless children. As they approach, a dog barks, and an Indian sentinel cries out, "Owannox, Owannox!" the English, the English! They leap within the fort. The Indians fight desperately, and victory is doubtful. Mason then seizes and throws a flaming brand, shouting, "we must burn them." The light materials of their wigwams were instantly in a blaze. Hemmed in as the Indians now were, escape was impossible; and six hundred,—all who were within the fort, of every sex and age, in one hour perished.

6. The subjects of Sassacus now reproached him as the author of their misfortunes, and to escape destruction, he, with his chief captains fled to the Mohawks; but he was afterwards slain by a revengeful subject. Three hundred of his warriors, having burned his remaining fort, fled along the sea-coast. Mason, aided by fresh troops from Massachusetts, pursued the fugitive savages; traced them to a swamp in Fairfield, and there fought and defeated them.

7. Nearly one thousand of the Pequods were destroyed; many fled, and two hundred, beside women and children, remained as captives. Of these, some, we are grieved to relate, were sent to the West Indies and sold into slavery. The remainder were divided between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans. The two

P.T. I  
P.D. III.  
CH. VIII.

Route of  
troops  
under  
Mason.

May 26,  
Fort at  
Mystic  
destroyed.

1637.  
Pequod  
defeat at  
Fairfield.

The  
Pequods  
extinct.

4. Give a particular account of the armament—their number, —commander, and route. What assistance was received? 5. Describe Mason's arrangements—his approach—and the fate of the Pequods within the fort? —6. Of those remaining? —7. How many were destroyed? What was done with the residue?

P.T. 1. Sachems, Uncas and Miantonomoh, between whom  
 P.D. III. was mutual hatred, now engaged to live in peace.  
 CH. VIII. The lands of the Pequods were regarded as conquered  
 territory, and the name of the tribe was declared ex-  
 tinct.

8. The prowess of the English had thus put the  
 natives in fear, and a long peace ensued. All the  
 First  
 thanks-  
 giving  
 churches in New England commemorated this deliver-  
 ance, by keeping a day of common and devout thanks-  
 giving.

9. The war had fallen heavily upon the colony.  
 Their farming and their finances were deranged; but  
 order and industry restored them. In 1639, they for-  
 mally conjoined themselves, to be one state or com-  
 monwealth, and adopted a constitution. This ordain-  
 ed two annual general courts, at one of which, to be  
 held in May, the whole body of freemen should choose  
 a governor, deputy-governor, six magistrates, and other  
 necessary officers.

10. THEOPHILUS EATON and JOHN DAVENPORT,  
 puritans of much distinction in England, were regard-  
 ed as the founders of the colony of New Haven.  
 These two friends collected their associates, and ar-  
 rived at Boston, July 26th, 1637. Massachusetts was  
 desirous of securing such settlers, but they preferred  
 a separate establishment; and seeking a commercial  
 station, they explored the coast, fixed on Quinnipiac,  
 and in 1638, they moored their vessels in its harbor.

11. The company had made some little preparation  
 for the settlement the preceding summer, yet many  
 sufferings were to be endured. The spring was un-  
 commonly backward; their planted corn perished re-  
 peatedly in the ground, and they dreaded the utter  
 failure of the crop; but at length they were cheered  
 by warm weather, and surprised by the rapid progress  
 of vegetation.

12. The first Sunday after they arrived, they met

7. With their lands? What two sachems engaged to live in  
 peace? — 8. On what occasion was the first New England  
 thanksgiving? — 9. When did they adopt a constitution? What  
 can you say of the court held in May? — 10. Who were the  
 founders of New Haven? Describe their first operations? — 11.  
 What was the weather, and their prospects for a crop?

and worshipped under a large tree, when Mr. Davenport preached to them concerning the temptations of the wilderness. Not long after, the free planters subscribed, what, in distinction from a church union, they termed a *plantation-covenant*.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IX

April 18,  
1638.

13. Under this covenant they continued until the next year, when they assembled in a large barn belonging to Mr. Newman, formed themselves into a body politic, and established a form of government. The governor and magistrates were to hold annually a general court, to regulate the affairs of the colony. Eaton was chosen governor. They purchased their lands from the natives, and gave to the place the name of NEW HAVEN.

1639.  
Govern  
ment.

Mr.  
Eaton,  
governor

## CHAPTER IX.

Intolerance of the times—R. Island—N. Hampshire—Delaware.

1. ANNE HUTCHINSON, a resident of Boston, at this time advanced religious opinions, so entirely at variance with those of the Puritan settlers, that a "great disturbance" arose in the Bay colony. Gov. Vane considered that whether her opinions were true or false, she had a right to enjoy them herself, and explain them to others. Mr. Cotton, the minister of Boston, and the most celebrated of all the clergy of Massachusetts, was also, at first, inclined to defend Mrs. Hutchinson: but the ministers, generally, regarded her doctrines, not only as false, but, as dangerous to such a degree, that, if let alone, they would overthrow both church and state.

The the  
ological  
disturb-  
ance.

2 In this extremity, a synod of ministers was assembled at Boston. Mr. Davenport had opportunely

12. Where did they worship on the first Sunday? Where enter into the plantation-covenant? — 13. What political arrangements did they make the next year?

CHAPTER IX.—1. What caused a disturbance in the colony? What was Gov. Vane's view of the case? What that of the clergy generally? — 2. What assemblage was held at Boston?



**P'T. I.** arrived from London, and Mr. Hooker, desirous to pre-  
**P'D. III.** pare minds for political as well as religious union, re-  
**CH. IX.** crossed the wilderness from Hartford. Mrs. Hutchin-  
**Mrs. H.** son's opinions were unanimously condemned by the  
**banished.** synod; and herself, and the most determined of her  
 adherents were banished.

**1638,** 3. The unfortunate woman, excommunicated from  
 to the church, became an outcast from a society, which  
**1643.** had but now followed and flattered her. She went  
 first to Rhode Island, to join the settlement, which her  
 followers had there made. From thence, she removed  
 with her family to the state of New York, where she  
**Mrs. H.** met death in its most appalling form; that of an In-  
**destroy-** dian midnight massacre.  
**ed.**

**1630.** 4. One of the earliest cares of the Puritan fathers,  
**Mass. be-** was to provide the means of instruction for their chil-  
**gins a** dren. At the general court in September, 1630, the  
**college.** sum of four hundred pounds was voted to commence  
 a college building, at Newtown, now called Cam-  
**1638.** bridge. In 1638, Mr. John Harvard, a pious divine  
 from England, dying at Charlestown, left to the college  
**Mr. Har-** a bequest of nearly eight hundred pounds; and grati-  
**vard's** tude perpetuated his name in that of the institution.  
**bequest.** All the several colonies cherished the infant seminary,  
 by contributions; regarding it as a nursery, from which  
 the church and state, were to be replenished with quali-  
 fied leaders.

**1638.** 5. RHODE ISLAND. The most respectable of the  
**Follow-** banished followers of Mrs. Hutchinson went south,  
**ers of** headed by WILLIAM CODDINGTON and JOHN CLARKE  
**Mrs. H.** The latter had been persecuted as a baptist. By the  
**obtain** influence of Roger Williams, they obtained from Mi-  
**R. I.** antonomoh the noble gift of the island of Aquetneck,  
 called RHODE ISLAND, on account of its beauty and  
 fertility. Here they established a government, on the  
 principles of political equality and religious toleration  
 Coddington was made chief magistrate.

---

2. What was done in regard to Mrs. Hutchinson? — 3. What became of her? — 4. What was done in regard to the education of the young? Who was John Harvard? For what is he remembered? — 5. Who gave away the island of Aquetneck? To whom? What name was given to it? On what principles was government established?



6. NEW HAMPSHIRE. Another portion of the disciples of Mrs. Hutchinson, headed by her brother-in-law, Mr. Wheelwright, went north; and, in the valley of the Piscataqua, founded Exeter. It was within a tract of country lying between that river and the Merrimac, which Wheelwright claimed by virtue of a purchase made of the Indians. This claim interfered with that conveyed by patent to Mason and Gorges, and was accordingly disputed.

P'T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IX.

1629  
Mr.  
Wheelwright's  
Indian  
patent.

7. In the meantime, small, independent settlements, were made along the water courses, by emigrants from Massachusetts and the other colonies; but they did not flourish, for they imprudently neglected the culture of their lands,—present necessities being scantily supplied by fish and game. In 1641, these settlements, induced by a sense of their weakness, petitioned Massachusetts to receive them under its jurisdiction. The general court granted their request, and they were incorporated with that colony.

1641.  
New  
Hampshire  
settlements

8. DELAWARE. Gustavus Adolphus, the hero of his age, projected, in 1627, a colony of his subjects from Sweden and Finland. About ten years afterwards they came over headed by Peter Minuets, and settled at Christina Creek, on the west side of the Delaware, calling that river Swedeland-stream, and the country, New Sweden.

1627.  
Swedes  
and Fins.  
They settle  
on the  
Delaware  
1638.

9. Though this was the first effectual settlement, yet the Dutch had, in 1629, purchased of the natives a tract of land extending from Cape Henlopen to the mouth of the Delaware river. A small colony conducted by De Vries, came from Holland, and settled near Lewistown. They perished by the savages; but the Dutch continuing to claim the country, dissensions arose between them and the Swedish emigrants.

1629.  
The  
Dutch  
claim  
originates

6. Who founded Exeter? Where is it? What claim had Mr. Wheelwright to the land? Who disputed his claim?—

7. What further may be said of New Hampshire at this early day?—8. What eminent person projected a colony to America? Where did the Swedes and Fins settle?—9. Had there been a settlement of the Dutch near? What became of the Dutch colony?

## CHAPTER X.

## Maryland—Virginia.

P.T. I. 1. MARYLAND. In 1631, William Clayborne ob-  
 P.D. III. tained from Charles I. a license to traffic, in those parts  
 CH. X. of America, for which there was not already a patent  
 1631. granted. Clayborne planted a small colony, on Kent  
 island, in Chesapeake bay.

2. George Calvert, afterwards LORD BALTIMORE,  
 was of the Roman Catholic faith. To enjoy his religion  
 unmoled, he wished to emigrate to some vacant  
 tract in America. He explored the country, and then  
 returned to England. The Queen, Henrietta Maria,\*  
 daughter to Henry IV. of France, gave to the territory  
 which he had selected, the name of MARYLAND, and  
 Lord Baltimore obtained it by a royal patent.

3. He died at London in 1632, before his patent  
 passed to a legal form; but his son, Cecil Calvert, the  
 second Lord Baltimore, by the influence of Sir Robert  
 Cecil, obtained the grant intended for his father. By  
 this patent he held the country from the Potomac to  
 the 40th degree of north latitude; and thus, by a  
 mere act of the crown, what had long before been  
 granted to Virginia, was now taken away; as what  
 was now granted was subsequently given to Penn, to  
 the extent of a degree. Hence very troublesome dis-  
 putes arose.

4. Lord Baltimore appointed as governor his brother,  
 Leonard Calvert, who, with two hundred emigrants,  
 sailed near the close of 1633, and arrived at the Poto-  
 mac early in 1634. Here they purchased of the na-  
 tives, Yamaco, one of their settlements, to which was  
 given the name of St. Mary. Calvert secured by this  
 pacific course, comfortable habitations, some improved  
 lands, and the friendship of the natives.

1. What was done by William Clayborne? — 2. Why did  
 Lord Baltimore wish to leave England? Who named his terri-  
 tory after herself? — 3. Did the first Lord Baltimore receive the  
 patent? What did his son obtain? What country did this  
 patent include? — 4. Who conducted the first colony to Mary-  
 land? What judicious course did he pursue?

5. The country was pleasant, great religious freedom existed, and a liberal charter had been granted. This allowed the proprietor, aided by the freemen, to pass laws, without reserving to the crown the right of rejecting them. Emigrants accordingly soon flocked to the province, from the other colonies, and from England.

6. Thus had the earliest settlers of this beautiful portion of our country established themselves, without the sufferings endured by the pioneers of former settlements. The proprietary government, generally so detrimental, proved here a nursing mother. Lord Baltimore expended for the colonists, within a few years, forty thousand pounds; and they, "out of desire to return some testimony of gratitude," voted in their assembly, "such a subsidy, as the low and poor estate of the colony could bear."

Generosity and gratitude.

7. Lord Baltimore invited the puritans of Massachusetts to emigrate to Maryland, offering them "free liberty of religion." They rejected this, as they did a similar proposition from Cromwell, to remove to the West Indies.

1642  
Lord B invites the puritans.

8. The restless, intriguing Clayborne, called the evil genius of Maryland, had been constantly on the alert to establish, by agents in England, a claim to the country, and thus to subvert the government of the good proprietary. In his traffic with the natives, he had learned their dispositions, and wrought them to jealousy. In England, the authority of the long Parliament now superseded that of the king. Of this, Clayborne, and other disorderly subjects of Lord Baltimore, took advantage. Thus the fair dawn of this rising settlement was early overcast.

1635,  
to  
1643

9. VIRGINIA. In 1621, Sir Francis Wyatt arrived as governor, bringing from the company in England a more perfect constitution for the colony. It contained

1621.  
Sir Francis Wyatt.

---

5. What inviting circumstances drew emigrants?—6. What may be said of the proprietary government? How much did Lord Baltimore expend for the colony? Did they testify any gratitude? 7. What did Lord Baltimore offer the Puritans?—8. What was Clayborne called? What were some of his plans to injure the proprietor?—9. Who arrived in Virginia? What did he bring?



P.T. I. some seeming concessions to the people, which not  
 P.D. III. only gratified the settlers, but encouraged emigrants;  
 CH. X. and a large number accordingly accompanied Governor  
 Wyatt to the province.

Cotton  
 first  
 planted. 10. This year, cotton was first planted in Virginia,  
 and "the plentiful coming up of the seeds," was re-  
 garded by the planters with curiosity and interest.

A con-  
 spiracy. 11. Opechancanough, the brother and successor of  
 Powhatan, had determined to extirpate the whites, and  
 regain the country. For this purpose he formed a  
 conspiracy to massacre all the English; and during  
 four years, he was, secretly, concerting his plan. To  
 each tribe its station was allotted, and the part it was  
 to act prescribed.

1622. 12. On the 22d of March, 1622, at mid-day, they  
 rushed upon the English, in all their settlements, and  
 butchered men, women, and children, without pity or  
 remorse. In one hour, nearly a fourth part of the  
 whole colony was cut off. The slaughter would have  
 been universal, if compassion, or a sense of duty, had  
 not moved a converted Indian, to whom the secret  
 was communicated, to reveal it to his master, on the  
 night before the massacre. This was done in time to  
 save Jamestown and the adjacent settlements.

The  
 whites  
 retaliate. 13. A bloody war ensued. The English, by their  
 arms and discipline, were more than a match for the  
 Indians; and they retaliated in such a manner as left  
 the colonies for a long time free from savage molesta-  
 tion. They also received a considerable accession of  
 territory, by appropriating those of the conquered na-  
 tives.

1624. 14. In 1624 the London company, which had set-  
 tled Virginia, was dissolved by King James, and its  
 rights and privileges returned to the crown. Gover-  
 nors were sent over by Charles I. the successor of  
 James, who were oppressive; and the Virginians re-  
 sisted their authority. Sir William Berkeley was sent  
 over in 1641. The colonists were, under him, con-

9. What effect had these concessions? — 10. When was cot-  
 ton first planted in Virginia? — 11 & 12. Give an account of  
 the Indian massacre? — 13. What was done in retaliation? —  
 14. What became of the London company? Under whom was  
 Virginia then? What can you say of the royal governors?



firmed in their enjoyment of the elective franchise. P T. I.  
P'D. III.  
CH. XI.  
Great harmony prevailed, notwithstanding the assembly took a high tone in respect to their political rights; boldly declaring "that they expected no taxes or impositions, except such as should be freely voted for their own wants."

## CHAPTER XI.

Massachusetts threatened.—The Puritans in England—Vane.  
UNION.

1. THE English court began to be jealous, that their colonies, especially that of the Bay, did not intend to be governed by the parent country. They were truly informed by some, who returned dissatisfied from Massachusetts, that not only was their own religion established by law, but the use of the English liturgy was prohibited. Various other charges were made against the province,—showing that it was casting off dependence upon the English crown, and assuming sovereign powers to itself.

The  
court dis-  
pleased  
with  
Mass.

2. Much displeased, the king determined that the colonies should be brought to submission, both in church and state; and he made archbishop Laud, famed for his persecuting spirit, chief of a council, which was appointed, with full powers to govern the colony in all cases whatever.

1634  
Appoint  
council  
commissioners.

3. The Grand Council of Plymouth, as it had its beginning and course, so also it had its end in little better than knavery. We have seen that its own members, Gorges and Mason, and others, had been its patentees. These persons now wishing to make

14. Under what governor did harmony prevail? What did the assembly declare?

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what were the British government jealous? What reports concerning Massachusetts were true? — 2. What did the king determine? Who was made chief of a council? With what powers? — 3. On what occasion was the Grand Council of Plymouth dissolved?

P'T. I. good certain claims to territory in Massachusetts, gave  
 P'D. III. up their patent to the crown; petitioning for redress  
 CH. XI. against that colony, which they asserted had forfeited  
 its charter, by exceeding its powers and territorial  
 Mass. ar- limits.  
 raigned.

Dec.  
 1634. 4. Willing to humble their "unbridled spirits," the  
 Mass. court of king's bench, issued a writ against the indi-  
 charter viduals of the corporation of Massachusetts Bay, ac-  
 annulled. cusing them with certain acts, by which they had for-  
 feited their charter, and requiring them to show war-  
 rant for their proceedings. At a subsequent term, the  
 court pronounced sentence against them, and declared  
 that their charter was forfeited.

3000  
 come to 5 The rapid emigration to the colonies had attract-  
 N. Eng- ed the attention of the council, and they had passed  
 land in laws, prohibiting any person above the rank of a ser-  
 1639. vant from leaving the kingdom without express per-  
 mission; and vessels already freighted with emigrants  
 had been detained. But these prohibitions were in  
 vain; for persecution, conducted by the merciless  
 Laud, grew more and more cruel; and in one year,  
 three thousand persons left England for America.

1640. 6. Oppression, and perhaps the successful escape  
 Charles and resistance of their brethren in America, had so  
 engaged wrought upon the public mind in England, that matters  
 in civil had now come to open opposition to the government.  
 war. In Scotland, Charles had attempted to enforce the use  
 of the English liturgy. Riots had followed, and the  
*Solemn League and Covenant* been made, by which  
 the Scottish people bound themselves to oppose all  
 similar attempts. Popular opinion became resistless.  
 Laud's party was ruined, and himself imprisoned;  
 while the king was engaged in a bloody civil war with  
 his revolted subjects.

7. Puritanism now reigned in England, and its dis-  
 ciples had no inducement to emigrate. Nay, some

---

3. What evil did some of their number do to Massachusetts?  
 4. What was done in the king's court respecting the charter of  
 Massachusetts? — 5. What laws were made respecting emigra-  
 tion? What effect had they? — 6. What was now the state of  
 things in Great Britain? — 7. How did the rule of Puritanism  
 in England affect emigration to America?

returned, among whom was Governor Vane. The Long Parliament had begun to rule; and its leaders were desirous to honor, rather than humble New England. Cotton, Hooker, and Davenport, were invited to go to London to attend the celebrated assembly of divines at Westminster. They, however, saw no sufficient cause to leave their flocks in the wilderness. England was no longer their country; but that for which they had suffered, though recent, was already as dear to these noble patriots, as the infant to the mother.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XL.

The long  
Parliament.

1643

8. A UNION was now meditated. Both internal peace, and external safety were to be secured. An essential part of the compact made, was the solemn promise of the framers to yield obedience to the powers thus created.

Safety  
and peace  
in Union.

9. Two commissioners having been appointed by each of the four colonies, Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut and New Haven, they met at Boston, May, 1643, where they drew up and signed the *Articles of Confederation*. Rhode Island was not permitted to be a member of the confederacy, unless it became an appendage to Plymouth. This, that colony very properly refused.

1643.

Articles  
of con-  
federacy  
signed  
Boston

10. The style adopted was that of the "United Colonies of New England." Their little congress, the first of the New World, was to be composed of eight members, two from each colony. They were to assemble yearly in the different colonies by rotation, Massachusetts having, in this respect a double privilege.

Commis-  
sioners  
to meet  
annually

11. Although this confederacy was nominally discontinued after about forty years, yet its spirit remained. The colonies had learned to act together, and when common injuries and common dangers again required

---

7. What honor was paid to three of the New England clergy? — 8. What objects were to be secured by Union? — 9. What four colonies sent commissioners to Boston? What important work did they perform? What hard condition was exacted of Rhode Island? — 10. What was the style adopted? Where was the little Congress of Commissioners to meet? — 11. How long did this confederacy last?

P.T. I. united action, modes and precedents were at hand  
 P.D. III. Hence we regard the Confederacy of the four New  
 CH. XL England provinces, as the germ of the Federal Union.

11. Why is it regarded as the germ of the Federal Union?

Compare the third Map with the second, and tell the principal changes which have taken place in the geography in the course of the third period of the First Part of the history? What are the principal patents which have been given? Compare the different maps with the history, and tell when the name of Virginia was first given, and to what extent of country it has, at different times been applied?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What is the event which marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Massasoit visits the pilgrims in 1621, and enters into an alliance with them. Point out this date on the chronographer. James I. issued a charter to a company styled the "Grand Council of Plymouth," in 1620. Point out the place of this date. John Endicot began the settlement of Salem in 1628. He was appointed Governor of Massachusetts Bay in 1629. Point out the places of these dates. Three thousand persons emigrated to New England in 1635. Point to the place of this date.

Roger Williams founded Providence in 1636. Point out the place of this date. The Pequods were defeated and destroyed in 1637. New Haven was founded the same year. Show its place on the chronographer. The college at Cambridge was founded in 1630. It took the name of Harvard in 1638. Point to the place of these two dates. Lord Baltimore obtained a patent of Maryland in 1631. Point out the place of this year. What event marks the termination of this period? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher often repeat general questions, such as—  
 What is the subject of this part? Into how many periods is it divided? What is the first and last date of your lesson to-day? In what century is it? How much time occurs between the first and last date?







# PART II.

FROM 1643 TO 1763.



Meeting of Winthrop and the Commissioner.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE CONFEDERACY OF { 1643 } THE FOUR N. E. COLONIES.  
TO  
THE NEW CHARTER { 1692. } OF MASSACHUSETTS.

### CHAPTER I.

Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion.

1. In 1644, the aged Opechancanough once more attempted to cut off the scattered white population. As soon as resistance was made, the Indians were struck with panic, and fled. The Virginians pursued them vigorously, and killed three hundred. The chief was taken prisoner. He was then inhumanly wounded, and kept as a public spectacle, until he was relieved by death.

P. II  
P. D. I.  
CH. I.

1644  
Second  
Indian  
Massacre

CHAPTER I.—1. What attempt was made by an Indian chief? Which, in this case, suffered most, the Indians, or the Virginians? How many Indians were killed? How was the chief treated?

**1649.** **2.** Charles I. was beheaded; and Cromwell directed the affairs of England. He perfected a system of oppression, in respect to trade, by the celebrated "Navigation Acts." By these, the colonies were not allowed to find a market for themselves, and sell their produce to the highest bidder; but were obliged to carry it direct to the mother country. The English merchants bought it at their own price; and thus they, and not the colonist, made the profit on the fruits of his industry.

**1651.** **3.** At the same time, these laws prohibited any but English vessels, from conveying merchandise to the colonies; thus compelling them to obtain their supplies of the English merchant; of course, at such prices, as he chose to fix upon his goods. Even free traffic among the colonists was prohibited.

**1660.** **4.** Charles II. was restored to his father's throne in 1660. Berkeley, after various changes, was exercising, in Virginia, the office of governor. But prospects grew dark. Notwithstanding the loyalty of Virginia, to none of the colonies had the suppression of the English monarchy wrought more good; and on none, did the restoration operate more disastrously.

**5.** The Virginians were divided into two classes. The first comprised the few persons who were highly educated, and possessed of extensive domains. The second, and more numerous class, was composed of servants and laborers; among whom were some, that for crimes in England, had been sent to America. A blind admiration of English usages, was now shown, in the regulations made by Berkeley, and his aristocratical advisers.

---

**2.** In what year was Charles I. beheaded? Who then directed the affairs in England? By what were the colonies oppressed? What were they not allowed to do? What were they obliged to do? How did English merchants make the profit on the produce of the colonists? — **3.** Of whom were the colonists obliged to purchase their supplies? Who would fix the prices? Could the different colonies trade freely with each other? — **4.** What happened in 1660? Who was governor of Virginia? What were the prospects of Virginia? — **5.** Describe the two classes into which the Virginians were divided? What can you say of Berkeley and his advisers?



6. The rights of the people were on all hands restricted. The affairs of the church were placed in the hands of vestries,—corporations who held, and often severely used, the right to tax the whole community. The assembly, composed of aristocrats, made themselves permanent, and their salaries large. The right of suffrage was unrestrained, but the power of electing the burgesses being taken away, the meetings of the freemen were of little avail, for their only remaining right, was that of petition.

P. T. II.  
—  
P. D. I  
CH. I

The  
people  
stripped  
of their  
rights.

7. A shock was now given, by which even the aristocracy were aroused. Charles, with his wonted profligacy, gave away Virginia for the space of thirty-one years. He had, immediately on his accession, granted to Sir William Berkeley, Lord Culpepper, and others, that portion of the colony lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac; and now, to the covetous Lord Culpepper, and to Lord Arlington, another needy favorite, he gave the whole province.

Charles  
gives  
away  
Virginia  
for 31  
years.  
**1673**

8. On the north, the Susquehannah Indians, driven by the Senecas, from the head of the Chesapeake, had come down, and having had provocation, were committing depredations upon the banks of the Potomac. John Washington, the great grandfather of the hero of the revolution, with a brother, Lawrence Washington, had emigrated from England, and was living in the county of Westmoreland.

**1675.**  
John  
Wash-  
ington.

9. Six of the Indian chiefs came to John Washington, to treat of peace, he being colonel. He wrongfully put them to death. "They came in peace," said Berkeley, "and I would have sent them in peace, though they had killed my father and mother." Revenge inflamed the minds of the savages, and the midnight war-whoop often summoned to speedy death the defenseless families of the frontier.

Kills six  
Indian  
chiefs.

---

6. How was it with the rights of the people? How in church matters? How with respect to the assembly? The right of suffrage? — 7. What did King Charles give away? What portion had he granted before? To whom? To whom was the whole province now given? — 8. Who was John Washington? What Indians were troublesome? — 9. What provocation had Colonel Washington given them? What said Berkeley?

P.T. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1676.

The  
people  
make  
Bacon  
their  
leader.Popular  
liberty  
prevails.Berkeley  
and  
Bacon.James-  
town  
burnt by  
Bacon's  
party.Oct. 1,  
Bacon  
dies.

10. The people desired to organise for self defense, and in a peremptory manner, demanded for their leader, Nathaniel Bacon, a popular young lawyer. Berkeley refused. New murders occurred; Bacon assumed command, and with his followers, departed for the Indian war. Berkeley declared him and his adherents rebels.

11. Bacon returned successful from his expedition, and was elected a member for Henrico county. Popular liberty prevailed, and laws were passed, with which Berkeley was highly displeased. Bacon, fearing treachery, withdrew to the country. The people rallied around him, and he returned to Jamestown, at the head of five hundred armed men.

12. Berkeley met them, and baring his breast, exclaimed, "a fair mark, shoot!" Bacon declared that he came only for a commission, their lives being in danger from the savages. The commission was issued, and Bacon again departed for the Indian warfare. Berkeley, in the meantime, withdrew to the sea-shore, and there collected numbers of seamen and royalists. He came up the river with a fleet, landed his army at Jamestown, and again proclaimed Bacon and his party, rebels and traitors.

13. Bacon having quelled the Indians, only a small band of his followers remained in arms. With these he hastened to Jamestown, and Berkeley fled at his approach. In order that its few dwellings should no more shelter their oppressors, the inhabitants set them on fire. Then leaving that endeared and now desolated spot, they pursued the royalists to the Rappahannock, where the Virginians, hitherto of Berkeley's party, deserted, and joined Bacon's standard. His enemies were at his mercy; but his exposure to the night air had induced disease, and he died.

14. The party, without a leader, broke into fragments. As the principal adherents of Bacon, hunted and made prisoners, were one by one, brought before

---

10. What leader did the people choose? Give some account of the first steps in the contention between the people's leader and the governor? — 11. Proceed with the account? — 12. Continue the relation? 13. Relate the remaining events, till the time of Bacon's death? — 14. What then happened to his party and principal followers?

Berkeley, he adjudged them, with insulting taunts, to instant death. Thus perished twenty of the best citizens of Virginia. "The old fool," said Charles II., who sent him orders to desist, "has shed more blood than I did, for the murder of my father."

15. "Bacon's rebellion" was extremely injurious to the affairs of the colony in England. A new charter, which was sent over, was not favorable to the Virginians. Lord Culpepper was made governor for life. He cared not what he made the people suffer, provided he could gain money for himself. Lord Howard, the next governor, was of the same stamp.

16. It was at this period, that the Five Nations became very powerful. They had overcome all the surrounding Indians, and menaced the whites. This produced a grand council at Albany, in which Lord Howard, and Colonel Dongan, the governor of New York, together with delegates from the northern provinces, met the sachems of the Five Nations. The negotiations were friendly; and, in the figurative language of the Indians, "a great tree of peace was planted."

17. MARYLAND. Clayborne, in 1645, returned to Maryland, raised an insurrection, and compelled Governor Calvert to fly to Virginia for safety. The rebellion was, however, quelled. The next year, Calvert returned, and quiet was restored.

18. The reign of Puritanism in England was disastrous to Maryland. Calvert, the governor appointed by the proprietor, was obliged to surrender the government; and the Catholics, after having settled the country, were shamefully persecuted in it, by the English authorities. Clayborne took advantage of this, and with one Josias Fendall, made a famous "disturbance," of which little is now known, except that it involved the province in much expense.

19. Lord Baltimore was restored to his rights, by

15. How did Bacon's rebellion affect the colony in England? What governors were sent over? — 16. What Indians became powerful? What council was held? — 17. Who made trouble in Maryland? 18. What did he take advantage of? Who was with him? What is known of "Fendall's disturbance?"

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1677.  
Lord  
Culpepper.

1683.  
Lord  
Howard

Peace  
with the  
Five  
Nations.

1645.  
Insurrec-  
tion in  
Mary-  
land.

1652.  
Catholics  
persecu-  
ted in  
their  
own pro-  
vince.



P.T. II. Charles II., but he died soon after. His son and suc-  
 cessor, soon found himself in trouble; for the English  
 P.D. I. would not allow the Catholics of Maryland to enjoy  
 CH. II. any political rights. At the same time the people in  
 1675. the province, wished for a greater share in the govern-  
 Death of ment, than the proprietor would grant.  
 Lord  
 Balti-  
 more.

20. James II., who succeeded Charles, was a Ca-  
 tholic, and he was a tyrant. He declared that there  
 should be no charter governments, but that he should  
 rule, according to his own sovereign will. His op-  
 1688. pressions were such, that his people in England, and  
 William even his own family, joined against him. They placed  
 and upon the throne, his daughter Mary, with her husband,  
 Mary. William, one of the ablest statesmen of Europe

## CHAPTER II.

New York settled by the Dutch—Taken by the English.

1. WE here, commence with the early colonization  
 of a state which ranks first in the Union, in respect to  
 wealth and population. In 1614, a company of mer-  
 1614. chants in Holland, fitted out a squadron of several  
 Dutch ships, and sent them to trade to the country which  
 emi- Hudson had discovered. A rude fort was constructed  
 grants found on Manhattan Island. One of the captains, Adrian  
 N. York. Blok, sailed through the East river, and ascertained  
 the position of Long Island. He probably discovered  
 Connecticut river.

2. The next year the adventurers sailed up the Hud-  
 son, and on a little island, just below the present po-  
 1615. sition of Albany, they built a small fort, naming it Fort  
 Fort Orange. Afterwards they changed their location, and  
 Orange, i. e. fixed where Albany now stands.  
 Albany founded.

19. Who restored Lord Baltimore? What gave trouble to  
 his son? — 20. Who succeeded King Charles the II.? What  
 did he declare? How did the English people bear his tyranny?

CHAPTER II.—1. In what respects is New York the first state  
 in the Union? Did the Dutch first go there as traders, or as  
 settlers? By whom were they sent? What fort did they first  
 build? What discoveries make? — 2. What was their second  
 fort?



3. Holland was distressed by internal troubles; and families wishing to settle in the new world, were now sent over. Cottages clustered around Manhattan fort, which was now called New Amsterdam, and the country, New Netherlands. Peter Minuets was made its first governor.

R.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II.  
**1619**  
to  
**1621**

In 1627, an envoy was sent from New Netherlands to New Plymouth; friendly civilities were interchanged; and a treaty of peace and commerce was made with the Pilgrims.

Treaty  
with the  
Pilgrims

4. A new company was made in Holland, styled "the College of Nineteen." They decreed, that, whoever should conduct fifty families to New Netherlands, the name now given by the Dutch to the whole country between Cape Cod and Cape May, should become the patroon, or lord of the manor; with absolute property in the lands he should colonize, to the extent of eight miles on each side of the river on which he should settle.

**1629.**  
College  
of Nine-  
teen dis-  
pose of  
lands.

5. De Vries conducted from Holland, a colony which settled Lewistown, near the Delaware; a small fort called Nassau, having been previously erected by the Dutch.

**1631.**  
The  
Dutch on  
the Dela-  
ware.

In consequence of disagreements among the company in Holland, Peter Minuets returned, having been superseded by Walter Van Twiller. Minuets became the leader of a colony of Swedes.

6. Governor Keift, who had succeeded Van Twiller, had an inconsiderable quarrel with the Manhattan Indians. Yet, when the Mohawks came down upon them, they collected in groups, and begged him to shelter and assist them. The barbarous Keift sent his troops; and at night murdered them all, men, women, and helpless babes, to the number of a hundred.

**1643.**  
Keift's  
barbarity  
to the  
natives.

7. Indian vengeance awoke. No English family within reach of the Algonquins was safe. The Dutch

---

3. Why were families now willing to leave Holland? Where did they settle? What name give to the fort? To the country? Who was the first governor? Where did they send an envoy? 4. What new company was formed in Holland? What did they decree? — 5. What colony was led by De Vries? What account can you give of Peter Minuets? Who was the next governor? — 6. Who the next? How did he treat the Indians?

P.T. II. villages were in flames around, and the people fleeing  
 P.D. I. to Holland. In New England, all was jeopardy and  
 CH. II. alarm. The Dutch troops defended themselves, having  
 Ven- placed at their head, Captain Underhill, who had been  
 geance of expelled from Massachusetts. At this time, it is sup-  
 the posed, occurred a bloody battle at Strickland's plain,  
 Indians. in Greenwich, Connecticut. The Mohawks were  
 1645. friendly to the Dutch, and, at length, peace was made  
 Peace. by their interference.

8. Keift, execrated by all the colonies, was remand-  
 1648. ed to Holland; and, on his return, perished by ship-  
 Death of wreck on the coast of Wales. Stuyvesant, who suc-  
 Keift. ceeded to his office, went to Hartford; and there entered  
 1650. into negociations, by which the Dutch claims to Con-  
 Stuyve- necticut were relinquished.  
 sant.

9. The Dutch had built Fort Casimir on the site of  
 New Castle, in Delaware. The Swedes conceiving  
 1664. this to be an encroachment on their territory, Rising,  
 Swedes their governor, by an unworthy stratagem, made him-  
 conquer- self its master. In 1655, Stuyvesant, acting by orders  
 ed by the received from Holland, embarked at New Amsterdam,  
 Dutch. with six hundred men, and sailing up the Delaware,  
 he subjugated the Swedes. New Sweden was heard  
 of no more; but the settlers were secured in their  
 rights of private property, and their descendants are  
 among the best of our citizens.

10. Many emigrants now came to New Netherlands,  
 from among the oppressed, the discontented, and the  
 enterprising of other colonies, and of European na-  
 1654. tions. At length the inhabitants sought a share of  
 The political power. They assembled, and by their dele-  
 people gates, demanded that no laws should be passed, except  
 claim with the consent of the people. Stuyvesant treated  
 civil the request rudely, and dissolved the assembly.  
 rights

11. But popular liberty, though checked here, pre-  
 vailed in the adjoining provinces; and they conse-

---

7. What was the consequence of his cruelty? What occurred  
 in Connecticut? — 8. What happened to Keift? Who was his  
 successor? What did he do? — 9. Give an account of the con-  
 test between the Swedes and Dutch? — 10. By what persons  
 were their numbers in New Netherlands increased? What did  
 the people now seek? How did the governor treat them? — 11.  
 Which prospered most, the places where the people's rights  
 were respected, or those where they were not?

quently grew more rapidly, and crowded upon the Dutch. The Indians made war upon some of their villages, especially Esopus, now Kingston; and New Netherlands could not obtain aid from Holland. The States General had given the whole concern into the hands of "the Nineteen," and they refused to make needful advances.

12. Charles II. had granted to his brother James, then Duke of York and Albany, the territory from the banks of the Connecticut to those of the Delaware. Sir Robert Nichols, was dispatched with a fleet to take possession. He sailed to New Amsterdam, and suddenly demanded of the astonished Stuyvesant, to give up the place. He would have defended his post if he could. But the body of the people, preferred the English rule to that of the Dutch; the privileges of Englishmen having been promised them. Nichols, therefore, entered, took possession in the name of his master, and called the place New York.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.  
New  
Nether-  
lands  
troubled

N. Am-  
sterdam  
surrend-  
ered to  
the Eng-  
lish,  
Sept. 3,  
1664

13. A part of the English fleet, under Sir George Carteret, sailed up the Hudson to Fort Orange, which surrendered and was named Albany. The Dutch fort on the Delaware was also taken by the English. The rights of property were respected, and a treaty was made with the Five Nations. The whole line of coast, from Acadia to Florida, was now in possession of the English.

The  
Dutch  
forts a-  
surrend-  
ered.

## CHAPTER III.

### Pennsylvania and its Founder.

1. WILLIAM PENN, the great and good man, to whom Pennsylvania owes its origin, was the son of

11. What troubles were made by the Indians? — 12. What territory was granted? To whom? Whom did he send to take the country? What were the circumstances of the surrender? 13. What other places were taken by the English?

CHAPTER III.—1. What kind of person was William Penn? Of which of the states is he the founder?



P'T. II. Vice Admiral, Sir William Penn; and was born in  
 P'D. I. London, in 1644. To provide a place for his per-  
 CH. III. secuted brethren, of the denomination of Friends,  
 or Quakers, was the leading object in his mind, when  
 1644. he planned a new emigration to America.

William Penn's  
 irth, &c. 2. His father had left claims to the amount of six-  
 teen thousand pounds against the crown; and Penn,  
 finding that there was a tract yet ungranted, north of  
 Lord Baltimore's patent, solicited and obtained of  
 Charles II., a charter of the country. It was bounded  
 east by the Delaware, extending westward through  
 1681. five degrees of longitude, and stretching from twelve  
 miles north of New Castle, to the 43d degree of lati-  
 tude. It was limited on the south by a circle of twelve  
 miles, drawn around New Castle, to the beginning of  
 the fortieth degree of north latitude. The king gave  
 to the country the name of Pennsylvania.

Obtains  
 Dela-  
 ware. 3. Soon after the date of this grant, two other con-  
 veyances were made to Penn, by the Duke of York;  
 one of which embraced the present state of Delaware,  
 and was called the "Territories." The other was a  
 release from the Duke, of any claims to Pennsylvania.

Sept. 9,  
 1682. 4. He prepared a liberal constitution of civil gov-  
 Penn sails from  
 England. ernment, for those who should become his colonists.  
 Having sent out three ships, loaded with emigrants,  
 and consigned to the care of his nephew, Colonel  
 Markham, he left Chester on board the *Welcome*, and  
 with one hundred settlers, sailed for his province, his  
 benevolent heart full of hope and courage.

Arrives  
 at New  
 Castle,  
 Oct. 28. 5. He landed at New Castle, and was joyfully re-  
 ceived by the Swedes and Dutch, now amounting to  
 two or three thousand. The next day, at their court-  
 house, he received from the agent of the Duke of  
 York, the surrender of the "Territories." He then,

---

1. Give an account of his birth and parentage? What was his motive in planning a new colony? — 2. Of whom did Penn obtain a grant? What claim had he against the crown? What was the extent of Penn's first patent? — 3. What other conveyances were made to him? — 4. How did Penn propose to treat his settlers in respect to government? Whom did he send from England before he sailed? From what place did he sail? In what vessel? With how many? — 5. What were the circumstances of his first arrival?



with blended dignity and affection, assured the delighted throngs, that their rights should be respected, and their happiness regarded.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

6. In honor of his friend, the Duke, he next visited New York; but immediately returning, he went to Upland, which he named Chester. Here a part of the pioneers, with Markham, had begun a settlement; and here Penn called the first assembly. It consisted of an equal number from the province and the "Territories." By its first act, all the inhabitants, of whatever extraction, were naturalized.

Names  
Chester.  
**1682**

Dec. 4.  
The first  
assembly  
at  
Chester

7. Penn was the first legislator, whose criminal code admitted the humane principle, that the object of punishment is not merely to prevent crime, but to reform the offender. Hence, his code seldom punished with death. The assembly sat three days, and passed fifty-nine laws; an evidence, that the time which belonged to the public, was not here consumed, either in personal abuse, or pompous declamation.

Pass in  
three  
days 59  
laws.

8. Penn next paid a visit of friendship and business to Lord Baltimore, at West River. Though they differed on the question of boundaries, yet friendly feeling pervaded the interview.

Penn  
visits  
Lord  
Balti-  
more.

9. Penn had given to Colonel Markham, who preceded him, directions, that the natives should be treated kindly, and fairly; and accordingly no land had been entered upon, but by their consent. They had also been notified that Penn, to whom they gave the name of Onas, was to meet, and establish with them, a treaty of perpetual peace. On the morning of the appointed day, under a huge elm at Shackamaxon, now a suburb of Philadelphia, the Indian chiefs gathered from every direction, to see Penn, and to hear his words; which they regarded as those of an angel.

Penn  
meets the  
Indian  
chiefs.

10. Penn gave them instructions, and solemnly appealed to the Almighty, that it was the ardent desire

6. What place did he next visit? Where go on his return? What was done in Chester? — 7. What principle in legislation was Penn the first to teach? What can you say of the labours done by the assembly? Of what was this an evidence? — 8. Whom did Penn visit? 9. How did he direct that the natives should be treated? Of what had they been notified? Give an account of the meeting?

P.T. II. of his heart to do them good. "He would not call  
 P.D. I. them brothers or children, but they should be to him  
 CH. III. and his, as half of the same body." The chiefs then  
 1682. gave their pledge for themselves, and for their tribes,  
 Makes a "to live in love with him and his children, as long as  
 treaty of the sun and moon should endure." The treaty was  
 peace. then executed, the chiefs putting down the emblems of  
 their several tribes. The purchases of Markham were  
 confirmed, and others made.

11. After this, Penn went to a villa, which his  
 nephew had built for his residence, opposite the site  
 of Burlington, and called Pennsbury. Here he gave  
 Penn lays out directions for laying out towns and counties; and in  
 and names conjunction with the surveyor, Holme, drew the plan  
 Philadelphia. of his capital; and in the spirit of "brotherly love,"  
 named it Philadelphia.

12. Vessels came fast with new settlers, until twenty-  
 two, bearing two thousand persons, had arrived. Some  
 came so late in the fall, that they could not be pro-  
 vided with house-room in the rude dwellings of the  
 new city: and "the caves" were dug in the banks of  
 the river to receive them. Providence fed them by  
 flocks of pigeons, and the fish of the rivers; and the  
 Indians, regarding them as the children of Onas, hunted  
 to bring them game. The season was unusually mild.

Throng  
 of set-  
 tlers.

Aug. 4.  
 1684.  
 Penn em-  
 barks for  
 England

13. Penn had left beyond the ocean his beloved  
 family. Letters from England spoke of the sufferings  
 of his quaker brethren, and he believed that he might  
 exercise an influence there, to check persecution. He  
 embarked on the fourth of August; and wrote on board  
 the ship an affectionate adieu to his province, which  
 he sent on shore before he sailed. He said, "And  
 thou, Philadelphia, virgin of the province! my soul  
 prays for thee; that, faithful to the God of thy mer-  
 cies, in the life of righteousness, thou mayest be pre-  
 served unto the end!"

10. What did Penn say to the chiefs? How did the chiefs  
 respond? Was a treaty made? — 11. What did Penn after  
 this? — 12. What can you say of the new settlers? — 13. Why  
 did Penn return? When did he embark? What send on shore?

# CHAPTER IV.

New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants.

1. PREVIOUS to the surrender of the Dutch, the Duke of York made a grant, of that part of his patent lying between the Hudson and Delaware, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This tract was called NEW JERSEY, in compliment to Sir George, who had been governor of the isle of Jersey.

P.T. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. IV.

1664.

2. In 1664, before the grant to Berkeley and Carteret was known, three persons from Long Island purchased of the natives a tract of the country, which was called Elizabethtown, where a settlement was commenced. Other towns were soon settled by emigrants from the colonies, and from Europe. Thus, opposite claims were created, which caused much discord between the proprietors and inhabitants. In 1665, Berkeley and Carteret formed a constitution for the colony, and appointed Philip Carteret governor. He made Elizabethtown the seat of government.

Eliza-  
bethtown  
previ-  
ously settled

3. Berkeley and Carteret, at first, held the province as joint property, but the former, becoming weary with the care of an estate, which yielded him neither honor nor profit, sold his share to Edward Billinge. That gentleman, on being involved in debt, found it necessary to assign his property for the benefit of his creditors; and William Penn was one of his assignees.

1669.

Lord  
Berkeley  
sells his  
right.

4. New Jersey was now jointly held by Sir George Carteret, and Penn, as agent for the assignees of Billinge. But Penn, perceiving the inconvenience of holding joint property, it was mutually agreed to separate the country into East and West Jersey; Carteret receiving the sole proprietorship of East Jersey, and Penn and his associates, that of West Jersey.

Penn  
causes  
New  
Jersey to  
be di-  
vided.

1. What grant was made? By whom? To whom? What was the country called?—2. Who had made a previous settlement? From whence were other towns soon settled? Did they all agree? What was done in 1665?—3. Which of the two proprietors sold his share? To whom? How came William Penn to have a hand in Jersey affairs?—4. How was New Jersey now held? How and why was it divided?



**P.T. II.** 5. Penn divided West Jersey into one hundred shares, which were separately disposed of, and then, **P.D. I.** in that spirit of righteousness, whereby he won the **CH. IV.** confidence of all, he drew up the articles called "the concessions." By these, the proprietors ceded to the planters, the privileges of free civil government; expressly declaring "we put the power in the people." Religion was left free, and imprisonment for debt prohibited. In two years eight hundred new settlers came over, mostly quakers; persons of excellent character, and good condition.

The  
"conces-  
sions."

**1683.** 6. In 1682, East Jersey, the property of Carteret, being exposed to sale, Penn purchased it for twelve **24 Qua-** quakers. In 1683, these proprietors doubled their **kers buy** number, and obtained a new patent from the Duke of **East** **Jersey.** York.

7. East Jersey was now free from religious intolerance. This was the era of those civil wars of Great Britain, in which the English royal officers, hunted the Cameronian Scots, like wild beasts. Hundreds of the sufferers now came to East Jersey, and there, bringing their industrious and frugal habits, they were blessed with security, abundance, and content.

**+ 1678.** 8. Sir Edmund Andros, when governor of New **Andros** **in the** **Jerseys** York, under pretence of the claims of the Duke of York, usurped the government both in East and West Jersey, and laid a tax upon all goods imported, and upon the property of all who came to settle in the country.

**1680.** 9. Penn received complaints of these abuses, and **Penn is** **there** **also.** with such strength of argument opposed the claims of the duke, that the commissioners, to whom the case was referred, adjudged the duties to be illegal and oppressive. In consequence of which, in 1680 they were removed, and the proprietors reinstated in the government.

10. Edward Billinge was appointed by the proprie-

---

5. How did Penn proceed in regard to West Jersey? — 6. How did Penn come to have any thing to do with East Jersey? How did East Jersey proprietors now proceed? — 7. What was the state of this colony? Who came to it? — 8. What did Sir Edmund Andros? — 9. What did William Penn? — 10. Who did the proprietors appoint?



tors, governor, and in the next year, 1681, he summoned the first general assembly held in West Jersey. In 1682, the people, by the advice of Penn, amended their government. Contrary to the wishes of the proprietors, the next year they proceeded to elect their own governor.

P.T. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. V.**1681.**First  
general  
assembly

## CHAPTER V.

Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—  
Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians.

1. DURING the reign of Puritanism in England, the New England colonies enjoyed a happy season of liberty and peace. This was occasionally interrupted, by fears of the savages, who sometimes manifested their warlike propensities. Sometimes they attacked and destroyed each other.

2. Miantonomoh sought the life of Uncas, because he was aware that he could not make him unite in a conspiracy, which he was exciting against the whites. A Pequod whom he hired, wounded the Mohegan chief, and then fled to him for protection. He refused to surrender the assassin to the demand of the court at Hartford, but dispatched him with his own hand.

**1643**Mianto-  
nomoh  
seeks the  
life of  
Uncas.

3. Miantonomoh drew out his warriors openly against Uncas, in violation of a treaty, to which the authorities of Connecticut were a party. Uncas met and vanquished him by a stratagem, and took him prisoner; but he resigned him to the court. They deliberated, and then returned the noble savage to his captor. Uncas killed him,—without torture, but with circumstances of cannibal barbarity.

B. C. loses  
his own.

10. What did Billinge in 1681? What did the people the next year? The next after this?

CHAPTER V.—1. How did the reign of Puritanism in England affect New England?—2. Give an account of the beginning of the war between Miantonomoh and Uncas?—3. Of the close of the contest?

P.T. II. 4. Roger Williams was now the Father of Rhode  
 P.D. I. Island, as he had formerly been the Founder. He  
 CH. V. twice crossed the ocean, and at length succeeded in  
 1651. obtaining a charter, including the islands, and confirm-  
 R. Island ing the limits of the state, as they now exist. Rhode  
 first in Island, if not great in territory, is rich, in the fame of  
 religious having been the first to set the example, since follow-  
 freedom. ed by the nation at large, of entire "soul-liberty" in  
 matters of religion.

5. When Charles II. was restored, his power was  
 1662. acknowledged in New England; but the colonies had  
 Conn. melancholy forebodings. Yet the authorities of Con-  
 obtains a necticut, by the eminent Winthrop, even at this diffi-  
 charter. cult period, successfully applied to the court of England  
 for a charter. They plead, that they had obtained  
 their lands, by purchase, from the natives, and by  
 conquest from the Pequods, who made on them a war  
 of extermination; and they had mingled their labor  
 with the soil.

6. Winthrop appeared before the king with such a  
 gentle dignity of carriage, and such appropriate con-  
 Win- versation, as won the royal favor. It is said he brought  
 throp to the mind of Charles some interesting recollections,  
 and the by the present of a ring, which had been given to his  
 ring. grandfather as a pledge, by an ancestor of the monarch.

7. The king granted a liberal charter, which included  
 1665. New Haven. That province, however, had not been  
 New consulted, and justly felt aggrieved; as a relinquish-  
 Haven ment of its separate existence was thereby required.  
 united But at length, the great expediency of the measure  
 with becoming fully apparent, the union of New Haven  
 Conn. with Connecticut was completed. Winthrop was  
 chosen governor. He received seventeen annual elec-  
 tions.

8. Colonel Nichols, who was sent over to command  
 the expedition against New Netherlands, was one of

---

4. What charter was obtained for Rhode Island? For what  
 is Rhode Island distinguished? — 5. By whom did the people  
 of Connecticut apply for a charter? What reasons did they  
 plead? — 6. How did Winthrop behave? — 7. What kind of a  
 charter was obtained? How was it with respect to New Haven?  
 Who was chosen governor? — 8. What can you say of Colonel  
 Nichols?

four commissioners, who had been appointed by the king, not only for conquering the Dutch, but for humbling the colonies. The people felt much aggrieved. Massachusetts resisted every exercise of their power, and two of their number, Carr and Cartwright, left the country in high displeasure.

9. This was the period of the labors of John Elliot, called the apostle of the Indians. He beheld with pity the ignorance and spiritual darkness of the savages, and determined to devote himself to their conversion. He first spent some years in the study of their language. The General Court of the province passed an order requesting the clergy to report the best means of spreading the gospel among the natives; and Elliot took this occasion to meet with the Indians at Nonantum, a few miles west of Boston. His meetings for religious worship and discourse were held, whenever favorable opportunities could be found or made.

10. His efforts to teach the natives the arts and usages of civilized life, were also unremitted and arduous; "for civility," it was said, "must go hand in hand with Christianity." These efforts and their effects, exhibit the children of the forest in a most interesting point of view, and show the transforming power of the gospel. Their dispositions and lives underwent a real change. Some of their numbers became teachers, and aided in the conversion of others.

11. In 1655, Elliot had completed his translation of the New Testament into the Indian language, and in two years more the old was added. Thus the mighty labor of learning the difficult tongue of the Indians, of making from its oral elements, a written language, and that of translating the whole Bible, was, by zeal and persevering labor, accomplished. It was the first Bible printed in America. But both the Indian and his language are now extinct, and Elliot's Bible is a mere literary curiosity.

8 How did the people feel? Which colony resisted? What did two of the commissioners? — 9. What was John Elliot called? Give an account of the beginning of his labors? — 10. Did Elliot teach the natives any thing but religion? What success had he? — 11. What great labor did Elliot perform in respect to the Bible?

P'T. II. 12. In 1674, there were fourteen towns of "pray-  
 P'D. I. ing Indians," and six gathered churches. The Indian  
 CH. VI. converts had much to encounter. Their great chiefs  
 Number hated Christianity. Although it made their subjects  
 of pray- willing to do the right, yet it set them to reflect; and  
 ing thus to find out, that there was a right for them *to have*,  
 Indians. 1674. as well as *to do*. This tended to subvert the absolute  
 arbitrary sway, which the sachem, however he might  
 allow it to slumber, did actually possess; and which  
 he naturally felt unwilling to relinquish. Of these  
 chiefs, Philip of Pokanoket, was peculiarly the foe of  
 the Christian religion.

## CHAPTER VI.

King Philip's War. — Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets.

Philip's  
resent-  
ment. 1. PHILIP was the younger of the two sons of Massa-  
 soit. He had become embittered against the English,  
 by the death of his brother, which he ascribed to  
 them; and though he was thus left sole chieftain of  
 the Pokanokets, yet he deeply felt his loss, and bitterly  
 resented it.

Indians  
jealous  
and  
hostile. 2. The extension of the English had alarmed the  
 savage nations. The new race, whom their fathers  
 received, when a poor and feeble band, were now  
 gradually spreading themselves over the land, and as-  
 suming to be its sovereigns. But the natives were yet  
 numerous, and, by union, they might extirpate the  
 whites, and regain the country. Thus thought Philip,  
 as he secretly plotted, to bring to pass, his cruel  
 designs.

12. How many towns were there of the "Praying Indians?"  
 What feelings and opinions had the great chiefs? Who in par-  
 ticular was hostile?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Why was Philip embittered against the Eng-  
 lish? — 2. What alarmed the savages? What did Philip think  
 and do?



3. The Narragansetts, so long friendly, were now under the rule of Conanchet, the son of Miantonomoh; and doubtless he remembered the benefits, which his father had bestowed upon the whites, and their refusal to hear his last plea for mercy.

P.T. II  
P.D. I.  
CH. VI.

4. Sausaman, one of the natives whom Elliot had instructed in Christianity, gave to the English, intimations of Philip's designs. Sausaman was soon after murdered. On investigation, the Plymouth court found that the murder was committed by three of Philip's most intimate friends; and forthwith they caused them to be executed.

Sausa-  
man's  
disclo-  
sure and  
death.

5. On the 20th of June, Philip's exasperated warriors attacked Swansey, in New Plymouth. The colonists appeared in defence of the place, and the Indians fled. The English force marched into the Indian towas, which, on their approach, were deserted. But the route of the savages was marked, by the ruins of buildings, which had been burned, and by the heads and hands of the English, which were fixed upon poles by the way-side. The troops, finding that they could not overtake them, returned to Swansey.

1675.  
June 24,  
Swansey  
attacked.

6. The commissioners of the colonies, meeting at Boston, were unanimous in deciding that the war must be prosecuted with vigor, and each colony furnish means, according to its ability. Of the thousand men which they determined to send immediately into the field, Massachusetts was to furnish five hundred and twenty-seven, Connecticut three hundred and fifteen, and Plymouth one hundred and fifty-eight. Subsequently the commissioners voted to raise double this number.

July 3,  
The  
Congress  
raise an  
army.

7. The army was sent from Swansey into the country of the Narragansetts, and negotiating, sword in hand, with that confederacy, on the 15th of July, a treaty of peace was concluded. It was stipulated

Compa  
the Nar.  
to make  
peace.

3. Who was Conanchet? What was his disposition towards the English? — 4. How did the English become acquainted with Philip's designs? What did the Plymouth court? — 5. When and where did Philip begin the war? What measures did the colonists pursue? — 6. What ground did the commissioners take? How was the number of men, to be raised, apportioned? — 7. Where was the army sent? What treaty was made?

"T. II. among other things, to give forty coats to any of the  
 P.D. I. Narragansetts, who should bring Philip alive, twenty  
 CH. VI. for his head and two for each of his subjects delivered as prisoners.

Philip  
 attacked  
 at Pocasset.  
 Battle at Brookfield.  
 8. The Indian king retreated, with his warriors, to a swamp at Pocasset, near Montaup. There, on the 18th, the colonists attacked them, but gained no decisive advantage. Philip then went to the vicinity of Connecticut river; but to the inhabitants, every where in danger, and in fear, he seemed to be every where present. Captain Hutchinson, with a company of horse, was drawn into an ambush, near Brookfield, where he was mortally wounded, and sixteen of his company were killed. The Indians then burned the town.

Sept. 18.  
 Battle of Bloody Brook.  
 9. Intending to collect a magazine and garrison at Hadley, Captain Lathrop, with a corps of the choicest young men, selected from the vicinity of Boston, was sent to transport a quantity of corn from Deerfield, to that place. They were suddenly attacked by the Indians, and though they fought with great bravery, they were almost all cut off. The brook, by which they fought, flowed red, and to this day is called "Bloody Brook."

October.  
 Springfield burned.  
 10. In October, the Springfield Indians, who had previously been friendly, concerted with the hostile tribes, and set fire to that town. While its flames were raging, they attacked Hadley.

Conan-  
 chet violates the treaty.  
 11. Conanachet now violated the treaty, and not only received Philip's warriors, but aided their operations against the English. On the 18th of December, one thousand troops were collected from the different colonies, under the command of Josiah Winslow, of Plymouth. After a stormy night passed in the open air, they waded through the snow sixteen miles; and about

---

7. What was stipulated? — 8. Give an account of King Philip's movements? What was the condition of the inhabitants? What befel Capt. Hutchinson? — 9. Give an account of Capt. Lathrop, and his company? — 10. What treachery was practised by the Springfield Indians? — 11. What was now the conduct of Conanachet? What number of troops went to attack him? At what time, and under what circumstances did they march?

one o'clock, on the afternoon of the 19th, they arrived near the enemy's fortress.

P.T. II

P.D. I.  
CH VI.

12. It was on a rising ground, in the midst of a swamp; and was so fortified with palisades, and thick hedges, that only by crossing a log, which lay over a ravine, could it be approached. The officers led the men directly across the narrow and dangerous bridge. The first were killed, but others pressed on, and the fort was entered. Conanchet and his warriors forced the English to retire; but they continued the fight, defeated the savages, and again entering the fort, they set fire to the Indian dwellings. One thousand warriors were killed; three hundred, and as many women and children, were made prisoners. About six hundred of their wigwams were burnt, and many helpless sufferers perished in the flames.

Dec. 19.  
The fort  
of the  
Nar. de-  
stroyed.

13. The wretched remains of the tribe took shelter in the recesses of a cedar swamp,—covering themselves with boughs, or burrowing in the ground, and feeding on acorns or nuts, dug out with their hands from the snow. Many who escaped a sudden, thus died a lingering death. Conanchet was made prisoner in April, and was offered his freedom if he would enter into a treaty of peace. The chieftain indignantly refused, and was put to death.

Famine  
and coldConan-  
chet's  
death.

14. In the spring of 1676, the colonial troops were almost universally victorious. Jealousies arose among the different tribes of savages, and while great numbers were slain, many deserted the common cause. Philip had attempted to rouse the Mohawks against the English, and had, for this purpose, killed a number of the tribe, and attributed their death to the whites. His perfidy was detected, and he fled to Montaup, whither he was pursued.

1676

Philip  
attempts  
to gair  
the Mo-  
hawks

15. In the midst of these reverses, Philip remained unshaken in his enmity. His chief men, as also his wife and family, were killed or made prisoners; and,

---

12. Describe the fort—the approach of the troops—the second attack—the destruction of the Indians. — 13. What happened to the remains of the tribe? To Conanchet? — 14. How did the colonial troops succeed in 1676? Where was Philip? — 15. How did he bear his adversity?



P'T. II. while he wept bitterly, for these domestic bereavements,  
 P'D. I. he shot one of his men, who proposed submission.  
 CH. VII. After being driven from swamp to swamp, he was at  
 1676. last shot near Montaup, by the brother of the Indian  
 Philip is whom he had thus killed.  
 killed.

16. Of the scattered parties which remained, many were captured. Some sought refuge at the north. These afterwards served as guides, to those parties of hostile French and Indians, who came down and desolated the provinces. In this dreadful contest, New England lost six hundred inhabitants, and a great amount of property. Fourteen towns had been destroyed, and a heavy debt incurred. Yet the colonies received no assistance from England; and they asked none. The humane Irish sent the sufferers some relief.

In Philip's  
 war  
 N. Eng-  
 land loses  
 600.

The  
 Indian  
 Nations  
 destroy-  
 ed.

17. If Philip's war was to the whites disastrous, to the savage tribes it was ruinous. The Pokanokets and the Narragansetts henceforth disappear from history. The "praying Indians" were mostly of the Massachusetts confederacy; and although they suffered much, being suspected by the red men because they were Christians, and by the whites because they were Indians, they yet had a remnant left. Elliot watched his scattered flocks, and exposed himself to many dangers on their account. The wreck of four towns remained from the fourteen, which the converts numbered before the war.

## CHAPTER VII.

The Regicides.—New Hampshire and Maine.—Charter of Massachusetts annulled.

1. THE regicides, a term, which in English and American history, refers especially to those men who signed the death warrant of Charles I., were, after the

15. How did he come to his end? — 16. What became of his followers? How many inhabitants of New England were destroyed during this bloody war? Who sent relief? — 17. What were the consequences of the war to the Indians? How did it affect the praying Indians?

CHAPTER VII.—1. Who were the regicides?



restoration of his son, proscribed. Three of their number, Goffe, Whalley, and Dixwell, came to America. They were at Boston and Cambridge, and under romantic circumstances, were shielded from their pursuers at New Haven. At length, Whalley and Goffe found refuge in the house of Mr. Russel, minister of Hadley, where they lived in profound concealment.

P.T. II

P.D. I.  
CH. VIIThe  
three re-  
gicides

2. Goffe had been a military commander. Looking from the window of his hiding place, he saw, on a Sabbath day, as the people were collecting for public worship, a body of ambushed Indians stealing upon them. Suddenly he left his confinement, and appeared among the gathering worshippers, his white hair and beard, and loose garments streaming to the winds. He gives the alarm, and the word of command; and the men, already armed, are at once formed, and bearing down upon the foe. When they had conquered, they looked around for their preserver. He had vanished during the fray; and they fully believed that he had been an angel, sent from heaven for their deliverance.

Oct. 1.  
**1675**  
Goffe  
Hadley.

3. Of the three judges, who cast themselves upon the Americans, not one was betrayed. The meanest of the people could not be induced, by the price set upon their heads, to give them up; and they now rest, in peaceful graves, upon our soil.

The re-  
gicides  
not be-  
trayed.

4. MAINE. In 1677, a controversy, which had existed for some time, between the government of Massachusetts, and the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, relative to the district of Maine, was settled in England, and the territory assigned to the latter. Upon this, Massachusetts purchased the title, and Maine became a province of that colony.

**1677**  
Mass.  
buys  
Maine.

5. NEW HAMPSHIRE. In 1679, a commission was made out by order of Charles II., for the separation of New Hampshire from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, and its erection into a royal province. The

**1679.**  
N. H. a  
royal  
province

1. Which of them came to America? Where were they? — 2. During King Philip's war, what were the circumstances of Goffe's appearing at Hadley? — 3. Were either of the three judges betrayed? — 4. How did Massachusetts acquire a title to Maine? — 5. What happened to New Hampshire in 1679?

P'T. II. assembly was to be chosen by the people, the presi-  
 P'D. I. dent and council to be appointed by the crown.  
 CH. VII. This colony now manifested, that stability of char-  
 Shows a free spirit. acter, for which, no less, than for its sublime piles of  
 mountains, it is called "the Granite State." The  
 people first thanked Massachusetts for the care she  
 had taken of their infant condition; and next deter-  
 mined "that no law should be valid, unless made by  
 the assembly, and approved by the people."

6. Edward Cranfield, a needy speculator, was se-  
 lected by Mason, and sent from England, to be the go-  
 vernor of New Hampshire. But he could neither out-  
 wit, nor over-awe the rugged patriots; nor with all  
 the advantages of law, eject them from their lands;  
 though for many years he gave them great annoyance.

7. Charles II. made additional navigation acts, by  
 which he would have entirely destroyed the commerce  
 of the colonies, had they been observed. But they  
 were evaded, and opposed, especially in Massachusetts.  
 Edward Randolph was sent over by the king, to see  
 that these oppressive laws were executed.

8. James II., who declared, that there should be no  
 free governments in his dominions, issued writs against  
 the charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island. These  
 colonies presented letters and addresses, which, con-  
 tained expressions of humble duty. The king con-  
 strained them into an actual surrender of their charters;  
 and, proceeded to establish a temporary government  
 over New England. Sir Edmund Andros was appoint-  
 ed governor general.

9. Sir Edmund began his career with the most flat-  
 tering professions of his regard to the public safety  
 and happiness. It was, however, well observed, that  
 "Nero concealed his tyrannical disposition more years  
 than Sir Edmund did months." Soon after his arrival

5. Why is New Hampshire called the granite state? — 6. Who  
 was selected by Mason as governor? What was beyond his  
 power to do? — 7. How did King Charles proceed in regard  
 to navigation laws? How did the colonists? Whom did the king  
 send over? For what purpose? — 8. What writs did James II.  
 issue? What did R. I. and Conn.? How did the king next pro-  
 ceed? Who did he send over as governor general? — 9. How  
 did Sir Edmund begin?

in the country, he sent to Connecticut, demanding the surrender of the charter. This being refused, in 1687, he came with a guard to Hartford, during the session of the general assembly, and in person required its delivery.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VII.

**1686**

Sir E.  
Andros  
in New  
England

10. After debating until evening, the charter was produced, and laid on the table, where the assembly were sitting. The lights were suddenly extinguished, and one of the members privately conveyed it away, and hid it in the cavity of a large oak tree. The candles were officiously relighted, but the charter was gone; and no discovery could be made of it, or, at that time, of the person who carried it away. The government of the colony was, however, surrendered to Andros.

**1687**

Charter  
of Conn  
hid in  
Charter  
Oak, or  
Wyllis'  
Hill.

11. Massachusetts, where Sir Edmund resided, was the principal seat of despotism and suffering. In 1688, New York, and New Jersey, were added to his jurisdiction; and for more than two years, there was a general suppression of charter governments throughout the colonies, and a perpetual series of tyrannical exactions.

**1687,**

to

**1689**

12. But the king had made himself as much detested at home, as his governor had abroad. The British nation, putting aside the fiction of the divine right of legitimate sovereigns, asserted that of human nature, by declaring that an oppressed people may change their rulers. They forced the king to abdicate, and completed what is called the English "Revolution," by placing William and Mary on the throne.

**1688.**

"The  
Revolution" in  
England.

13. Great was the joy of New England. Even on the first rumor of the British Revolution, the authorities of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and Randolph. As a temporary government, they organized a committee of safety, of which the aged governor, Bradstreet, accepted the presidency; though he knew that, if the intelligence proved false, it might cost him his life.

Andros  
and Pan-  
dolph is  
"Ch. II.

9. Why did he go to Hartford? — 10. What happened during his visit? — 11. What took place from 1687 to 1689? — 12. What fiction or false principle did the English put aside? What right did they assert? What is this event called? — 13. What was done in Boston?



P.T. II

P.D. I  
CH. VIII.N. H.  
1685.Mason  
dies.  
Allen  
buys his  
title.

14. The change of government, produced by the removal of Andros, left New Hampshire in an unsettled state. Mason had died in 1685, leaving his two sons heirs to his claims. The people earnestly petitioned to be again united with Massachusetts, but their wishes were frustrated by Samuel Allen, who had purchased of the heirs of Mason, their title to New Hampshire. Allen received a commission as governor of the colony, and assumed the government in 1692.

Conn.  
and R. I.  
resume  
their  
charters.

15. When the intelligence was confirmed, that William and Mary were seated on the throne, Rhode Island and Connecticut resumed their charters; but the king resolutely refused to restore to Massachusetts, her former system of government. Andros, Randolph, and others, were ordered to England for trial.

## CHAPTER VIII.

N. York.- Its Governors.—Leisler.—Quakers in Massachusetts.

Lovelace.  
1667.

1. AFTER the surrender of the Dutch, Colonel Nichols entered upon the administration of the government of New York, which he conducted with great prudence, integrity, and moderation. The people, however, continued without civil rights, all authority being vested in the royal governor and council. Nichols returned to England, and was succeeded by Lord Lovelace.

1673.  
Dutch  
take N.  
York.

2. In 1673, England and Holland were again involved in war, and Holland sent over a small fleet to regain her American possessions. This force arrived at New York, and demanded a surrender, which was made without resistance. The Dutch took immediate possession of the fort and city, and soon after of the whole province.

14. What took place in New Hampshire? — 15. What happened in the other New England provinces? Who were sent to England?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. How did Colonel Nichols govern in New York? — 2. What happened in 1673?



3. The next year, 1674, the war terminated, and New York was restored to the English. The Duke of York, to prevent controversy about his title to the territory, took out a new patent, and the same year appointed Sir Edmund Andros, governor.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VIII

**1674.**

N. York  
restored.

4. Andros claimed jurisdiction over that part of Connecticut west of the river, it having been included in the grant to the Duke of York. To seize it, he arrived off the fort, at Saybrook, with an armed force. The governor and council, being apprised of his design, sent a few troops under Captain Bull, who conducted himself with such spirit, that Andros, jocosely declaring that his "horns should be tipped with gold," made no further attempt.

**1675.**

Andros  
repulsed  
at Say-  
brook.

5. In 1682, Andros was removed from the government of New York. The succeeding year was a happy era in the history of this colony. The excellent Colonel Dongan arrived as governor, and the desires of the people, for a popular government, were gratified. The first general assembly was convoked, consisting of a council and eighteen representatives. Governor Dongan surpassed all his predecessors, in attention to affairs with the Indians, by whom he was highly esteemed.

**1682.**

Dongan.

**1683.**

First  
general  
assembly

6. The news from Europe, that the inhabitants of England had resolved to dethrone James, and offer the crown to William and Mary, raised the hopes of the disaffected. Among these, was Jacob Leisler, an active militia captain, and a favorite of the people. He was not, however, a man of talents, but received the guiding impulses of his conduct, from the superior energies of his son-in-law, Jacob Milborne.

**1688.**

Leisler.

7. By his counsel, Leisler, at the head of a few men, declared for William and Mary, and took possession of the fort of New York. His party increased to more than five hundred. The governor left the province, and Leisler assumed to administer the government.

Leisler  
assumes  
to act as  
king  
Wil-  
liam's  
agent.

3. What took place in 1674? — 4. Give an account of Andros's attempt to take Connecticut? — 5. What happened in 1682? What the next year? — 6. What happened in New York when news came of the expulsion of King James? Who was Jacob Leisler? — 7. Give an account of his and Milborne's operations?

P'T. II. Milborne went to Albany, and made himself master  
 P'D. I. of the place. The regular authorities were against  
 CH. VIII. these lawless proceedings.

8. King William now commissioned Henry Slough-  
 1691. ter, as governor of New York. Never was a gover-  
 Slough- nor more needed, and never was one more destitute  
 ter gov- of every qualification for the office. He refused to  
 erns N. treat with Leisler; but put him, and several of his ad-  
 York. herents to prison. Finally, that unfortunate man, to-  
 Leisler gether with his son-in-law, perished upon the gallows.  
 executed. Their execution was disapproved by the people; and  
 their property, which was confiscated, was afterwards  
 restored to their descendants.

9. Motives derived from pure religion, are the best,  
 and most effective, of all which influence human con-  
 duct. But when the religious feeling of men becomes  
 Reli- perverted, all history shows, that it then produces the  
 gious very worst effects. Under the influence of this feeling,  
 feeling. in its right operation, our Puritan forefathers resisted  
 oppression in England, suffered hardship, and braved  
 death, to enjoy their religion unmolested.

10. But they were not free, from the common error  
 of their age, which was, that all in the same commu-  
 nity, must, on religious subjects, think very much  
 alike. The Puritans believed their way was certainly  
 May become right, and they were utterly unwilling, that any should  
 pervert- be among them, who should teach any thing different.  
 ed. This produced uncharitableness towards others, and  
 the bad effects of the religious sentiment perverted.

11. The denomination of Friends or Quakers, had  
 arisen in England. They had heard that the Puritans  
 exercised a persecuting spirit, as in the cases of Mrs.  
 Hutchinson and Roger Williams. They also thought  
 The Friends or Quakers. the Puritan religion consisted too much in outward  
 form, and too little in inward purity. The Quakers  
 believed, that they were called by a voice from a divine

---

8. Who was Henry Slough-ter? How did he proceed in regard to Leisler?—9. What may be said of motives derived from true religion? When the religious feeling of bodies of men becomes perverted, how is it then? What did our Puritan forefathers, under the impulse of right religious feeling?—10. What was the common error of their age? Were the Puritans free from it?—11. What induced the Quakers to come to Massachusetts?

inward monitor, to go to New England, particularly to Boston, and there warn the people of their errors.

12. The Puritans, when they came, imprisoned them, and sent them away. The Quakers came again, and boldly denounced that, which the Puritans held dearer than life. Laws were made to banish them, prohibiting return, on pain of death. The Quakers came back, and four were actually hanged. The Puritans then became convinced of their error, opened their prison doors, and released twenty-eight persons.

P.T. 1<sup>st</sup>.P.D. I.  
CH. 14.

1660

4 execu  
ted in  
Mass.

28

released

## CHAPTER IX.

Jesuit Missionaries of France—their Discoveries.

1. FROM the devotion of the Puritans, and the Quakers, we turn to that of the Jesuit missionaries of France; and in all, we perceive “the operation of that common law of our nature, which binds the heart of man to the Author of his being.” The Jesuit missionaries desired to extend the benefits of Christian redemption to the heathen; yet they unfortunately united worldly policy with religious enthusiasm, and sought, not only to win souls to Christ, but subjects to the king of France, and the papal dominion.

Reli  
gious de  
votion a  
natural  
principle

2. The Catholics, already in Canada, seconded their efforts, and in 1640, Montreal was founded, to give the missionaries a starting point, nearer the scene of their operations. Within thirteen years, the wilderness of the Hurons was visited by sixty missionaries, mostly Jesuits. Making the Huron settlements of St. Louis, and St. Ignatius, their central station, they carried the gospel to the surrounding tribes; and thus visited and

1634

to

1649

60 mis  
sionaries

12. How were they treated?

CHAPTER IX.—1. When we see that different sects are willing to suffer death, in the service of God, what do we perceive? What two principles of conduct did the Jesuits unite?—2. When was Montreal founded? For what object? Learn from the map of this period, in connection with the book, the central station of the missionaries.



P.T. II. became the first European explorers of the southern  
 P.D. I. portion of Upper Canada, of which they took posses-  
 C.U. IX. sion for the French king.

3. One of these missionaries, Isaac Jouges, undaunt-  
 ed by the terrors of the Mohawk name, went among  
 these savages, and was imprisoned. He escaped, but  
 1646. afterwards attempted a permanent mission. Arriving  
 Father at the Mohawk castle, he was accused of blighting the  
 Jouges. corn of the Indians, by spells of sorcery. Being con-  
 demned, he received his death blow with composure.  
 The Mo- His head was hung on the palisades of the fort, and  
 hawks. his body thrown into the placid stream.

4. Circumstances changed. The missionaries were  
 received among each tribe of the Five Nations. Rude  
 chapels were constructed, where the natives chanted  
 the services of the Romish church. But when the  
 missionaries sought to bring their lives under the influ-  
 ence of Christian principles, as to war and the treat-  
 ment of prisoners, the fierceness of their character  
 prevailed. They returned to their former customs,  
 gave up their religion, and expelled the missionaries.  
 Thus ended the attempts of the French to colonize  
 New York.

5. Father Allouez, bent on a voyage of discovery,  
 early in September, passed Mackinaw, into Lake Supe-  
 1665.rior. Sailing along the high banks and pictured rocks  
 Allouez of its southern shore, he rested, beyond the bay of  
 at Lake of its southern shore, he rested, beyond the bay of  
 Superior. Keweenaw, on that of Chegoimegon. Here was the  
 great village of the Chippewas.

6. A grand council of ten or twelve tribes was, at  
 the moment, assembled, to prevent the young braves of  
 the Chippewas and Sioux, from taking up the toma-  
 hawk against each other. In this assembly came for-  
 ward the missionary, and stood, and commanded, in the  
 name of his heavenly, and of his earthly master, that  
 there should be peace.

2. What part of the country did the missionaries take posses-  
 sion of for the French king? — 3. Give an account of Father  
 Jouges? — 4. Of the further attempt to convert the Indians of  
 New York? — 5. Give an account of Father Allouez's route to  
 the village of the Chippewas, and show it on the map? — 6  
 What did Father Allouez at this village?



7. The Indians listened with reverence. They had never before seen a white man. Soon they built a chapel; and there they devoutly chanted their vesper and matin hymns; and the mission of St. Esprit was founded. The scattered Hurons and Ottawas here collected around the missionary. He preached to the Pottawotamies, the Sacs and Foxes, the Illinois, and the Sioux.

P.T. II  
P.D. I.  
CH. IX.  
St.  
Esprit  
founded.

8. From each of these tribes, he gained descriptions of their country, their lakes and rivers, of which he made reports to his government. He especially dwelt on what he had heard of the great river "Mesipi." He urged the sending of small colonies of French emigrants, to make permanent settlements in the west.

The  
great  
river  
heard of

9. A small company, headed by two missionaries, Claude Dablon, and James Marquette, founded the first French settlement within the limits of the United States. It is at St. Mary's, on the falls between the Lakes Superior and Huron... Allouez founded a mission at Green Bay.

1668.  
St.  
Mary's  
founded.

1669.  
Green  
Bay.

10. Marquette selected a young Illinois as his companion, and learned from him the language of his nation. The Hurons heard with astonishment, that he had formed the bold design of exploring the great river of the west; notwithstanding their assertions, that its monsters devoured men and canoes, its warriors never spared the stranger, and its climate was rife with death.

Mar-  
quette's  
boldness

11. Marquette walked from Green Bay, followed the Fox river, crossed the Portage from its head waters to those of the Wisconsin; when, with no companion but the missionary Joliet, he embarked upon its bosom, and followed its course, unknowing whither it would lead. Solitary they floated along, till, in seven days, they entered, with inexpressible joy, the broad Mississippi. They continued to float with its

1673.  
Follows  
the Wis-  
consin &  
the M<sup>iss</sup>.

---

7. How was it with the Indians? What was the mission called?  
8. What information was gained, and reported?—9. What account can you give of St. Mary's? Where did Allouez found a mission?—10. What was said by the Indians to deter Marquette from executing his design?—11. Give an account of his route, and trace it on the map.

P.T. II lonely current, until, near the mouth of the Mongona,  
P.D. I. they perceived marks of population.

CH. IX. 12. Disembarking, they found, at fourteen miles from the river, a village of the natives. Old men met them with the calumet, told them they were expected, and bade them enter their dwellings in peace. The Indian missionaries declared, by the council-fire, the claims of the Christian religion, and the right of the king of France, to their territory. The Indians feasted them, and sent them away with the gift of a peace-pipe, embellished with the various colored heads and necks of bright and beautiful birds.

13. Sailing on their solitary way, the discoverers heard afar, a rush of waters from the west; and soon the vast Missouri came down with its fiercer current to hasten on the more sluggish Mississippi. They saw, and passed the mouth of the Ohio, nor stopped, till they had gone beyond that of the Arkansas. There they found savages, who spoke a new tongue. They were armed with guns; a proof that they had trafficked with the Spaniards, or with the English, in Virginia. They showed hostile dispositions, but respected the peace-pipe, the white flag of the desert.

1674. Marquette now retraced his course to the Illinois,—entered and ascended that river, and beheld the beautiful fertility of its summer prairies, abounding in game. He visited Chicago, and in September was again at Green Bay.

1675. The next year, on the banks of the little stream, now called by his name, Marquette retired for devotion, from the company with which he was journeying—to pray, by a rude altar of stones, beneath the silent shade. There, half an hour afterwards, his dead body was found. He was buried on the shore of the lake; and the Indian fancies that his spirit still controls its storms.

16. As Joliet, the companion of Marquette, was returning from the west, to carry the tidings of their

12. What happened at an Indian village?—13. Describe, and trace Marquette's route, to its farthest extent? What inhabitants did he find?—14. Describe, and trace his return?—15. Give an account of the death of Marquette?

discovery, he met at Frontenac, now Kingston, the governor of the place, the energetic and highly gifted La Salle. His genius kindled, at the description of the missionary; he went to France, and was commissioned to complete the survey of the great river.

P.T. II  
P.D. I.  
CH. IX.

**1679**  
La Salle.

17. He returned to Frontenac, built a wooden canoe, of ten tons, and carrying a part of his company to the mouth of Tonnewanta Creek, he there built the first sailing vessel, which ever navigated Lake Erie. On his way across the lakes, he marked Detroit as a suitable place for a colony, gave name to Lake St. Clair, planted a trading house at Mackinaw, and finally cast anchor at Green Bay.

Builds  
the first  
sailing  
vessel on  
Lake  
Erie.

Founds  
Mackinaw.

18. Here, he collected a rich cargo of furs, and sent back his brig to carry them to Niagara. Then, in bark canoes, he moved his party south, to the head of lake Michigan. There he constructed the Fort of the Miamis. His brig was unfortunately lost; but, with a small company, he steered resolutely west, accompanied by the Jesuit Hennepin.

19. They reached, through many discouragements, by disaster, treachery, and climate, the great Illinois, and following its waters four days journey below Lake Peoria, La Salle there built a fort, which, in the bitterness of his spirit, he named Creve-coeur. Here he sent out a party under Hennepin, to explore the sources of the Mississippi, and himself set forth on foot to return to Frontenac.

**1679.**  
Henne-  
pin with  
La Salle

20. Hennepin followed the Illinois to its junction with the parent stream; then ascended that river above the falls to which he gave the name of St. Anthony. He afterwards reported, though falsely, that he had discovered the sources of the Mississippi.

**1680**  
He ex-  
plores to  
St. An-  
thony's  
Falls

La Salle returned to his fort on the Illinois, built a small vessel, and the next year, he sailed down the Mississippi, till he reached its mouth. To the country he gave the name of Louisiana, in honor of his sovereign, Louis XIV.

16. Who was La Salle? How did he become interested, and what did he do? — 17. Trace, and describe his route to Green Bay? — 18. What steps did he here take? — 19. Where did he go from thence? Whom did he send out to explore? — 20. What was done by Hennepin? What next by La Salle?



**P'T. II.** 21. Returning to France, the government sent him  
**P'D. I.** to colonize the country which he had visited; but his  
**CH. X.** fleet took a wrong direction, and he was carried, with  
**1687.** his party, to Texas, where he made the settlement of  
**La Salle** St. Louis. Attempting to go to Louisiana on foot, a  
**killed.** discontented soldier of his party, gave him his death-  
 shot. Texas was regarded as an appendage to Lou-  
 isiana.

## CHAPTER X.

North and South Carolina.—The Great Patent.—Mr. Locke's  
 Constitution.

**Patent of**  
**Carolina.**  
**1663.** 1. AFTER Charles II. was restored, the people about  
 him, took advantage of his improvident good nature,  
 and want of conscientious scruples. They thus gained  
 large tracts of American territory—and, neither he  
 who gave, nor they who received, considered, whether  
 or not, it was his to give. In 1663, the king gave  
 Carolina, which more justly belonged to Spain, to  
 Lord Clarendon the historian, Lord Ashley Cooper  
 Earl of Shaftsbury, General Monk afterwards Duke  
 of Albemarle, Lord Craven, the two Berkeleys, Sir  
 John Colleton, and Sir George Carteret.

**The**  
**grant ex-**  
**tended.**  
**1665.** 2. These noblemen next aspired to the glory of  
 founding a sovereignty, which should, not only yield  
 them money, but the fame of legislators; and in 1667,  
 Charles granted them the whole of the country, from  
 the mouth of the river St. Johns to 36° 33' north lati-  
 tude; and from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean. To  
 frame a government for the future empire, they secured  
 the services, of the well known philosopher, John  
 Locke. In the meantime, the younger Berkeley, who  
 was governor of Virginia, was to extend his rule over  
 the whole territory.

21. What happened on his last return to America?

CHAPTER X.—1. What traits of Charles II. are here mention-  
 ed? What advantage was taken of them? What grant did he  
 make in 1663? To whom?—2. What grant did he make in  
 1667? Show its extent on the map? Who was to frame a con-  
 stitution for this large country? Who to be governor?



3. But settlers were wanted; and to procure these, P.T. II various inducements were held out by the company. P.D. I. Two settlements had already been formed within their CH. X. precincts. One of these, near Albemarle Sound, was begun, at an early day, by enterprising planters from Virginia; and enjoying entire liberty, it had been augmented from that and other colonies, whenever religious or political oppression had scattered their people. Settlement at Albemarle, the nucleus of N. C. This settlement had so increased, as to form, for convenience, a simple democratic government. 1663. Forms a democracy.

4. The other colony was to the south of this, on Cape Fear, or Clarendon river; and had been originally made, by a little band of adventurers from New England. They, as well as the former colony, had purchased their land of the natives; they had occupied it, and they claimed, as a law of nature, the right of self-government. Settlers at Cape Fear united to those of Charleston begin S. C.

5. In the meantime, a number of planters from Barbadoes purchased lands of the sachems, and settled on Cape Fear river, near the territory of the New Englanders. The two parties united. In 1667, they were in danger of famine, and Massachusetts sent them relief. They requested of the proprietors a confirmation of the purchase they had made of the Indians, and of the power, which they had assumed to govern themselves. As a state must have inhabitants, their request was partially granted; and one of their number, Sir John Yeamans, was appointed their governor. The settlement, in 1666, contained eight hundred persons.

Sir J. Yeaman was the leading man of the Barbadoes party.

6. Thus, the germs of liberty had, in the Carolinas, begun to vegetate strongly. And when the great aristocratical constitution, making three orders of nobility, was sent over, in 1670, the ground was already pre-occupied. These dwellers in scattered log cabins in the woods, could not be noblemen, and would not be serfs. Eventually, the interest of the proprietors pre- 1693 [The constitution of Locke abrogated.]

3. What settlement was formed in the northern part of the tract? Of what did it prove to be the nucleus? — 4. Describe the settlement which proved to be the nucleus of South Carolina. 5. What change of inhabitants took place? Who was their first governor? What was their number in 1666? — 6. How was it in respect to Mr. Locke's constitution?

P.T. II. vailed over their pride. The inhabitants took their own way in regard to government, and in 1693, the constitution of Locke was formally abrogated.

**1670.** Gov. Sayle. 7. William Sayle, the first proprietary governor of Carolina, brought over a colony, with which he founded old Charlestown. Dying in 1671, his colony was annexed to that of Governor Yeamans. In 1680, the city was removed to the point of land between the two rivers, which received the names of Ashley and Cooper. The foundation of the present capital of the south was laid, and the name of the king perpetuated in that of Charleston.

**1690.** French protestants. 8. During the year 1690, King William sent out a large body of French Protestants, who had been compelled to leave their country, by the arbitrary measures of Louis XIV. To a part of these, lands were allotted in Virginia, on James river. Others settled in Carolina, on the banks of the Santee, and in Charleston. They introduced the culture of the vine, and were among the most useful settlers of the province.

**1729.** Division of N. and S. Car. The Cape Fear colony under Governor Yeamans having migrated south, the unfruitful country which they first occupied reverted to the natives.

## CHAPTER XI.

### A French and Indian War

1. IN consequence of the English Revolution, a war ensued between England and France, which affected the American colonies of both; and is known in our annals, as "King William's war."

**1686.** King Wil- liam's war. Baron Castine. 2. The fisheries on the Atlantic coast were regarded as of prime importance; and, on this account, Acadia was highly valued. To protect it, the two French Jesuits, Vincent and Bigot, collected a village of the savage Abenakies, on the Penobscot; and the Baron de St. Castine, a bigoted French nobleman, established

7. Describe the founding of Charleston? — 8. Whom did King William send over in 1690? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER XI.—1. What war occurred in consequence of the English Revolution? — 2. Why was Acadia valued? What was done by Frenchmen to keep it from the English?

here a trading fort. In 1696, the fort, built at Pema- P'T II.  
 mid, was taken by Castine; and thus the French P'D. I.  
 claimed, as Acadia, all Maine, east of the Kennebec; and CH. XI.  
 they artfully obtained great ascendancy over the natives.

3. The tribe of Pennicook, in New Hampshire, had lost several of their number, by the treachery of the whites, who had taken and sold them into slavery. At Dover, in that state, the venerable Major Waldron, a magistrate, and a trader among the Indians, hospitably admitted two squaws to sleep by his fire. At dead of night, they let in a war party from without. They placed Major Waldron upon a long table, and then mocked him with a jeering call, to "judge Indians." Those indebted to him for goods, drew gashes on his breast, saying, "here I cross out my account." Twenty-three were killed, twenty-nine made prisoners, and the town burnt.

1689.

Penni  
cooks  
attack  
Dover.

4. Governor Frontenac, at Quebec, planned to send, through the snow, three parties. The first arrived at Schenectady, the night of the 18th of February, and, separating into small parties, they invested every house at the same moment. The people slept until their doors were broken open, and themselves dragged from their beds. Their dwellings were set on fire, and sixty of the inhabitants butchered. Twenty-seven were carried captive, and most of the small number which escaped, lost their limbs in attempting to flee naked, through a deep snow, to Albany.

Feb. 18.  
1690.  
Schenec-  
tady de-  
stroyed.

5. The second party of French and Indians, leagued for murder, were sent against the pleasant settlement at Salmon Falls, on the Piscataqua. At break of day—a day which, for fifty of their number, had no morrow, the peaceful inhabitants were waked to experience the horrors of Indian warfare, aided and directed by French ingenuity. The third party from Quebec, in like manner, destroyed the settlement at Casco Bay, in Maine.

Destruc-  
tion of  
Salmon  
Falls.  
March  
18.

2. What fort was taken by Castine? How far did the French claim in Maine?—3. What provocation did the Pennicooks receive? What shocking cruelty did they exercise?—4. What three parties were sent out? By whom? Trace, and describe the route of the first party? Describe the massacre of Schenectady?—5. Trace and describe the route of the second party? Of the third?



**P.T. II.** 6. Fear and terror were on every side. The several governors of the provinces, convened at New York. General Winthrop with a body of troops, and Sir William Phipps, with a large fleet, were sent against the French. A part of the fleet was wrecked in returning, and both expeditions failed.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. XI.**  
May 1.  
**1691.**  
Congress  
N. Y.

7. Great expenses were, by these means, incurred by Massachusetts, and the general court authorized, for the first time, the emission of paper money, or notes of credit; making them, in all payments, a legal tender.

The  
"credit  
system."

8. The Revolution in England produced a disagreeable change, in the affairs of Massachusetts. King William, refusing to restore its former Government, granted a new charter, which extended its limits, but restricted its privileges. Massachusetts now embraced, besides her former territory, and the adjacent islands, Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia; extending north to the river St. Lawrence, and west to the South Sea, excepting New Hampshire and New York.

**1692.**  
New  
charter  
of Mass.

Union in  
heart.

9. Almost the only privilege which the new charter allowed the people, was that of choosing their representatives. The king reserved to himself the right of appointing the governor, lieutenant governor, and secretary; and of repealing all laws within three years after the passage. As Plymouth, the oldest, and Massachusetts, the principal member of the New England confederacy, were now placed under a royal governor, the union was nominally at an end. But it was already firmly cemented in the hearts and habits of the people.

---

6. What measures were taken in the congress of governors? What expeditions were undertaken? — 7. What means did Massachusetts take to procure money? — 8. How did the English Revolution affect Massachusetts? What course did King William take? How did the new charter affect Massachusetts in regard to territory? What did that province now embrace? 9. How did the new charter affect the liberties of the people? What power had now the king of England? Why could not the confederacy remain as it had been? In what respects had the union become already cemented?



## EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. P'T. II  
P'D I

The Navigation Acts were passed in 1651. Point to the place of this date. The time of "Bacon's rebellion" was 1676. Show its place on the chronographer. New York was founded in 1614, and Albany in 1615. Point to the places of these dates. New Amsterdam was surrendered to the English in 1664. What is the place of this year?

In 1682, William Penn made his celebrated treaty with the Indians. Point out the place of this year. New Jersey was first settled in 1664. Point out the place of this date. Connecticut, including New Haven, obtained a liberal charter in 1662. Rhode Island had also obtained one in 1651. Point to the places of these dates. Elliot completed his translation of the Bible in 1657. Point to the place of this date. King Philip was killed and his war terminated in 1676. Point out the place of this date.

Sir Edmund Andross was made governor of New England in 1686. The charter of Connecticut was hid in the charter-oak, 1687. Point out the places of these years. The first General Assembly of New York met in 1683. Point out the place of this date.

The great patent of Carolina was granted in 1663, and the grant extended in 1667. Point out the places of these two dates. Charleston was founded in 1680. What is the place of this date? Schenectady was destroyed in 1690. Point to the place of this year? At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? What is its place on the chronographer?

The teacher can, at his option, select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.

Long. 93 West 91 from 89 Green- 87 wich. 85

MAP N<sup>o</sup> 5. 1692.

# NEW FRANCE,

exhibiting the discoveries of  
MARQUETTE, LA SALLE,  
and other  
Frenchmen.





Landing of Sir William Phipps.

## PERIOD II.

FROM

THE NEW CHARTER **1692**, OF MASSACHUSETTS.

TO

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT **1733**. OF GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

### CHAPTER I.

Sir William Phipps.—Cotton Mather.—Salem Witchcraft.—  
Schools.—Yale College.

1. THE new charter was received at Boston, May 14th, 1692. It was brought over by Sir William Phipps, who brought also his commission, as royal governor. He was nominated by the influence of his pastor, Cotton Mather, who received him with great joy. Phipps was a native of Pemaquid, in Maine. He was made apprentice to a trade; but being active and enterprising, he went to England; and, at length, acquired riches and a title, by recovering, with a diving bell, the treasures of a Spanish wreck.

P.T. II  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

May 14.  
**1692.**  
New  
charter.  
Sir Wm.  
Phipps.

2. The delusion, with respect to witchcraft, was now at its height. The first settlers brought it with them from the mother country. Laws, making witch-

Delusion  
respect-  
ing  
witch-  
craft.

CHAPTER I.—1. Where was the new charter received? By whom brought over? By whose influence was he nominated for governor?—2. What delusion existed? Give some account of this delusion?



P.T. II. craft a capital crime, existed in England, and were  
 P.D. II. early enacted in Massachusetts. In Springfield in 1645,  
 CH. I. some individuals were accused and tried, but acquitted.  
 Persons at Boston, Charlestown, Dorchester, and Cambridge, were tried, and some actually executed for the supposed offence. But it was at Salem, where this delusion produced its most fatal effects.

3. At first, it was old women only, who were suspected of having leagued with the devil, to inflict upon the persons who complained, the various torments, which they asserted, that they felt. The magistrates of the people's choice, had, with Bradstreet, their governor, previous to the arrival of Phipps, discountenanced these persecutions; but the new authorities, under the influence of Cotton Mather, pursued a course which placed the accused in situations, where "they had need to be magicians, not to be convicted of magic."

4. The unhappy persons were confronted with those who accused them, and asked, "Why do you afflict these children?" If they denied the fact, they were commanded to look upon the children, who would instantly fall into fits, and afterwards declare that they were thus troubled by the persons apprehended. On evidence no better than this, were twenty persons executed.

5. The general court, on assembling, took ground against these proceedings, and abolished the special court, by which these persons had been condemned. This court was organised by Phipps, and presided over by Stoughton, the lieutenant-governor. The public were addressed on the subject, through the press, by the independent Calef, of Boston; and the eyes of men were at length opened. Those who had been imprisoned were set free; and the memory of the transaction soon became, what it still continues to be, a source of national sorrow and humiliation.

3. Who were first accused? How was it with the people's magistrates, in respect to prosecutions for witchcraft? By whom were they upheld?—4. How did the prosecutions proceed? How many persons suffered death?—5. By what court had these persons been condemned? How was shown the power of the press to do good?

Convictions on insufficient grounds.

And by incompetent witnesses.

80 executed.

Oct. The general court against the special court.



6. Not one of the colonies enjoyed a repose so uninterrupted as Connecticut; and therefore none had, in this respect, such advantages for showing the bent of the Puritan mind, in regard to the improvement of the human race, by the right training of the young.

7. As early as 1646, the general court took the matter in hand. "To the end," say they, "that learning be not buried in the graves of our forefathers, the Lord assisting our endeavors, it is ordered, that all the townships with fifty householders, shall keep a school, and pay for the same in such way as they see fit. And further, that if any town has one hundred householders, they shall keep and maintain a grammar school, where young men can be fitted for a university."

8. New Haven had also provided by law for common schools, and in 1654, Mr. Davenport proposed the institution of a college, and the town gave lands for the object. Governor Hopkins, of Connecticut, who, for several years, was alternately with Haynes, the chief magistrate of that colony, dying in London, bequeathed, for such an institution, four or five hundred pounds. The school was located at Saybrook.

9. The clergy of Connecticut, feeling the need of a college, nearer than at Cambridge, to furnish learned men as ministers, ten of their number, obtained from the general assembly, a charter of incorporation; together with an annual grant of £120. Thus constituted as trustees, they held their first meeting at Saybrook; chose officers, and made laws for the infant university.

10. The location was inconvenient, and more money being subscribed, to fix the college at New Haven than at rival places, it was removed thither, and received at the same time, accessions,—of books for its library already begun, and in its funds. The most liberal of the donors was Elihu Yale, a native of New Haven,

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1646  
Gen. Ct  
of Conn.

50  
families

100  
families

1654  
Yale  
College.

1701.  
Charter  
and  
endow-  
ments.

1717.  
College  
removed  
to New  
Haven.

6. How was it with Connecticut in respect to education? — 7. What did the general court order in 1646? — 8. What did Mr. Davenport propose in 1654? What can you say of Governor Hopkins? Where was the school first located? — 9. What was obtained for it? By whom? Where did the ten trustees hold their first meeting? What did they do? — 10. Why was the college removed? Why placed at New Haven?

P'T. II. who had made a fortune in India. His name is preserved, in grateful remembrance, by that of the college

P'D. II.  
CH. II.

Gov.  
Fletcher's attempt.

11. Colonel Fletcher, governor of New York, was empowered to take command of the militia of Connecticut. The colony, alarmed, immediately despatched General Winthrop to England, as an agent, to remonstrate with the king and council. Colonel Fletcher however, went to Hartford, in 1693; and, in his majesty's name, demanded the surrender of the militia to his command.

1693.

Oct 26.  
Foiled by  
Captain  
Wadsworth.

12. Captain William Wadsworth, the man by whom the charter was hid, paraded his company; but as an attendant of Fletcher began to read his commission, the captain gave command to "drum;" and when Fletcher called out "silence!" the captain raised his voice higher in a second order, "drum, drum, I say." At length Fletcher gave up in despair; perhaps fearing, if he persisted, that Wadsworth would, in good earnest, fulfil his threat, and "make daylight shine through him."

## CHAPTER II.

European Politics.—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War.—Queen Anne's War soon begins.

1697.

Peace of  
Ryswick.

1. KING William's war had been feebly pursued. Settlements on Oyster river were, however, destroyed by the French and Indians, and the fort at Pemaquid, which Sir William Phipps had rebuilt by the special direction of the sovereigns, had been taken. In 1697, peace was made at Ryswick, in Germany, by which it was stipulated that all places captured during the war should be restored. Thus had the barbarous ap-

10. From whom receive its name? — 11. How was Connecticut now alarmed? What measures were taken by Fletcher?

12. What by Captain Wadsworth? What was the result?

CHAPTER II.—1. What settlements had been destroyed? What fort taken? What was done in 1697? What was stipulated?

peal to arms been to no other purpose but that of multiplying human woes. But the parties profited little by the lesson. In May, 1702, the contest began, which is known in American history, as "Queen Anne's war."

P'T. II.  
P'D. I.  
CH. II.  
**1702**

2. The eastern Indians now devastated Maine from Casco to Wells. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was surprised at midnight, February, 1704, by a party of French and Indians, under Heurtel de Rouville. The sentinel of the fort being asleep, and the snow of such a depth as to allow them to pass over the palisades, they silently entered, and scalped and murdered, or secured as prisoners, the wretched inhabitants. Only a small number escaped by flight. Forty-seven were killed, and one hundred and twenty carried captive to Canada.

**1704.**  
Deerfield  
surprised  
by  
French  
and  
Indians.

3. Early in the assault, the house of the Rev. John Williams, the minister of the place, was attacked by about twenty Indians, who, after the murder of two of his children, secured as prisoners, himself, his wife, and his remaining children. Mrs. Williams, on the second day, faltered in the march, and, according to the Indian custom, was cruelly put to death.

The  
Wil-  
liams  
family

4. Roused by these inhumanities, the veteran warrior, Benjamin Church, mounted on horseback and rode seventy miles to offer his services to Dudley, now governor of Massachusetts, in behalf of his distressed fellow citizens. He was sent with five hundred soldiers to the eastern coast of New England, to attack the enemy in their own settlements; and, ascending the Penobscot and St. Croix rivers, he destroyed several of their towns, and took a considerable number of prisoners.

**1704**  
Indian  
settle-  
ments  
destroy-  
ed.

5. In 1705, Vaudreuil, now governor of Canada, proposed to Governor Dudley, a treaty of neutrality. Arrangements were accordingly made for an exchange of prisoners; and thus a large proportion of those

**1705**  
Priso-  
ners ex-  
changed

1. What object has been answered by the war? Was war soon made again? What war?—2. What can you say of the eastern Indians? Describe the assault upon Deerfield.—3. What happened to Mr. Williams and his family?—4. Who went against the Indians?—5. What was done in 1705?



P'T. II. taken at Deerfield, were finally released. Among the  
 P'D. II. number were Mr. Williams, and some of his children.  
 CH. II. One young daughter remained, married, and raised a  
 family in the tribe which adopted her... In 1710, Port  
 1710. Royal was taken from the French, and its name, in  
 English honor of the queen, was changed to Annapolis.  
 take Port  
 Royal.

6. Queen Anne's war was closed by the treaty of  
 1713. Utrecht, by which Acadia was ceded to the English.  
 Peace of For more than ten years, this war had exposed the  
 Utrecht frontiers to continued attacks from a savage foe. Agri-  
 closes culture was necessarily neglected, a heavy public debt  
 Queen incurred, and a state of general depression ensued.  
 Anne's  
 war.

7. Some Palatines of Germany, having been reduced  
 to great indigence, by the wars in that country, went  
 1710. to England to solicit charity of Queen Anne. This  
 Palatines princess having obtained for them, grants of land in  
 settle in the province. America, about six or seven thousand arrived, during  
 the year 1710, and planted themselves in the provinces  
 of New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Carolina.  
 1714. In 1714, Queen Anne dying, George I., ascended the  
 George I. throne of England.

8. After the treaty of Utrecht, by which France  
 ceded to England, the whole of Acadia, the general  
 court of Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction to the  
 Mass. utmost bounds of the province of Maine; and, enter-  
 takes in allprising fishermen and traders, not only revived the  
 Maine. desolated villages, but on the eastern bank of the Ken-  
 nebec erected new forts, and planted new settlements  
 around them.

9. Father Rasles, a Jesuit missionary of France, had  
 for many years ministered, in a rude chapel at Nor-  
 ridgewock, on the Kennebec, among his savage con-  
 Father Raslesverts of the Abenakies. The Indians under his charge  
 war. began hostilities against the English, by burning Bruns-  
 1717, wick. The authorities of Massachusetts had ascer-  
 to tained, by getting possession of the papers of Father  
 1724.

5. What place was taken in 1710? — 6. When was Queen  
 Anne's war closed? What were some of its bad effects? — 7.  
 What persons were sent over? By whom? At what time?  
 To what place? Who succeeded Queen Anne? — 8. What  
 was the condition and prospects of Maine? — 9. Give an account  
 of Father Rasles? Where did the Indians, acting under his  
 directions, begin their warfare?



Rasles, that both he, and the governor of Canada were in the counsel of the savages, and were the instigators of their depredations. A party from New England, in August 1724, destroyed Norridgewock, and put to death the aged Jesuit. He was the last of that devoted order, who, in the wilds of America, had labored to gain at the same time, a spiritual kingdom for a heavenly Master, and a temporal one for an earthly sovereign.

10. The Indians now found, that, though instigated by the French, they were not supported by them; and their sachems, at St. John's, concluded a peace with the colonists; which, as French missions were now at an end, proved durable. English trading houses flourished, and the eastern boundary of New England remained undisputed.

P.T. II  
P.D. II  
CH. III.

Rasles  
and his  
party de  
stroyed

1726  
Aug. 6.  
Peace  
with the  
eastern  
Indians.

### CHAPTER III.

Fletcher.—Piracy.—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York.

1. GOVERNOR Sloughter, of New York, dying in 1691, Colonel Fletcher received the commission of governor. Fletcher was a good soldier, and having fortunately secured the friendship of Major Schuyler, he was, by his advice, enabled to conduct the Indian affairs of the colony, to the acceptance of the people. Episcopalians were, by the influence of the governor, settled in several parishes, and a religious order was thus introduced, which, at this day, forms so respectable a portion of the population of the state.

1692  
Colonel  
Fletcher

1693  
Introdu-  
ces Epis-  
copacy.

1698  
Bella-  
mont

2. In 1698, the earl of Bellamont, succeeded Governor Fletcher. During the late wars, the seas were

9. How did the colonists proceed? — 10. What made the Indians willing to conclude a peace? What followed this peace?

CHAPTER III.—1. Whom did Fletcher succeed? At what time? What enabled him to conduct well the Indian affairs? What was done by his influence in respect to religion? — 2. Who succeeded him?

- P.T. II.** infested with English pirates. Bellamont was particularly instructed "to put a stop to the growth of piracy.
- P.D. II.**  
**CH. III.** As no appropriation of money had been made by government, a private adventure against the pirates was agreed on, and one William Kidd, undertook the expedition, and sailed from New York. He soon turned pirate himself. After some time, he burnt his ship, and returned to the colonies. 'There is a vague tradition still existing, that he brought large quantities of money,
- 1699.** which he caused to be concealed in the earth. He was apprehended at Boston, sent to England for his trial, and there condemned and executed.
- 1702.** 3. Such disagreements arose in West Jersey, that the proprietors surrendered the right of government to the crown. Queen Anne united it with the east province; and **NEW JERSEY**, as the whole was now called, was to be ruled jointly with New York, by a royal governor, having a separate council and assembly of representatives. The queen appointed, as governor of the two provinces, the worthless lord Cornbury.
- 1708.** In 1708, she removed him and appointed Lord Lovelace.
- 1710.** 4. After a short administration, Lovelace was succeeded by Sir Robert Hunter, and he, in 1719, by Peter Schuyler, who so often acted as the mediator between the whites, and Indians. Commissioners were at this time, appointed to draw the line of partition between the provinces of New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut.
- 1719.**
- 1720.** 5. In 1720, Mr. Burnet succeeded Schuyler. He instituted measures to stop the trade between New York and Canada; and by this means displeased the merchants. A trading house was built at Oswego, which was, in 1727, converted into a fortress. Burnet was superseded in the government, by Colonel Montgomery.
- 1722.**
- 1727.**

---

2. How did he happen to employ Kid? Give an account of William Kid? -- 3. What happened in West Jersey? What was the whole now called? How was it to be governed? Whom did Queen Anne make governor? What did she do in 1708? -- 4. Who were the successors of Lovelace? -- 5. How did Governor Burnet incur the displeasure of the merchants? What did they do?

6. On his death, the command devolved on Rip Van Dam, an eminent merchant. During his administration, the French erected a fort at Crown Point, which commanded Lake Champlain, and which was within the acknowledged limits of New York....George I. died in 1727, and was succeeded by his son, George II.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IV.

Van  
Dam.  
1727  
George  
II.

## CHAPTER IV.

Pennsylvania.—Penn's second visit.—Maryland.

1. AFTER William Penn's arrival in England, he became one of the most influential persons in the kingdom. The influence, which he possessed with King James, was never used for selfish purposes; but mainly to obtain benefits for distressed Quakers, and laws in favor of general toleration.

Penn in-  
fluential  
at court.

2. When James became an exile in France, Penn was suspected, by his successor, of holding with him a treasonable correspondence; and, upon vague charges like this, he was a number of times imprisoned. In 1692, the government of Pennsylvania was taken from him; and Fletcher, of New York, appointed by the crown, to be its governor.

1692.  
Deprived  
of the  
govern-  
ment  
of Pa.

3. After strict scrutiny, the conduct of Penn was found to be irreproachable; and in 1694, he was restored to the favor of the king, and reinstated in his government: but not immediately returning to Pennsylvania, he appointed the worthy Thomas Lloyd, his deputy governor.

6. Who was Burnet's successor? What did he permit? What happened in England in 1727?

CHAPTER IV.—1. How was it with Penn after his return to England? Was William Penn a selfish man? — 2. After the English Revolution, by which James was made an exile, what happened to Penn? What became, at this time, of Pennsylvania? 3 Was Penn found guilty? What happened in 1694?



- P.T. II.** 4. In 1699, Penn visited his colony. Finding great  
**P.D. II.** complaint and disaffection respecting the government,  
**CH. V.** he granted, in 1701, a new and liberal charter. To  
**1699.** the assembly, it gave the right of originating bills; to  
 His the governor the right of rejecting laws passed by the  
 second assembly,—of appointing his own council,—and of ex-  
 visit.ercising the whole executive power. This charter was  
**1701.** accepted by the assembly; although it did not satisfy  
 Grants the discontents of the people.  
 2d-v pri-  
 vileges.  
**1703.** 5. The Territories, afterwards called **DELAWARE**, re-  
 The jected the charter altogether; and in 1703, they were  
 Territo- allowed to form a separate assembly; Penn still ap-  
 ries a pointing the same governor, over both provinces.  
 separate Having settled a government, which has given him the  
 province. glory of being one of the greatest of lawgivers, Penn  
 went to England, no more to visit his beloved province.  
 The executive authority was administered by deputy  
 governors appointed by himself.  
 6. In the year 1716, the government of Maryland,  
**1716.** which since the accession of William and Mary, had  
 Lord been held by the crown, was restored to Lord Balti-  
 Balti- more, the proprietor. It continued in his hands, and  
 more re- those of his successors, until the American Revolution.  
 instated.

## CHAPTER V.

The Huguenots.—War with the Spaniards.—Tuscaroras and  
 Yamassees.

- 1.** THE English settlers in Carolina, treated with  
 harshness and intolerance, the French Huguenots.  
**French ill treat- ed.** They, on their part, bore this ill usage, with meek-  
 ness and forbearance; so that after a few years, they  
 were admitted to the privileges of citizens... John

4. What in 1699? What in 1701? What powers were given  
 by the charter? — 5. What is said of The Territories? What  
 did Penn then do? — 6. What happened in 1716?

CHAPTER V.—1. Who were ill treated? By whom? How  
 was their ill usage borne?



Archdale, one of the proprietors, was sent, in 1695, as governor of North and South Carolina, with power to redress alleged grievances. Having restored order, he left the country the next year.

P.T. II  
P.D. II  
CH. V.

2. About this time a vessel from Madagascar, touching at Carolina, the captain presented Governor Archdale with a bag of seed rice, giving him, at the same time, instructions as to the manner of its culture. The seed was divided among several planters. From this accident arose the cultivation of this staple commodity of Carolina.

**1695.**  
Rice introduced from Africa.

3. The proprietary governor, invested with arbitrary powers, resided in the southern province, and governed the northern by his deputy. But the deputy governor, though his powers were ample, could never execute them, beyond the limits of the peoples' will.

Too much liberty in N. C.

4. On the breaking out of Queen Anne's war, an attempt was made by Governor Moore, of South Carolina, against the Spanish province of St. Augustine. The expedition was unsuccessful, and so heavy was the expense, that, to pay the debt incurred, the assembly, for the first time, resorted to the expedient of a paper currency.

**1702.**  
The first paper currency of S. C.

5. The Spaniards, aided by the French, and commanded by Le Feboure, in a fleet of five ships, next invaded Charleston. Their attack was met with such spirit, that they retired with loss.

**1706.**  
Spanish invasion repelled

6. In 1712, the Tuscaroras, and other Indians of North Carolina, formed a horrible plot for exterminating the entire white population. They entered, by surprise, the houses of the poor Palatines of Germany, who had recently settled on the Roanoke, and murdered many families. The remaining inhabitants, collecting into a camp, kept guard night and day, until aid could be received from South Carolina.

**1712**  
War with the Tuscaroras

1. What was done by the proprietors? — 2. How was the culture of rice introduced? — 3. Where did the governor of the Carolinas reside? How did his deputy succeed in governing North Carolina? — 4. What account can you give of the expedition against St. Augustine? What was done to defray the expense? — 5. Give an account of the Spanish invasion? — 6. What happened now to the northern province of Carolina?

P.T. II. 7. That colony sent to their relief, six hundred  
 P.D. II. militia, under Captain Barnwell. He penetrated the  
 CH. V. wilderness, attacked the Indians, killed three hundred,  
 and took one hundred prisoners. Those who sur-  
 They are vived, fled to the chief town of the Tuscaroras; but  
 pursued and de- here Barnwell's troops surrounded them. After  
 feated by great losses, they sued for peace. The Tuscaroras  
 Barnwell. soon after left their country, and united with the Iro-  
 quois; making the sixth nation of that confederacy.

1715.  
 War  
 with the  
 Yama-  
 sees in  
 S. C.

8. In 1715, the Yamassees, instigated a combination of all the Indians from Florida to Cape Fear against South Carolina. The warriors of the Creeks, Appalachians, Cherokees, and other tribes engaged, exceeded six thousand. The southern Indians fell suddenly on the traders settled among them, and, in a few hours, ninety persons were massacred. Some of the inhabitants fled precipitately to Charleston, and gave the alarm.

Battle of  
 Salt-  
 catchers.

The Ya-  
 massees  
 settle in  
 Florida.

9. Formidable parties were also penetrating the northern frontier, and approaching Charleston. These were repulsed by the militia, but their route was marked by devastation. Governor Craven, at the head of twelve hundred men, marched towards the southern frontier, and overtook the strongest body of the enemy, at a place called Saltcatchers, where a bloody battle was fought. The Indians were totally defeated, and driven from their territory. They were received by the Spaniards, and settled in Florida. Nearly four hundred of the Carolinians were slain in this war.

Evils of  
 proprie-  
 tary gov-  
 ernment.

10. The legislature, in the distressed condition of the colony, applied to the company for aid and protection, which was denied. For temporary relief, they next made large emissions of paper money. Directions were given, by the proprietors, to the governor, to reduce the quantity in circulation. The assembly then resolved to appropriate the lands, from which the

7. Did the southern province make exertions? What did Capt. Barnwell? What became of the Tuscaroras? — 8. What formidable combination was formed? Who were the instigators? What was their force? What was their first outbreak? 9. How did they proceed? Where were they defeated? By whom? How many Carolinians were destroyed by these Indians? — 10. What was done in the distress of the colony?

Indians had been driven; but the proprietors refused to sanction this necessary proceeding. They also encouraged their officers in oppressive measures.

P.T. II  
P.D. II  
CH. V.

11. The people were determined, no longer to submit to such tyranny. The governor, Johnson, was informed, that if he would rule under the king, he could retain his office, but not otherwise. Johnson refused, and endeavored to suppress the spirit of revolt; but it had diffused itself beyond his control; and, at last, the people elected Moore, governor of the province.

1719.  
Carolinians revolt and choose a governor

12. The colonists stated their situation by agents in England, when it was decided, that the proprietors had forfeited their charter; and that both the Carolinas should be taken under the royal protection. Nicholson, was appointed governor; and, early the following year, he arrived at Charleston, where he was received with every demonstration of joy.

The crown appoints Nicholson.

13. Peace was made between Great Britain and Spain. Treaties were held with the Cherokees and Creeks, in which boundaries were settled. Governor Nicholson encouraged literary institutions.

His good administration.

14. The revolution was completed, by an agreement between the crown and seven of the proprietors; whereby, for a valuable consideration, they surrendered their right and interest, not only in the government of these provinces, but also in the soil. North and South Carolina were, at the same time, erected into separate governments.

1729.  
N. and S. Carolina separated

10. How did the company of proprietors treat the people? — 11. What were the people now resolved on? What did they let Gov. Johnson know? What reply receive? Whom did they elect? — 12. What decision was made in England? Who was sent as governor? — 13. How did he administer the government? — 14. How was this revolution in Carolina completed?



## CHAPTER VI.

## Extension of the French Empire.—New France.

**P.T. II.** 1 **PENSACOLA** was settled by three hundred Span-  
**P.D. II.** iards from Vera Cruz. Scarcely were they established,  
**CH. VI.** when a fleet, under Le Moine d'Iberville, a Canadian  
**1699.** Frenchman, who had been distinguished as a discoverer  
 and a warrior, appeared along their coast, carrying  
 several hundred persons, mostly from Canada.

2. The company at first erected their huts on Ship  
 Island, near the entrance of Lake Borgne. After three  
 weeks, d'Iberville proceeded with forty men, entered  
 the mouth of the Mississippi, and sailed up the stream,  
 probably to Red river. On his return, he passed through  
 the bay, which bears his name, and the lakes which he  
 called Maurepas and Pontchartrain, to the bay of St.  
 Louis. On the small bay of Biloxi he erected a fort,  
 and around it his few emigrants were planted.

3. Leaving them under the command of his brother,  
 Bienville, he went to France. The climate proved  
 fatal to numbers, and in 1702, the chief fortress was  
 transferred to the western bank of the Mobile, where  
 was made the first European settlement in Alabama.

4. In 1716, Bienville went up the Mississippi, and  
 built Fort Rosalie, on the site of Natchez,—the oldest  
 European settlement of the grand valley, south of the  
 Illinois. False ideas of the wealth of Louisiana had  
 been spread in France, for purposes of land specula-  
 tion; and in 1718, three ships came over, bearing  
 eight hundred emigrants, who founded a city, and in  
 honor of the regent of France, named it New Orleans.  
 By this occupancy, as well as by discovery, France  
 laid claim to Louisiana.

**1702.** Mobile founded.  
**1716.** Natchez founded.  
**1718.** New Orleans founded.

CHAPTER VI.—1. When was Pensacola settled? What fleet soon appeared?—2. Where did the company first stop? Where did d'Iberville then go? Describe, and trace on the map, his route and return. Where were his emigrants planted?—3. With whom did he leave the command? To what place was the settlement transferred?—4. What was done in 1716? To what cause was the settlement of New Orleans owing? On what did France found her great claims?

5. The French built a fort at Niagara. A colony of one hundred was led to Detroit, as early as 1701, by De La Motte Cadillac, and another in 1712, by Anthony Crozat, who had obtained from Louis XIV., a patent for the exclusive trade of Louisiana. Since the discoveries of the Jesuits, the French had been in possession of the various western routes from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi. Chicago, Vincennes, and Kaskaskia, were, at the close of this period, growing settlements.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1713.

New  
France.

## CHAPTER VII.

Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor.

1. THE free institutions of the colonies, again alarmed the English government. Massachusetts was ever the least submissive to the royal will. A controversy between that colony and the parent state now began, which led to the war of the revolution. The main subject was a fixed salary for the royal governor, which the English sovereign directed that officer to require; but which, this colony, for a series of years, resolutely refused to pay.

1702  
Mass.  
trouble-  
some  
subject

2. Massachusetts, to defray the expenses of the war, had made such large emissions of paper money, that gold and silver were banished from the province. The paper depreciated, and the usual commercial evils ensued. The attention of the colony being directed to remedy these evils, a public bank was instituted; in which the faith of the government was pledged for the value of the notes. The profits accruing from the

Embar-  
rass-  
ments.

Public  
Bank

5. What other places were founded by the French soon after?

CHAPTER VII.—1. Which of the colonies was most prone to dispute the royal will? What did the English government instruct their governors to require? How did the colony resist this demand?—2. Give an account of the institution of a public bank.

P.T. II. bank, were to be applied for its support. Fifty thousand pounds, in bills of credit, were issued.

P.D. II.  
CH. VII. 3. The bank, however, failed of its desired effect. Governor Shute now succeeded Governor Dudley; and by his recommendation, another emission of bills of credit was made, to the amount of one hundred thousand pounds. The consequence of this was, rather to heighten, than allay the existing difficulties; as it was found, that the greater the quantity of this factitious substitute for money, the less was its value.

1706.  
Gov.  
Shute  
makes  
bad  
worse.

4. In 1728, Mr. Burnet, who had been removed from the magistracy of New York, was appointed to that of Massachusetts and New Hampshire. He was instructed by his sovereign to insist on a fixed salary. The general court resisted, and postponed a decisive answer. They voted Governor Burnet the unusual sum of one thousand seven hundred pounds; three hundred for his travelling expenses, and fourteen hundred for his salary. He accepted the appropriation for his expenses, but rejected that for his salary.

1728.  
Burnet  
made  
governor  
of Mass.  
and  
N. H.

Removes  
the court  
from  
Boston to  
Salem.

5. The people of Boston took a lively interest in the dispute, and the governor, believing that the general court were thus unduly influenced, removed them to Salem. Continuing firm to their purpose, he kept the court in session several months beyond the usual time, and refused to sign a warrant on the treasurer for the payment of the members.

1729.  
Burnet  
dies.

6. In April, 1729, after a recess of about three months, the general court again convened at Salem, but proving refractory on the subject of the salary, the governor adjourned them, and they met at Cambridge in August. Unable to make any impression, Burnet felt so severely the difficulties of his position, that he sickened with a fever, and died on the 17th of September.

7. His successor, Mr. Belcher, who arrived at Boston in August, 1730, renewed the controversy; but the

3. What was the effect of emitting so much paper money?—4. Who was made governor of Massachusetts in 1728? What was done by the governor, and the court, in reference to a fixed salary?—5. What removal did the governor make?—6. What was done respecting the salary in 1729? What effect had these troubles on the governor?



court, after two or three sessions, succeeded with him, (and by consent of the crown,) in a policy which they had vainly attempted with Burnet, that of paying him a liberal sum for present use, without binding themselves for the future.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1730.

8. In 1719, more than one hundred families emigrated from the north of Ireland, and settled in the town of Londonderry, in New Hampshire. They introduced the foot spinning-wheel, the manufacture of linen, and the culture of potatoes.

1719  
Londonderry  
settled.

9. A phenomenon, singular at the time, and not yet satisfactorily explained, alarmed the people of New England in 1719. This was the *Aurora Borealis*, first noticed in the country, on the night of the 17th of December. Its appearance, according to the writers of the day, was more calculated to excite terror than later appearances of the same kind.

Aurora  
Borealis.

10. In 1723, a fort was built on Connecticut river, in the present town of Brattleborough, under the direction of lieutenant governor Dummer, of Massachusetts, and hence it was called Fort Dummer. Around this fort was commenced the first settlement in Vermont.

1723.  
First settlement  
in Vermont.

11. About this period, a new colony was projected in England, to settle between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. This tract was within the limits of the Carolina grant, but unoccupied by European settlers. The patriotic deemed it important, that this region should be planted by a British colony, otherwise it might be seized by the Spaniards from Florida, or the French from the Mississippi. At the same time, a spirit of philanthropy was abroad in England, to notice the distresses of the poor, especially those shut up in prisons, and to provide for their relief.

Plan of a  
new  
colony.

12. Actuated by these generous motives, a number of gentlemen in England, of whom James Oglethorpe

Oglethorpe

7. How was the controversy settled?—8. What emigrants settled in New Hampshire? What did they introduce?—9. What can you say of the *Aurora Borealis* of that day?—10. When and where was the first settlement made in Vermont? 11. What new colony was projected in England? Why did the patriotic in England favor the project? What benevolent spirit was abroad?—12. Who was to be the leader of the enterprise?

**P.T. II.** was the most zealous, formed a project to settle this tract, by succ. of the suffering poor, as might be willing to seek, in the new world, the means of subsistence.

**1732.** To this company, the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha, now, in honor of the king, denominated Georgia, was granted; and, with its settlement, was completed, that of the thirteen veteran colonies, which fought the war of the revolution; and whose emblematic stars and stripes, still decorate the banner of American Independence.

**P.D. II.**  
**CH. VII.**  
Georgia  
granted.

**13.** What may be said of the colony which Oglethorpe and his company settled?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Queen Anne's war began in 1702. What is the place of this date? Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction over Maine in 1714. What is the place of this year? New York and New Jersey were ruled by one governor in 1698. Point out the place of that year. Penn granted a new charter to Pennsylvania in 1701. Point to the place of that year.

The cultivation of rice was begun in Carolina, in 1695. Point to the place of this date. Paper money was first made in South Carolina, in 1702. Show the place of this year. In 1729 North and South Carolina were erected into separate governments. Point to the place of this date. Mobile was founded by the French, in 1702, Natchez in 1706, and New Orleans in 1718. Point out the places of these dates. Vermont was first settled in 1723. Point out the place of this date.

What event terminates this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher, as before, select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer.









Oglethorpe's Council with the Indian chiefs.

## PERIOD III.

FROM

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT OF **1733,** } GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

TO

THE PEACE OF PARIS, WHICH **1763.** } CLOSES THE FRENCH WAR.

### CHAPTER I.

Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spaniards of Florida.—The Slave Trade.—War of the French with the Chickasaws.

1. OGLETHORPE prepared for the settlement of Georgia, by the assistance of a corporation, consisting of twenty-one persons, who were called "Trustees for settling and establishing the Colony of Georgia." He embarked in November, 1732, with one hundred and sixteen emigrants for America.

P.T. II.

P.D. III

CH. I.

21  
trustees.

2. Large sums of money had been subscribed, which were applied to the purchase of clothing, food, arms, agricultural utensils, and transportation for such indigent persons as should be willing to cross the Atlantic, and begin a new settlement.

Supplies  
how fur-  
nished

1. Whose assistance had Oglethorpe? At what time did he embark? With how many? — 2. For what purposes was money raised?

**P'T. II.** 3. The company arrived at Yamacraw Bluff, after-  
**P'D. III.** wards Savannah, on the first of February, 1733. Here  
**CH. I.** Oglethorpe built a fort. His next care was to have a  
**Feb. 1.** good understanding with his neighbors, the powerful  
**1733.** chiefs of the Creeks, Cherokees, Choctaws, and Chick-  
 asaws. Oglethorpe invited them to meet him in a  
 general council at Savannah. By means of an inter-  
 preter, he made them the most friendly professions,  
**Council** which they reciprocated; and these amicable disposi-  
**of chiefs.** tions passed into a solemn treaty.

4. Georgia was soon increased by five or six hun-  
 dred emigrants; but most were idle, and many vicious.  
**50 acres** In order to procure a more efficient population, eleven  
**given to** townships of 20,000 acres each, were laid out on the  
**each** Savannah, Altamaha, and Santee rivers, and divided  
**settler.** into lots of fifty acres each. One of these was to be  
 given to every actual settler.

5. This arrangement proved so attractive, that a  
 large number of emigrants soon arrived. Highlanders  
**Scotch** from Scotland, built the town of Inverness, afterwards  
**and** Darien, on the Altamaha; and Germans, a town which  
**Germans.** they called Ebenezer, on the Savannah.

6. The charter granted to the trustees of Georgia,  
 vested in them, powers of legislation for twenty-one  
**1736.** years; and they now proceeded to establish regulations  
**Civil** for the government of the province, in which the inte-  
**govern-** rests of humanity were regarded, more than those  
**ment.** of trade.

7. In 1736, Oglethorpe erected three forts, one on  
 the Savannah, at Augusta; another called Frederica, in  
 the vicinity of the Scotch settlement on the island of  
**Og.** St. Simons; and a third, named Fort William, on Cum-  
**builds** berland island. The Spaniards remonstrated, and in-  
**3 forts.** sisted on the evacuation of the country, as far as the  
 thirty-third degree of north latitude.

---

3. Where and when did the company arrive? What was first  
 done? What was Oglethorpe's next care? What powerful  
 nations sent their chiefs to the council? What was done at the  
 council? — 4. How was the settlement increased? What was  
 done to procure a more efficient population? — 5. What effect  
 had this arrangement? What town was built by Scotch High-  
 landers? What by Germans? — 6. What was done in relation  
 to government? — 7. What three forts did Oglethorpe next  
 build? What ground was taken by the Spaniards?



8. Oglethorpe about this time returned to England. P.R. II.  
He was appointed commander-in-chief of the British P.D. III.  
forces in Carolina and Georgia, and sent back with a CH. I.  
regiment of six hundred men.

9. England, having declared war, Oglethorpe twice  
invaded Florida. His second expedition proved wholly **1740**  
unsuccessful, and produced the unfortunate results of Og. is  
unsuc-  
cessful.  
an increase of the public debt, and a temporary distrust  
between the people and their general. The same year,  
Charleston, in South Carolina, was destroyed by fire. Charles-  
ton  
burned.  
To relieve the sufferers, the British parliament gener-  
ously voted £20,000.

10. In May, 1742, a fleet was sent from Havanna,  
from which, debarked a Spanish army at St. Simons. **1742**  
Oglethorpe had collected troops and posted himself at June.  
Georgia  
invaded  
by the  
Span-  
iards.  
Frederica. He was not in sufficient force openly to  
attack the enemy; but was himself attacked by a  
party of Spaniards. His troops, particularly the High-  
landers, under Captain McIntosh, fought bravely—  
repulsed, and slew two hundred of the enemy at “the  
Bloody Marsh.”

11. Oglethorpe next attempted to surprise the inva-  
ders, by marching to attack their camp in the night.  
A traitor, who discharged his gun, and then ran into  
the Spanish lines, defeated his plan. But Oglethorpe A strata-  
gem  
makes  
them  
retire.  
made the Spaniards believe, by a stratagem, that the  
soldier was sent to them by him, to advise them to  
remain. Some ships from South Carolina appearing  
in sight, the Spaniards thought they were going to fall  
into a trap; and they embarked in such haste, that their  
artillery, provisions, and military stores, fell into the  
hands of the Georgians.

12. Georgia, in its early settlement, was distin-  
guished by the peculiar humanity in which it was  
founded. Oglethorpe “sought not himself, but others;” Charac-  
ter of  
Ogle-  
thorpe

---

8. What appointment had Oglethorpe? — 9. What two expe-  
ditions did he undertake? What bad results occurred? What  
misfortune happened to Charleston? What generous act is  
recorded here? 10. Give an account of the Spanish invasion?  
Who repulsed the Spaniards? — 11. By what stratagem were  
they induced to retire? — 12. What was the conduct of Ogle-  
thorpe?

P.T. II. and, for ten years, he gave his disinterested services  
P.D. III. without claiming so much as a cottage or a farm.

WH. II. 13. The eloquent Whitfield, with the two Wesleys  
Whit- the three founders of the sect of Methodists, sympa-  
field and thized with Oglethorpe in his benevolence; and each  
the two spent some time in America, assisting him in his en-  
Wes- terprise. Whitfield founded, near Savannah, a house  
leys. for orphans. In 1752, the Trustees, wearied with a  
Trustees troublesome and profitless charge, resigned their office,  
of and Georgia became a royal province.

1732. 14. Louisiana, after having been for fourteen years  
The under a company of avaricious speculators, formed at  
Natchez Paris, reverted to the French monarch; and Bienville  
de- was appointed governor. He found the Chickasaws  
stroyed. very troublesome, as they favored the English, rather  
The than the French. The Natchez, under their influence,  
Chicka- had committed murders, for which the whites had  
aws de- wholly destroyed them. Bienville ascended the Tom-  
stroy a becbee to attack the Chickasaws. He was to be aided  
French by a French army from the Illinois. They came first,  
army. and the Chickasaws destroyed them. When Bienville  
arrived, he found the Indians more than a match for  
his force, and immediately retired down the stream.

## CHAPTER II.

Old French War.—Capture of Louisburg.—French and English claims to the Basin of the Mississippi.

1. In 1744, war was again proclaimed between England and France. Louisburg, the capital of the island of Cape Breton, had been fortified with great care and expense, and was called, from its strength, the Dunkirk of America; while, from its position, it com-

13. What eminent ministers of the gospel were with him? What change was made in 1752?—14. Under whom had Louisiana been? To whom did it revert? Whom did he appoint? Give an account of the attack upon the Chickasaws, and its result.

CHAPTER II.—1. In what year was the "Old French War"? What can you say of Louisburg?

manded the navigation of the St. Lawrence, and the fisheries of the adjoining seas. P.T. II.

2. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, now meditated an attack on this fortress. He laid open his designs to the general court of the colony, under an oath of secrecy. The plan being thought too great, too hazardous, and too expensive, it was apparently abandoned; but an honest member, who performed the family devotions at his lodgings, inadvertently discovered the secret, by praying for the divine blessing on the attempt. P.D. III.  
CH. II.  
  
A secret  
betrayed

3. The people approving the project, with which they became thus accidentally acquainted, were clamorous in its support. It was revived by the court, and after a long deliberation, the vote in its favor was carried by a single voice. Troops were immediately raised by Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, to aid those of Massachusetts. The command of these forces was given to Colonel William Pepperell, a merchant of Maine, who sailed on the 25th of March, and arrived at Casco on the 4th of April. 1745  
Forces  
com-  
manded  
by Col.  
Pepper-  
ell.

4. A British naval force, under Admiral Warren, having been applied to, joined the armament; and the whole arrived at Chapeau Rouge Bay, on the 30th of April. By a series of the most unprecedented good luck, and by almost incredible exertions, the fortress was taken, and with it the whole island of Cape Breton. From  
April 30  
to June  
16, a  
great  
feat.

5. Peace was proclaimed in 1748, and a treaty, signed at Aix la Chapelle, by commissioners from England, France, and Spain, the basis of which was the mutual restoration of all places taken during the war: and Louisburg, to the grief and mortification of the colonies, reverted to the French. Its capture, had, however, done credit to their military prowess; as it had been, by far, the most brilliant exploit of the entire war. 1748  
Peace of  
Aix la  
Chapelle.

---

2. What plan was formed by Governor Shirley? What did he in reference to it? How did the general court receive it? How did it come to the knowledge of the people? — 3. What did they think of it? What was finally done by the court? From what states was an army raised? Who commanded? — 4. What naval force joined them? What was the result of the combined effort? — 5. On what basis was peace made at Aix la Chapelle?



**P.T. II.** 6. The blood and treasure of the many, had again  
**P.D. III.** been spent without result, and peace was concluded  
**CH. II.** without a proper settlement of differences. This was  
 especially the case in regard to the American claims  
 of the contracting powers.

**Did not settle differences.** 7. The French laid claim to all the lands occupied  
 by the waters flowing into the St. Lawrence and the  
**Extent of New France, as stated by French geographers.** Lakes; and all watered by the Mississippi and its  
 branches; and, in the west, and on the north, they  
 were erecting fortresses, with an intent to unite and  
 command the whole of this vast territory.

**British claim the same territory.** 8. The British, on the other hand, asserted a right  
 to the entire country, as may be seen by their early  
 patents, to which they gave an extension from the  
 Atlantic to the Pacific. These conflicting claims, it  
 was clearly foreseen, must soon lead to another war.

**1750.** 9. A number of gentlemen, mostly in Virginia, of  
**Ohio company formed.** whom Lawrence Washington was one, procured in  
 1750, an act of the British parliament, constituting  
 them "the Ohio Company," and granting them six  
 hundred thousand acres of land, on, or near, the Ohio  
 river. They caused the tract to be surveyed, and  
 opened a trade with the Indians in the vicinity.

**Hostile measures of the French.** 10. This becoming known to the French, the gov-  
 ernor of Canada complained to the authorities of New  
 York and Pennsylvania, threatening to seize their tra-  
 ders, if they did not quit the territory. Several of  
 their number were accordingly taken, and carried to  
 the French fort at Presque Isle.

**Gov. Dinwiddie alarmed.** 11. Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia, alarmed  
 at these movements on the part of the French, had  
 sent a trader among them as a spy, who returning, in-  
 creased his fears, by vague accounts of the French  
 posts near Lake Erie, without gratifying his curiosity  
 as to the number or object of their forces.

---

6. Were these subjects of differences remaining unsettled? —  
 7. What part of America was claimed by France? What were  
 they doing to unite and command this territory? — 8. What was  
 claimed by the British? Was there any prospect of a peaceable  
 settlement of these differences? — 9. Who were the Ohio Com-  
 pany? What grant had they? What did they do in reference  
 to it? — 10. What course did the French take? — 11. Who  
 was governor of Virginia? What report was brought to him?

12. Dinwiddie determined, although the season was advanced, to send immediately a trusty person, to require the French Commandant to quit the territory; and also to bring such an account of his strength and position, that if he refused peaceably to retreat, some feasible method of ejection by force might be adopted. A young man of twenty-two, an officer of the militia, was chosen. His figure was commanding, his air inspired respect and confidence. His name was **GEORGE WASHINGTON**

P'T. II.  
P'D. III.  
CH. III.

**1752.**  
He  
selects  
Wash-  
ington  
for a dif-  
ficult  
duty.

### CHAPTER III.

George Washington—His birth, parentage, and education—His conduct in places of trust, private, and public.

1. **LAWRENCE WASHINGTON**, the grandfather of George, and Augustine Washington his father, had continued the family residence in Westmoreland county, Virginia, where his great grandfather John, already mentioned, had fixed his seat: and there he who is now regarded as the father of his country, was born on the 22d of February, 1732. In 1734, his father removed to Stafford county, opposite to Fredericksburg on the Rappahannock; little thinking that his playful boy, then but two years old, was marked by Providence for a career so elevated.

John,  
Law-  
rence,  
August-  
tine, and  
**GEORGE**  
**WASH-**  
**INGTON.**  
**1732**

2. In 1743, Augustine Washington died, and left to each of his sons valuable landed estates. To Lawrence, his eldest, he bequeathed the beautiful tract on the bank of the Potomac; and to George, the lands and mansion where he died. George was the oldest offspring of a second marriage; and his excellent mother, Mary Washington, was, by his father's will, his

**1743**  
Law-  
rence  
obtains  
Mt. Ver-  
non.

12. What plan did he adopt? Who was chosen?

CHAPTER III.—1. What was the name of George Washington's father? His grandfather? His great-grandfather? When and where was he born? How old was he when his father removed to Stafford county?—2. What occurred on the death of his father? How old was George? Who was his guardian?

P.T. II. sole guardian. It was under her maternal guidance.  
 P.D. III. and in the common school, that Washington developed  
 CH. III. those physical, intellectual, and moral elements, which  
 formed his greatness.

His early  
moral  
charac-  
ter.  
  
His  
activity.

3. When in school he was pains-taking, and exact in the performance of his exercises; and he was, at the same time, so true in his words, so righteous in his actions, and so just in his judgments, that his school-mates were wont to bring their differences before him for decision. Superior also in bodily health, and vigor, he excelled in athletic sports, and adventurous exploits. He loved the military; and tradition reports, that the first battles, in which he commanded, were the mimic engagements, which he taught to his school-fellows.

Limited  
advan-  
tages  
over-bal-  
anced by  
self-exer-  
tion.

4. He learned to read and to write well; and he thoroughly mastered arithmetic. This was all, which the school helped him to acquire. Of himself he practiced composition; and he happily formed a style suited to the lofty tone of his moral sentiments, and the directness and energy of his character. The higher mathematics he learned with pleasure and mental profit, his object being to prepare himself for the occupation of surveyor. He set carefully down in his books, his diagrams, his observations on manners, and his rules of behaviour. Nothing was too laborious, or too tedious for his determined mind.

1748. 5. To survey the great estates of Lord Fairfax, then residing in Virginia, he first began his career of active life. Though a boy of just sixteen, he was intrusted with what would have been an arduous and difficult duty, to a sound and able man. Among the forest wilds of the Alleghanies, the young surveyor fre-

---

2. What were his advantages? — 3. What was his character as a school boy? — 4. What did he learn in school? What important exercise did he practice by himself? Did he early fix upon something which he could follow, to obtain an honorable support? What did he learn, in order to prepare himself for his chosen occupation? What did he do, that he might retain, and be the wiser for what he had learned? Did he not find such labor too tedious? — 5. Was he trusted with important business when young? By whom? What business was it? Where did he practise his profession?



quently ranged alone; but on the summits he rejoiced in the beauty of the earth and sky; and in the valleys he examined well, all rare and curious things.

P.T. II  
P.D. III  
CH. III.

6. He had often no bed to lodge in, and no roof to shelter him. With his own hands he dressed the game which his musket had procured. Sometimes, however, he shared the wigwam, and the unpalatable fare of the native. But these hardships were an important preparation, for the service he had afterwards to perform. His employment also was lucrative; and he discharged its duties in a manner, that made men regard him, as a youth of extraordinary promise.

He gains property and honor.

7. He was only nineteen, when he was made adjutant general of the Virginia militia, with the rank of Major. About this time, he accompanied to the West Indies, his brother Lawrence, now declining with a pulmonary disease. His voyage was advantageous to himself, from his great observation and industry; but his brother's disease remained, and he died during the next year. By his will he left George his executor; and gave him a title to the Mount Vernon estate.

1751  
Made Adjutant with title of Major

Mount Vernon estate

8. Maj. Washington was next placed over one of the four divisions into which Dinwiddie had portioned the militia of "the Dominion" the style then given to Virginia. It was at this period, that he was chosen by the governor, as his envoy to the French. The seat of government for Virginia, was Williamsburg. Thither Washington repaired, and was furnished with a letter from Dinwiddie, to St. Pierre, the French commandant, requiring him with threats, to withdraw from the territory belonging to the English sovereign.

He sets out to cross the wilderness.  
Oct. 31.  
1753

9. Washington departed on the 31st of October, to traverse more than five hundred miles, much of the way, a pathless, as well as a wintry desert. His route

5. Through what scenes did it lead him? — 6. What hardships did he encounter? Were these on the whole to his advantage? In what way? — 7. What promotion had he at the age of nineteen? What happened in reference to his brother? — 8. What was Virginia called at that time? Into how many divisions was it portioned in regard to the military? What was Washington's public position, when Dinwiddie selected him as envoy? What was his first step after accepting the appointment? What was the purport of the governor's letter? — 9. What time in the year did Washington set out? To go how far?

P'T. II. lay through Fredericksburg, Alexandria, and Winchester, to Will's Creek, since Cumberland. Here, taking  
 P'D. III.  
 CH. III. leave of every vestige of civilization, and having procured Mr. Gist, agent of the Ohio company, as interpreter and guide, his party of eight plunged into the recesses of the wilderness.

10. They passed through snow and storms, over mountains, and then down among thickets, into flooded valleys. Coming upon the Youghiogeny they followed it to the Monongahela, and that, to its junction with the Alleghany. "The Fork," as the site of Pittsburg was called, was then a desert; but Washington noticed, and afterwards reported it, as a suitable place for a fort.

From  
 Cumberland  
 land to  
 the Fork.

11. From the Fork, he went down the river twenty miles, to Logstown, where he was to deliver friendly greetings from Dinwiddie, to the great chief of the southern Hurons, Tanacharison, or the Half-king; whose friendship was courted both by French and English. The chief asserted that the land in question, belonged neither to the English nor the French; but the Great Spirit had given it to the Indians, and allowed them to make it their residence. After a friendly council Tanacharison and three of his principal men, accompanied Washington a hundred miles, to the encampment, at French Creek.

Nov. 24.  
 At Logstown he  
 meets the  
 Half-king.

12. Here St. Pierre, who had been but a few days in command of the post, received him with the courteous bearing and hospitable attentions of the French gentleman. But to Dinwiddie's request, that he would leave the territory which belonged to the British, he replied, that it did not become him to discuss treaties; such questions should rather be addressed to the governor-general of Canada, the Marquis du Quesne; he acted under his orders, and those he should be careful to obey.

His reception  
 at the  
 French  
 camp.

13. The return of Washington in the dead of winter, was full of startling and perilous adventure. Once

---

9. Trace and describe the first part of his route? — 10. Describe his journey to the "Fork." — 11. Describe his progress and adventures, till he reached the French camp? — 12. How was he received by St. Pierre? What reply was given to the Governor's letter?

a treacherous guide, aimed his musket at him, but it missed fire; and once, on the Alleghany river, he and his guide, having made in a day, with one poor hatchet, a miserable raft, they, at sunset, trusted themselves upon it, to cross the swollen river, amidst large masses of floating ice. It came down upon them, and threw them from their raft into ten feet water. But they saved themselves by swimming to an island.

P.T. II  
P.D. III  
CH. III.

The per  
ils of  
Wash-  
ington's  
return.

Returns  
Jan. 16.  
**1754.**  
Absent  
11 weeks

14. Major Washington arrived at Williamsburg, on the 16th of January, having been absent only eleven weeks. The energy and prudence, with which he had met and overcome dangers, and the ability, which he had manifested in the discharge of his trust, sunk deep into the minds of his countrymen. His written reports were published with applause, not only through the colonies, but in England.

**1754.**  
He is  
again  
sent with  
a force

French  
build  
Fort du  
Quesne.

15. Troops were now raised in Virginia; and Washington was made lieutenant colonel, and intrusted with the command. In April, 1754, he marched into the disputed territory, and encamped at the Great Meadows. He there learned that the French had dispossessed the Virginians of a fort, which, in consequence of his recommendation, they were erecting at the Fork, and which the French finished, and named Fort du Quesne.

W. de-  
feats a  
party.  
19 killed  
22 pris-  
oners.  
May 28

16. He was also informed, that a detachment of French troops, had been sent against him, and were encamped but a few miles west of the Great Meadows. Surrounding their encampment, he surprised, and defeated them. The commander de Jumonville was killed, with ten of his party. On his return to the Great Meadows, he erected a small stockade called Fort Necessity.

French  
rein-  
forced

17. With less than four hundred men, Washington marched to dislodge the enemy from Fort du Quesne; but after proceeding thirteen miles he learned that they had been reinforced from Canada, when he retired.

13. What adventures did Washington meet with on his return?  
14. How long was he absent? What qualities had he manifested, which made a deep impression? What was thought of his written reports? — 15. Under what circumstances did he march into the same country again? Where encamp? What did he hear? — 16. Give an account of a French party, headed by de Jumonville? What did Washington build at Great Meadows?  
17. What did he set out to do? Why did he desist, and turn back?



P.T. II. Unable to continue his retreat, from a failure of ex-  
 P.D. III. pected munitions, he entrenched his little army within  
 C.H. IV. Fort Necessity. A party of fifteen hundred French,  
 1754. soon followed and assaulted the entrenchments. After  
 July 3. a brave resistance, Washington surrendered the fort,  
 receiving for the garrison, the honors of war.

## CHAPTER IV.

Congress at Albany.—Convention of governors in Virginia.  
 Braddock.

1. THE British government, in prospect of war, pro-  
 posed to their American colonies, to form a union.  
 Attempt to unite. Delegates from each of the New England provinces,  
 New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, accordingly  
 met at Albany. After deliberating, they accepted a  
 1754. plan of confederation, which was drawn up by BEN-  
 JAMIN FRANKLIN, on the 4th of July, 1754. This  
 was just twenty-two years before that great statesman  
 signed the Declaration of Independence.

2. But the plan was disliked in England, because it  
 gave too much power to the people; and in America,  
 because it gave too much power to the king. Thus  
 Plan suits neither party. was shown how widely different, even at that period,  
 were the views of the British and the Americans. It  
 was this difference of opinion, which finally led to the  
 American Revolution.

3. General Braddock was dispatched from England  
 with fifteen hundred men. On his arrival in America,  
 he requested a convention of the colonial governors  
 to assemble in Virginia, to concert with him a plan of  
 Brad- stock as- sembles the gov- ernors

17. Why did he stop at Fort Necessity? What happened at the fort?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What proposal was made by the British government? What was done in consequence? What plan did the delegates accept?—2. How was it received in England? How in America? What did this show? What did it lead to? 3. How many men were now sent over? Under whom? What did he request?

military operations. Four expeditions were here re-  
solved upon, the first, against Nova Scotia, the  
second, against Fort du Quesne, the third, against  
Crown Point, and the fourth, against Niagara.

P.T. II  
P.D. III  
CH. IV.

4. The expedition against Nova Scotia was commanded by generals Monckton and Winslow. The fleet which conveyed the troops, sailed from Boston. The army distinguished themselves by bravery and good conduct, and with the loss of only three men, put the British in full possession of Nova Scotia.

5. General Braddock commanded the expedition against Fort du Quesne. On his arrival, he engaged Washington, now a colonel, to become his aid. By his advice, Braddock, in marching his army across the wilderness, left his heavy baggage behind, under the care of Colonel Dunbar, with an escort of six hundred men; and at the head of twelve hundred select troops, he proceeded by more rapid marches, towards Fort du Quesne.

1755.  
June 10  
Brad-  
dock's  
army be-  
gin their  
march.

6. Braddock was not deficient in courage, or military skill; but he was wholly ignorant of the mode of conducting warfare in American woods; and he held the opinions of the colonial officers in contempt. Washington had, however, ventured to suggest the expediency of employing the Indians; who, under the Half-king, had offered their services, as scouting, and advanced parties. Braddock not only disdained the advice, but offended the Indians by the rudeness of his manner. Thus he rashly pushed on, without knowing the dangers near.

Brad-  
dock  
contemns  
and dis-  
regards  
advice.

7. It was noon, on the 9th of July, when from the height above the right bank of the Monongahela, Washington looked back upon the ascending army, which, ten miles from Fort du Quesne, had just crossed the stream for the second time. Every thing looked more bright and beautiful, than aught he had witnessed

July 9  
Fine ap-  
pearance  
of Brad-  
dock's  
army

3. What expeditions did this convention agree on? — 4. Give an account of that against Nova Scotia? — 5. Who commanded the second expedition? In what capacity did Washington accompany him? What measures did he take by Washington's advice? — 6. What can you say of Braddock? What wholesome advice had he, which he despised? — 7. How did Braddock's army appear to Washington, on the morning of July 9th?

P.T. II. before. The companies, in their crimson uniform  
 P.D. III. with burnished arms and floating banners, were march-  
 CH. IV. ing gaily to cheerful music, as they entered the forest.

8. Suddenly there burst upon them the Indian war-whoop, and a deadly fire, from opposite quarters, and from unseen foes. Many fell. Panic-stricken, their ranks broke, and they would have fled, but Braddock rallied them; and, a bigot to the rules of European warfare, he constantly sought to preserve a regular order of battle. Thus he kept his men, like sheep penned in a fold, fair marks for a foe, beyond their reach; and, in the only spot, where the Indians, far inferior in numbers, could have destroyed them. They lay on each side of the way, concealed in two ravines.

9. The Indians, singling out the officers, shot down every one on horseback, Washington alone excepted. He, as the sole remaining aid of the general, rode by turns over every part of the field, to carry his orders. The Indians afterwards asserted, that they had specially noticed his bearing, and conspicuous figure, and repeatedly shot at him; but at length they became convinced that he was protected by an Invisible Power, and that no bullet could harm him. After the battle was over, four balls were found lodged in his coat. Two horses had been killed under him; but the appointed guardian of his country, escaped without a wound.

10. Braddock, who had been undismayed amidst continued showers of bullets, at length received a mortal wound. Upon his fall, the regular troops fled in confusion. Washington formed, and covered their retreat with the provincials, whom Braddock, in his contempt, had kept in the rear. The defeat was total; sixty-four officers out of eighty-five, and nearly half the privates, were killed or wounded.

11. The army made no halt till it met the division

---

8. How was the scene reversed? What was Braddock's conduct? Where were the Indians concealed?—9. What is very remarkable concerning Washington during this battle?—10. What was the fate of Braddock? What was the condition of the army? What the loss?



under Dunbar, forty miles in the rear. There, Brad-dock died. The whole army continued to retreat till it reached Fort Cumberland, one hundred and twenty miles from the place of action. Colonel Dunbar, withdrew the regulars to Philadelphia, leaving the whole frontier of Virginia open to the depredations of the French and Indians.

P.T. II

P.D. III.  
CH. V.Dunbar  
in com-  
mand.

## CHAPTER V.

Remainder of the campaign of 1755.—Campaign of 1756.

1. THE troops destined for the expedition against Crown Point, amounted to more than four thousand. They arrived at Albany the last of June, under the command of General William Johnson, and General Lyman. Here they were joined by a body of Mohawks, under their sachem, Hendrick.

June,  
1755.  
Johnson  
and  
Lyman

2. Lyman advanced with the main body of the army, and erected Fort Edward, on the Hudson, for the security of the batteaux, provisions, and artillery; which were forwarded from Albany, by Johnson. Towards the last of August, Johnson removed his force, and encamped at the south end of Lake George. Here he was engaged in preparing to cross the lakes.

Erect Ft.  
Edward

3. In the mean time, the Baron Dieskau led against this force, an army from Montreal. He encountered the Americans near their camp, and was at first successful; but the fortune of the day changed. His army was defeated and fled; and himself, pale, and bleeding with mortal wounds, was found, sitting against a tree in the woods.

Baron  
Dieskau  
attacks  
and de-  
feats a  
detach-  
ment.Is defeat-  
ed by the  
main  
body.

11. Describe the retreat of the army?

CHAPTER V.—1. What was the third expedition of the campaign? How many troops? Where were they on the last of June? Under whose command? Who joined them?—2. In what direction did the two divisions of the army move?—3. Who commanded the French army? Give an account of his operations.

P.T. II. 4. Johnson, in representing this affair to the British,  
 P.D. III. made no mention of General Lyman, but obtained for  
 CH. V. himself £5,000, and a baronetcy. The public impres-  
 sion was, that the reward belonged, at least, equally to  
 Johnson's hon-  
 ors tarnish his  
 character.

5. The poor dispirited remains of Dieskau's army  
 halted at French mountain, where they were, the next  
 day, cut off by a detachment from Fort Edward. Their  
 dead bodies were thrown into a small lake, since called  
 "the Bloody Pond." May the time soon come, when  
 the pure waters of our mother earth, shall no longer  
 be dyed by the blood of her children, barbarously shed  
 by each other's hands!

6. The success at Lake George revived the spirits  
 of the colonies; but Sir William Johnson, did not fol-  
 low up his success, by proceeding to reduce Crown  
 Point; but he erected, at the scene of his exploit, on  
 the southern shore of Lake George, a fort, which he  
 called William Henry. Leaving six hundred men, to  
 garrison the forts, the remainder of the troops returned  
 to their respective colonies.

7. The enterprise against Niagara was undertaken  
 by Governor Shirley in person. He did not arrive at  
 Oswego until the 21st of August, and he there waited  
 for supplies until the season was too far advanced for  
 crossing Lake Ontario. Leaving seven hundred men,  
 under Colonel Mercer, to garrison the fort, he returned  
 to Albany, and so ended the fourth expedition.

8. By the destruction of Braddock's army, the fron-  
 tiers of Pennsylvania, and Virginia, were left to the  
 mercy of the savages. Washington, at the head of his  
 regiment, did his utmost to defend them; and he strenu-  
 ously urged that offensive measures should be again  
 adopted, and especially against Fort du Quesne, which  
 he knew was their place of gathering.

4. Who gained money and a title, but lost in character? — 5. What became of the remains of the French army? — 6. Did Sir William Johnson follow up his success? What disposition was made of the army? — 7. What happened in regard to the fourth expedition? — 8. What after these failures, was the condition of the frontier states?

## CHAPTER VI.

Campaigns of 1757 and 1758.

1. Thus in the campaign of 1756, little was done. That of 1757 is only memorable in our annals, for the dreadful massacre at Fort William Henry. Montcalm, who succeeded Dieskau, had early concentrated his forces, amounting to nine thousand regulars, Canadians and Indians, on the shores of the Champlain, at Ticonderoga. Passing up Lake George, he laid siege to Fort William Henry, which was commanded by Colonel Monroe, a British officer. General Webb was at the time, lying at Fort Edward, with the main British army, four or five thousand strong.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III  
CH. VI.

1757.  
Mont-  
calm be-  
sieged F  
Wm.  
Henry

2. Monroe, being vigorously pressed, while he defended himself with spirit, earnestly entreated General Webb for aid. But he entreated in vain, and necessity compelled him, on the 2d of August, to surrender. By the articles of capitulation, Montcalm engaged that the English should be allowed to leave the fort with the honors of war; and, in order to protect them from the Indians, that an escort should be provided to conduct them to Fort Edward.

Aug. 2.  
Monroe  
capitu-  
lates.

3. But the Indians who served for plunder, attacked the British in the camp; and the French commander either could not, or would not, protect them. They rushed forth, and were pursued. They threw all their money and clothes to the Indians. Not satisfied, the savages pursued them, naked and flying, with tomahawk and scalping knife. A few reached the camp of Webb, and some were found bleeding in the woods. But of these, many in their agony, had lost their reason.

Aug. 3,  
The mas-  
sacre.

CHAPTER VI.—1. For what is the campaign of 1757 memorable? Give an account of Montcalm, and his army. What was the condition of the British forces, and who were commanders? 2. What was the situation and conduct of Monroe? What of Webb? What was stipulated by Montcalm?—3. Did he keep his engagement? Mention some of the circumstances of the massacre.



P'T II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

The  
elder  
Wm.  
Pitt.

4. The manner in which the war had been conducted, dissatisfied the people both of England and America; and brought forward as prime minister, the greatest statesman of the British annals, WILLIAM PITT, afterwards Earl of Chatham. So powerful was his eloquence and so austere his patriotism, that he controlled at length, the energies of the government, and the spirit of the people.

1758.  
Pitt calls  
on the  
colonies.

An army  
of 50,000  
in Ame-  
rica.

5. In a circular letter, which he addressed to the governors of the provinces, he promised them, that an effectual force should be sent against the French, and he exhorted them to use their utmost exertions to raise men in their respective colonies. Animated by this call, the colonists renewed their efforts, and increased their army to twenty thousand. A large force was also sent from England; so that there was now on foot, an army far greater than had ever before existed in America. These troops, amounting in all, to fifty thousand men, were in readiness for action early in the spring. Three expeditions were resolved on, against Louisburg, Crown Point, and Fort du Quesne.

July 26.  
Louis-  
burg sur-  
renders.

6,000  
prisoners  
sent  
across  
the At-  
lantic.

6. A regular siege, the best conducted of any which had ever been laid in America, placed, on the 26th of July, the fortress of Louisburg, again in the hands of the British. It was by gallant conduct during this siege, that JAMES WOLFE began his career of military renown. With Louisburg, the whole island of Cape Breton, and that of St. John's, fell under the power of the British.

July 6.  
Aber-  
crombie  
proceeds  
against  
Tico.

7. General Abercrombie, at the head of sixteen thousand men, proceeded against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. He crossed Lake George, and debarking at its northern extremity, he attempted, with unskillful guides, to pass the three miles of dense woods, which lay between his army and Ticonderoga. As he approached that fort, a detachment of the French fell

---

4. What was the state of the public mind in regard to the war? What statesman was brought forward? What was his character? — 5. What circular did he send to America? What was done in consequence? What was the number of the army? What expeditions were resolved on? — 6. How did the attack on Louisburg succeed? What can you say of James Wolfe? 7. Describe the movements of General Abercrombie.

upon him, and an engagement ensued, in which the assailants lost three hundred men, and among others, the amiable Lord Howe.

PT II  
P.D. III  
CH. VI.

8. Abercrombie, learning that reinforcements were daily expected by the French, without waiting for his artillery, made a brave but imprudent assault upon the fort, and was repulsed with the heavy loss of nearly two thousand, killed and wounded. He then retired to his former quarters, on the south side of Lake George.

The British lose 2,000.

9. Here he consented, at the solicitation of Colonel Bradstreet, to detach him with three thousand men, against Fort Frontenac. With these troops, who were mostly provincials, he marched to Oswego, embarked on Lake Ontario, and landed on the 25th of August, within a mile of the fort, and in two days forced the important fortress of Frontenac, to surrender. As this fort, afterwards named Kingston, contained the military stores which were intended for the Indians, and for the supply of the south-western troops, its destruction contributed to the success of the expedition against Fort du Quesne.

Aug. 27,  
Colonel  
Brad-  
street  
takes Ft.  
Fronte-  
nac.

10. To General Forbes, with eight thousand men, was assigned the capture of Fort du Quesne. He committed a great error. Against the expostulations and entreaties of Washington, he made a new road by Raystown, instead of taking that already made by Cumberland. The consequence of this was, that it was so late before the army arrived near du Quesne, that the men suffered incredible hardships. The fort was, however, reached, and found deserted. General Forbes died, on his return, in consequence of fatigue and exposure. The fort was repaired, and named Fort Pitt. The neighboring Indians were now glad to make peace.

General  
Forbes  
makes a  
new road  
by Ray's  
town.

Ft. du  
Quesne  
named  
Ft. Pitt

7. What was the fate of Lord Howe? — 8. What was the result of Abercrombie's operations? — 9. What detachment was sent out? Trace and describe Bradstreet's route. What did he effect? — 10. What army had General Forbes? What was his destination? What error did he commit? What was the consequence? What can you say respecting the fort? What respecting General Forbes? What of the Indians?

## CHAPTER VII.

## The Campaign of 1759.

PIT II.

P.D. III.

CH. VII.

1759.

Pitt's  
plan em-  
braces  
three  
objects.

1. THE successes of the preceding campaign emboldened Mr. Pitt, to form for this, the great design of dispossessing the French of their American territory. The campaign of 1759, had for its object, nothing less than the entire reduction of Canada. The army was divided into three parts. The first division, under Wolfe, was to make a direct attempt upon Quebec. The second, under Amherst, was ordered to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then proceed north-erly; and the third, under Prideaux, consisting of provincials and Indians, was to reduce Niagara, then to go down the St. Lawrence, and, with the second detachment, conquer Montreal; then join, and aid Wolfe, at Quebec.

July 6.  
Prideaux  
killed in  
besieging  
Niagara.

2. Prideaux besieged Niagara on the 6th of July. He was killed by the bursting of a shell, and the command devolved upon Sir William Johnson, who took the fort with six hundred prisoners. All communication between the northern and southern possessions of the French was thus barred, and the quiet behaviour of the Indians secured.

Pitt  
sustains  
Wolfe.

Provides  
him a  
choice  
army.

June.  
He lands  
on the  
Isle of  
Orleans.

3. Pitt had discerned the extraordinary qualities of Wolfe, while he was yet obscure; and to him he now confided the command against Quebec. His subordinate officers were carefully chosen. He was provided with a choice army of eight thousand men, and a heavy train of artillery.

4. His army debarked, late in June, upon the Island of Orleans. Here Wolfe reconnoitered the position of his enemy, and saw the difficulties which surround-

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What bold design had Mr. Pitt formed? How was the army divided, and what was each division expected to do? — 2. What was the fate of General Prideaux? Who effected his part of the great plan? — 3. What preparations did Pitt make to ensure Wolfe's success? — 4. Where did Wolfe's army debark?



ed him. Quebec rose before him, upon the north side of the St. Lawrence. Its upper town and strong fortifications, were situated on a rock, whose bold and steep front continued far westward, parallel with the river, and presented a wall, which it seemed impossible to scale.

P'T. II.  
P'D. III  
CH. VII.

5. From the north-west came down the river St. Charles—entering the St. Lawrence just below the town, its banks high and uneven, and cut by deep ravines. Armed vessels were borne upon its waters, and floating batteries obstructed its entrance. A few miles below, the Montmorenci leapt down its cataract into the St. Lawrence. Strongly posted along the sloping bank of that majestic river, and between its two tributaries, the French army, commanded by Montcalm, displayed its formidable lines.

Difficulties of his position.

6. Wolfe took possession of Point Levi, erected and opened heavy batteries, which swept the lower town; but the fortifications of Quebec remained uninjured.

July 9.

7. The English general next landed his army below the Montmorenci; but Montcalm would not leave his entrenchments. Wolfe then crossed that stream, and attacked him in his camp. But he was obliged to retire, with the loss of four hundred of his men. He then recrossed the Montmorenci.

He attacks Montcalm near Montmorenci.

8. Here he was informed that his expected succors were likely to fail. Amherst had found Ticonderoga and Crown Point vacated, and was preparing to attack the French forces, on the Isle aux Noix. Prideaux having lost his life, his plans were carried out by Sir William Johnson. But the enemy were in full force at Montreal; and from neither division of the British army, could the commander at Quebec, now hope for any assistance.

French at Montreal stop his succors.

9. Wolfe was severely tried. His mind was unbroken, but his bodily health, for a time, failed.

---

4. What was the appearance of Quebec from this place? — 5. Where was the French army posted? — 6. From what place did Wolfe open batteries upon Quebec? With what effect? — 7. Where did Wolfe attack Montcalm? What was he forced to do? — 8. What intelligence did he now obtain? — 9. How did it affect him?

P.T. II. When, however, he was again able to mingle with the  
 P.D. III. army, every eye was raised to him with affection and  
 CH. VII. hope; and he formed yet another, and a bolder plan.

1759. 10. Pursuant to this, Wolfe broke up his camp at  
 Sept. He re- Montmorenci, and returned to Orleans. Then em-  
 turns to barking with his army, he sailed up the river several  
 Orleans. miles higher than his intended point of debarkation.  
 By this movement he deceived his enemy, and gained  
 the advantage of the current and tide, to float his  
 boats silently down to the foot of the rock, which he  
 intended to scale.

11. Wolfe was the first man who leaped on shore.  
 He gains The rapidity of the stream was hurrying along their  
 the plains boats, and some had already gone beyond the narrow  
 of Abra- landing-place. The shore was so shelving, that it was  
 ham, almost impossible to ascend; and it was lined with  
 Sept. 13. French sentinels.

12. Escaping these dangers at the water's edge, they  
 Battle proceeded to scale the precipice. The first party who  
 of the reached the heights, secured a small battery, which  
 Heights crowned them; and thus the remainder of the army  
 of Abra- ascended in safety; and there, on this lofty plain,  
 ham. which commands one of the most magnificent pros-  
 pects which nature has formed, the British army  
 drawn up in a highly advantageous position, were, in  
 the morning, discovered by the French.

13. Montcalm, learning with surprise and deep re-  
 gret, the advantage gained by his opponent, left his  
 strong position, crossed the St. Charles, and intrepidly  
 led on the attack. Being on the left of the French,  
 he was opposed to Wolfe, who was on the right of  
 the British. In the heat of the engagement both com-  
 manders were mortally wounded.

14. The wound, with which Wolfe fell, was the  
 third, which he had received in the battle. He was  
 removed from the field; but he watched it with intense  
 anxiety, as faint with the loss of blood, he reclined  
 his languid head upon the supporting arm of an officer.

---

10. What were his first movements in reference to his new  
 plan? — 11. Who was first on shore? What difficulties were  
 there met? — 12. What others occurred in scaling the heights?  
 13. What were the arrangements of Montcalm?

A cry was heard, "they fly, they fly!" "Who fly?" he exclaimed. "The enemy," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die content;" and expired. Not less heroic was the death of Montcalm. He rejoiced, when told that his wound was mortal; "For," said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

P'T. II.  
P'D. III.  
CH. VII.

Death of  
Montcalm.

15. After the battle, the affairs of the English were conducted with great discretion by General Townshend; whereas, the French, appear to have yielded at once to their panic. The capitulation of Quebec was signed September 18th 1759, five days after the battle.

**1759.**  
Sept. 18  
Quebec  
surrend-  
ers.

16. General Townshend returning to England, General Murray was left in command with a garrison of 5,000 men. The French army retired to Montreal; and M. de Levi, who had succeeded Montcalm, being, in the course of the winter, reinforced by Canadians and Indians, returned the following spring, with a force of 6,000 to Quebec. General Murray left the fortress, and the Heights of Abraham became the scene of another battle more bloody, though not equally important in its consequences with the first.

**1760**  
French  
attempt  
to regain  
Quebec.

17. The armies on each side sustained the loss of 1,000 men. The battle was not decisive, but the advantage was on the side of the French, who maintained their ground while the English retired within the fortress. Here they were closely invested until they received reinforcements, when M. de Levi, abandoning all thoughts of obtaining possession of Quebec, returned to Montreal, where Vaudreuil, the governor, assembled all the force of Canada.

2d, battle  
of the  
Heights  
of Abra-  
ham

18. In the mean time, General Amherst had made arrangements for assembling before this place all the British forces, from Lake Ontario, Lake Champlain, and Quebec. Here they fortunately arrived within two days of each other, and immediately invested the

Sep. 8  
Canada  
surren-  
ders.

11. How was it with Wolfe, when he was told of the flight of his enemy? How was it at the same time with Montcalm?—15. Did the French give up Quebec immediately after the battle?—16. What was the position of the contending armies during the winter?—What was done in the spring?—17. What was the loss in the second battle of the Heights of Abraham?—What military operations followed it?—18. How and when did the capture of Montreal take place?



P.T. II. place. Vandreuil found the force too strong to be re-  
 P.D. III. sisted and on the 8th of September, he surrendered  
 CH VIII. Montreal, Detroit, Mackinaw and all the French  
 possessions in Canada.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Wars with the Indians.

**1760.** 1. THE French had stirred up the Cherokees to war. Colonel Montgomery, at the head of an army, went to their country to chastise them. He was at first successful; but the Indians afterwards attacked him in a thicket near Etchoc, and so cut up his army, that he was obliged to return. The next year, an army under Colonel Grant, fought and conquered the Cherokees on the same spot. He pursued them to Etchoc, burned their huts and laid waste their country. The Indians, thus put in fear, ceased their midnight fires and murders, and made peace.

Chero-  
kees in  
arms.

Mont-  
gomery  
defeated.

Grant  
burns  
their  
towns.

English  
less  
popular  
with the  
Indians  
than the  
French.

2. Interesting events, closely connected with the cession of the French territory, were already in progress among the savages of the north-west. The missionaries, and traders of that nation had wisely won the hearts of the Indians. Said one of their orators, "when the French arrived, they came and kissed us. They called us their children, and we found them fathers." When the more haughty, and less attentive English were preparing to take possession of the western ports, Pontiac, the highly gifted chief of the Ottawas, who sought, like Philip, to regain the primitive independence of his race, made use of the attachment of the red men to the French, to unite them in a general conspiracy against their conquerors.

18. What other posts were surrendered?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of the war with the Cherokees.—2. What difference did the Indians find between the manners of the French and the English? Who was Pontiac?

3. Pontiac thought, that as the English had expelled the French, if the Indians could exterminate them before they were fully established, they would again be lords of the forest. The plan of Pontiac was not inferior in boldness, to that formed by Pitt for the final conquest of Canada. It was no less than a simultaneous attack upon all the British posts near the lakes. Pontiac, by his inventive genius, his eloquence, and his energy, had acquired such power over the north-western tribes, that all was arranged without discovery. On the 7th of July, 1763, nine of the British forts were actually surprised and captured by the Indians.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

**1762.**  
Pontiac contrives a daring scheme

**1763.**  
July 7.  
Nine of the British posts captured.

4. Maumee and Mackinaw were among the places, which were thus taken, and the garrisons surprised and slaughtered. Detroit was attempted, but the stratagem of Pontiac was there betrayed, by a compassionate squaw. But for some time, he held the place in siege. His allies, however, grew weary of the war, and peace was concluded.

Pontiac's stratagem fails at Detroit.

5. During this period, pious Moravians having been expelled from Germany, came over to America, with the design of devoting themselves to the conversion of the native Indians. Their principal seat was in Pennsylvania. Their most important villages, were Bethlehem, and Nazareth. Their missionaries, male and female, went forth to the western part of Connecticut, to central New York, and through Pennsylvania, to Ohio. They lived among the savages, calling them their brethren and sisters. Thus they won their confidence, and several hundreds of them, manifested the transforming power of the gospel, by the change of their barbarous dispositions and practices, for such as were pious, kind, and gentle.

**1746.**  
The Moravians among the most faithful of missionaries

6. George III. succeeded to the throne of England

---

3. What were his views? What his plan of operation? How far did he succeed?—4. What two places are mentioned, which were taken by surprise? Where was Pontiac's plan revealed, by the compassion of a woman?—5. What was the object of the Moravians, in coming to this country? Where was their principal seat? Their villages? Where did their missionaries go? How did they treat the natives? How was it with those Indians who received the gospel?

P.T. II. soon after the capture of Quebec; and Mr. Pitt, resigning in October, 1761, the earl of Bute was the following year made prime minister. The first object of the new administration was to restore peace. Scarcely was this accomplished, when Lord Bute resigned his place, which was given to Mr. George Grenville.

October,  
1761.  
Pitt  
resigns.

Lord  
Bute.

1763.  
Peace of  
Paris.

7. The definitive treaty was signed at Paris, in February, 1763, by which England obtained from France all her possessions in America, east of the Mississippi, excepting the island of New Orleans; the navigation of that river being left open to both nations. From Spain she obtained Florida, in exchange for Havana, which had been captured during the war. France, at the same time, gave to Spain the territory of Louisiana.

---

6. Who became king of England? What can you say of Mr. Pitt? Who succeeded him? Who next was prime minister? — 7. When was the treaty of peace signed? What did England obtain from France? What from Spain? Which party received Louisiana?

---

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

Georgia was invaded by the Spaniards in 1742. Point out the place of this date. The Ohio Company was formed in 1750. Point to the place of this date. Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington on an embassy to the French commandant in 1753. Point out the place of this year. Braddock was defeated in 1755. Show the place of this year.

In 1757 occurred the massacre at Fort William Henry. Point out the place of that date. In 1758, Louisburg, Fort Frontinac, and Fort Du Quesne, were taken from the French. Point out the place of that year. General Wolf took Quebec in 1759, and Canada surrendered in 1760. Point out the places of these dates. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher, after giving these exercises, go back into former periods, giving dates, and requiring the pupils to locate them.



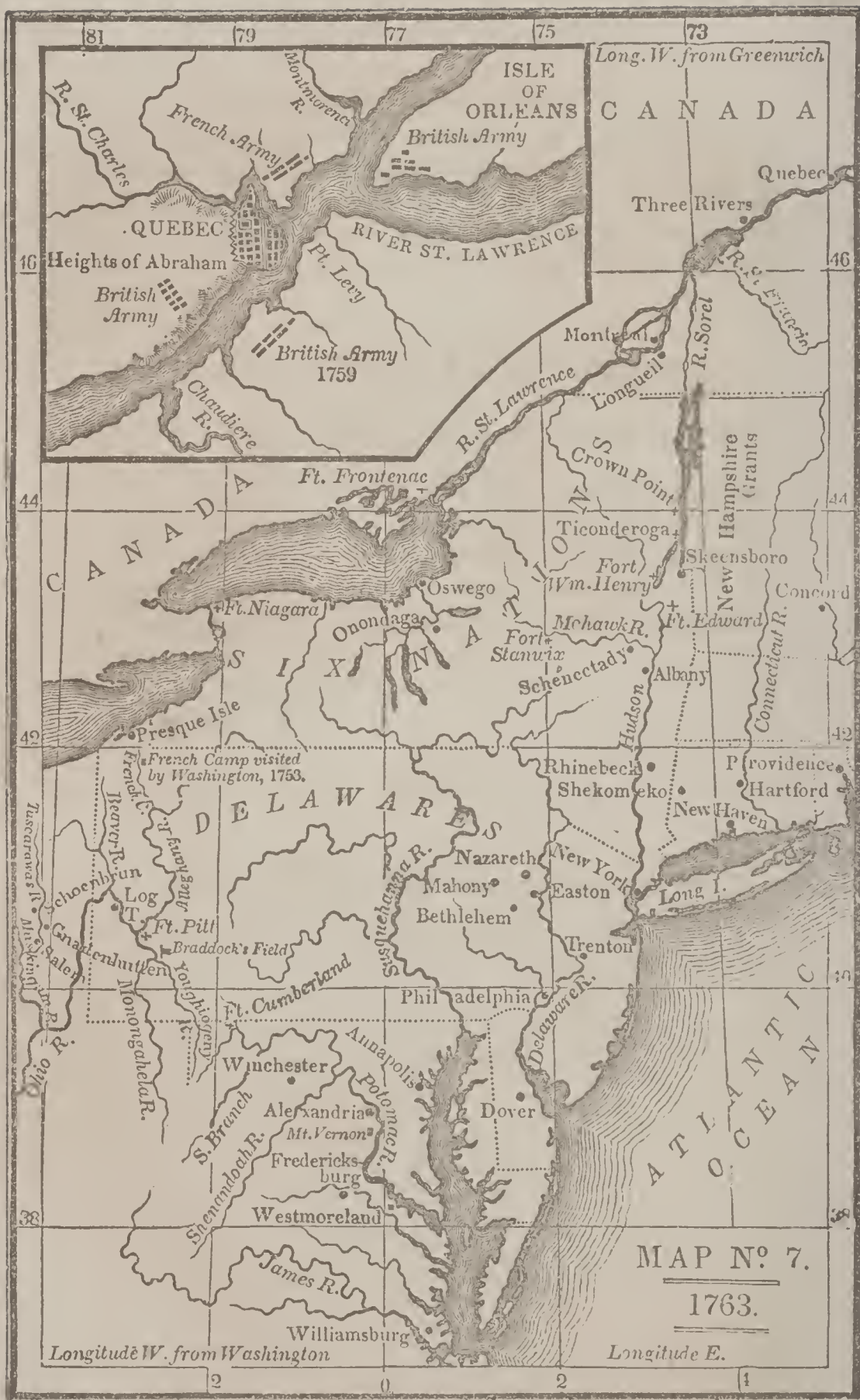
ON account of the liability of young persons to become confused in the history of wars, concerning the side to which officers mentioned belong, we shall, in the principal wars, viz., the French, the Revolutionary, and the War, of 1812, give separate lists of the most distinguished officers of each belligerent.

## FRENCH WAR, FROM 1754 TO 1763.\*

<i>American Officers.</i>	<i>British Officers</i>	<i>French Officers.</i>
GEORGE WASH- INGTON.	BRADDOCK, Monckton,	MARQUIS DU QUESNE,
Winslow,	Dunbar,	St. Pierre,
Sir William John- son,†	Monroe, WOLFE,	De Jumonville,
LYMAN,	ABERCROMBIE	DIESKAU,
Shirley,	Lord HOWE,	MONTCALM,
Mercer,	AMHERST,	De Levi,
Bradstreet,	Prideaux,	Vaudreuil.
Forbes.	TOWNSEND, Murray.	

\* The British and Americans were in this war united, and both against the French.

† Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland, but came to America in early life.



# PART III.

FROM 1763 TO 1789.



Death of General Wolfe.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE PEACE { 1763, } OF PARIS,  
TO  
THE DECLARATION { 1776. } OF INDEPENDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.

Causes of the Revolutionary War.

1. WE come now to trace the causes by which England lost her colonies, and America gained her independence. We should always remember that there is a GREAT FIRST CAUSE,—even God, our Creator and Ruler. We should observe with thankfulness, by what steps, He led our forefathers, and how He made them a way across the deep, and gave them a place, wherein to plant a great nation. In His providence, the time was approaching, when the bonds were to be severed, which bound this country to the parent land.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I  
CH. I.  
The  
Great  
First  
Cause.

CHAPTER I.—1. In tracing the causes of things, what should we always remember? What should we observe with thankfulness? What in reference to the Great First Cause, can we say of the separation of our country from England?



P.T. III. 2. But the First Cause, uses, as His agents, the  
 P.D. I. opinions and wills of men, which guide their conduct.  
 CH. I. The men in Great Britain, who took at this time, the  
 Second lead in the government, had haughty and wrong no-  
 causes. tions, of the power, which England had a right to exer-  
 cise over her distant colonies. They forgot, that the  
 American people were children of the same forefathers  
 with themselves, and heirs of the same political rights  
 Pride They held the Americans in comparative contempt, as  
 and fool- those whose labors and money, must, if *they* demanded,  
 ishness be given to them; without, or against their owner's  
 on one consent.  
 side.

3. Had the rulers in England, undertaken to oppress  
 the people there in the same manner, *they* would have  
 rebelled; much more the Americans. They, as we  
 have seen, had grown up in their new countries, with  
 a deep sense of the rights of the people. Toil and  
 danger had made them strong and brave. When they  
 saw that the rulers in Great Britain, had determined on  
 making them submit to their unrighteous will, they  
 became alarmed. They resolved, that they would first  
 endeavor, by petitions, to bring them to a better mind.  
 If after that, they persisted in their oppressions, they  
 would refuse to submit; and if force was employed  
 against them, repel it by force; trusting, that a righteous  
 God, would aid their cause.

4. During the French war, the English wanted the  
 services of the Americans; and, besides, those were  
 in power, who opposed the high government party.  
 But the war was no sooner at an end, than this party  
 took the lead, with Lord Grenville at its head.

1764. 5. In 1764, Lord Grenville gave notice to the Ameri-  
 Proposes can agents in London, that it was his intention to draw  
 the a revenue from the colonies, and that he should, in the  
 stampact ensuing session of parliament, propose a duty on stamps

---

2. What does the First Cause use as his agents, or as second causes? What opinions were held by the leading men in Great Britain? What did they forget? What did they hold concerning the Americans? — 3. Of what had the Americans a deep sense? What had made them strong and brave? When did they become alarmed? What did they resolve? — 4. Why did the British oppress the Americans less, during the French war? What happened as soon as it was ended? — 5. What notice was given by Lord Grenville?

6. The colonial agents in London informed their respective colonies of the intended system of taxation. Massachusetts instructed her agents, to deny the right of parliament to impose taxes upon those, who were not represented in the house of commons. The house of burgesses of Virginia appointed a committee to prepare an address to the king and parliament. The assembly of New York also sent petitions, which, in a spirit more bold and decided, than those from any other colony, asserted their own rights, and the limitations of British power.

P.T. III  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

Mass.,  
Va., and  
N. Y.  
take bold  
ground

7. Associations were formed in all the colonies to encourage home manufactures, and prohibit, as much as possible, the use of British goods. The tendency of this judicious measure, was to make the colonists less dependent, and, by operating injuriously on the British merchants, to make them a party against the ministry.

Societies  
injure  
the Brit-  
ish trade.

8. Notwithstanding the opposition, which, in truth, was not unexpected, Lord Grenville, introduced into the British parliament, his plan for taxing America, to commence with duties on stamps. In the house of commons, the project, though ably supported, met with ardent and animated opposition.

1765  
Stamp  
Act  
opposed.

9. "Children planted by your care!" exclaimed Colonel Barre, in answer to one who spoke against the Americans. "No! Your oppressions planted them in America! They fled from your tyranny to an uncultivated land, where they were exposed to all the hardships to which human nature is liable.

Colonel  
Barre's  
defense  
of the  
Ameri-  
cans.

10. They nourished by your indulgence! No! They grew by your neglect! When you began to care about them, that care was exercised in sending persons to rule over them, whose character and conduct has caused the blood of these sons of liberty to recoil within them. They protected by your arms! They have nobly taken up arms in your defense!

Recounts  
their ser-  
vices and  
suffer-  
ings.

---

6. What was done by Massachusetts, on being informed of the intention of Lord Grenville? What by Virginia? What by New York?—7. What were formed? What was the tendency of the measure?—8. How, in the first place, was Lord Grenville's project received?—9. Repeat a part of Col. Barre's speech.—10. Relate the succeeding part.

P.T. III. The people of America are loyal, but a people jealous of their liberties, and they will vindicate them."

P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1765

March  
22.  
Stamp  
Act  
passed.

11. Neither the eloquence of Colonel Barre and others, nor the remonstrances of the colonists, could prevent the passage of the stamp act. Of three hundred, who voted in the house of commons, only fifty were against it; in the house of lords there was not a single dissenting voice; and the royal assent was readily obtained.

All law  
papers  
must be  
stamped.

12. By this act, no written instrument could be legal, unless the paper was stamped on which it was drawn; and this stamped paper was to be purchased, at an exorbitant price, of the agents of the British government.

Courts of  
admi-  
ralty.

Trial by  
Jury sus-  
pended.

13. Provision was made for the recovery of penalties for the breach of this act, as of all others relating to trade and revenue, in any admiralty, or king's marine court, throughout the colonies. These courts proceeded in trials, without the intervention of a jury. This act, suspending trial by jury, and making the colonists liable to be called to trial, for real or supposed offences, to distant provinces, was highly displeasing to the Americans.

Act for  
quar-  
tering  
troops.

14. Anticipating opposition to these measures, parliament passed laws for sending troops to America, and obliging the inhabitants of those colonies to which they should be sent, to furnish them with quarters, and all necessary supplies.

Patrick  
Henry's  
resolu-  
tions.

15. Great was the grief and indignation caused in America by the news of the stamp-act. The Virginia legislature, called the house of burgesses, was in session. The eloquent PATRICK HENRY introduced the five celebrated resolutions, which constituted the first public opposition to the odious act. The last of these declared in

---

11. Did the Stamp Act pass? At what time? With what majority? — 12. What was this stamped paper to be used for? Of whom was it to be bought? At what kind of price? — 13. If the law was violated, before what courts were offenders to be tried? How did these courts proceed in trials? Why were these laws offensive to the people? — 14. What other act offensive to them was passed? — 15. What legislature was in session when news of the Stamp Act arrived? What was the first public opposition to the Stamp Act?



express terms that they were not bound to obey any law imposing taxes, unless made by their representatives.

P.T. III  
P.D. I.  
CH. II

## CHAPTER II.

Congress at New York.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.

1. BEFORE the proceedings in Virginia had become known in Massachusetts, the general court of that colony had assembled, and adopted measures to produce a combined opposition to the oppressive measures of parliament. Letters were addressed to the assemblies of the other colonies, proposing that a congress, composed of deputies from each, should meet to consult on their common interest. Delegates were accordingly elected from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina.

Delegates  
from  
nine  
colonies.

2. On the first Tuesday in October, the delegates met at New York. They drew up a declaration, in which they asserted that the colonists were entitled to all the rights and privileges of natural born subjects of Great Britain; especially of an exclusive right to tax themselves, and the privilege of trial by jury; and that the late acts of parliament had a manifest tendency to subvert these rights and liberties. The congress then prepared petitions to the king, and to both houses of parliament.

1765  
Oct. 7.  
First  
continental  
congress.

Petition  
to the  
king and  
parliament

3. As the day approached on which the stamp act was to take effect, the popular feeling against it increased. This law was so framed, that the evil intended as a penalty for disobedience, was no less than the suspension of the whole machinery of the social order,

Odious  
features  
of the  
stamp  
act

CHAPTER II.—1. What was proposed in the legislature of Massachusetts? What letters sent? What colonies elected delegates?—2. When and where did the first continental congress meet? What account can you give of the “Bill of Rights,” or the declaration drawn up? What petitions did the congress prepare?—3. What evils did the British intend to bring upon the country, if the people refused to buy the stamped paper?

P'T. III. and the creation of a state of anarchy. Neither trade  
 P'D. I. nor navigation could proceed; no contract could be  
 CH. II. legally made; no process against an offender could be  
 instituted; no apprentice could be indented; no stu-  
 dent could receive a diploma, nor even could the es-  
 tates of the dead be legally settled, until the stamp  
 duty was paid.

4. Measures were taken to make the situation of all  
 concerned in its collection, so unpleasant, that no one  
 might be found hardy enough to engage as an officer.  
 At Boston, the populace broke the windows, and de-  
 stroyed the furniture of Andrew Oliver, the proposed  
 distributor of stamps, who then formally pledged him-  
 self to have no concern in the execution of the ob-  
 noxious statute. In New Haven, Mr. Ingersoll, was  
 obliged to declare the same resolution, not to become  
 a distributor. Similar scenes occurred in other places.  
 Governor Hutchinson, of Boston, suffered heavy losses  
 by the violence of the mob.

August  
 Imposs-  
 ble for  
 any offi-  
 cer to  
 distri-  
 bute  
 stamps.

5. The first of November, the day on which the  
 act was to take effect, was ushered in by the tolling of  
 bells, as for a funeral procession, and signs of mourn-  
 ing and sorrow appeared in all the colonies. The  
 proceedings of the courts of justice were suspended,  
 in order that no stamps might be used; and those en-  
 gaged in disputes were earnestly and effectually ex-  
 horted, by the leading men, to terminate them by  
 reference.

A me-  
 thod to  
 prevent  
 their use.

6. The authorities in England, were, however, at a  
 loss how to proceed; for they saw that measures must  
 be taken, either to repeal the obnoxious statute, or  
 oblige the Americans to submit to it, by force of arms.  
 In January, 1766, the petitions of congress, were laid  
 before the house of commons. After their examina-  
 tion, a resolution was introduced by General Conway,  
 now in the ministry declaring that parliament "had  
 full power to bind the colonies, and people of America

1766.  
 January  
 Parlia-  
 ment's  
 declara-  
 tion.

4. What measures were taken to prevent the law from going  
 into operation? — 5. How was the day observed on which it was  
 to take effect? What was done in respect to courts and dis-  
 putes? — 6. What did the British authorities now perceive?  
 What resolution was adopted?

in all cases whatsoever," which, after an animated debate, was adopted. P.T. I. 1.

7. The next day, the new ministry, bent on a repeal of the stamp act, examined Dr. Franklin before the house of commons. He gave it as his opinion, that the acts of parliament for taxing America, had alienated the affections of the people from the mother country, and that they would never submit to the stamp duty, unless compelled. P.D. I.  
CH. II.  
Feb. 10  
Dr.  
Franklin  
exam-  
ined.

8. The resolution to repeal that act, was opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents, who were answered by Mr. Pitt. That great statesman maintained, that taxation was no part of the governing or legislative power, which parliament had a right to exert over the colonies; and concluded with a motion, "that the stamp act be repealed, totally, absolutely, and immediately." Repeal  
advo-  
cated by  
Mr. Pitt.

9. The bill for its repeal, at length passed the commons, and was sent to the house of lords, where it met with much opposition. But the cause of the colonies was ably advocated by Lord Camden. "Taxation and representation," he said, "are inseparable—it is an eternal law of nature: for whatever is a man's own, is absolutely his own; no man has a right to take it from him without his consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury; whoever does it, commits a robbery." The bill for repeal at length passed the house of lords, but with it was another, in which the declaration was repeated, that "parliament had a right to bind the colonies *in all cases whatsoever*." Passes  
the com-  
mons;  
Lord  
Camden.  
March  
18,  
Passes  
the house  
of lords

---

7. Who was examined before the house of commons? What opinion did he give? — 8. Who opposed the repeal of the Stamp Act? Who advocated it? What motion did he make? — 9. Was the repeal opposed in the house of lords? Who advocated it? On what principle? What was finally done in the house of lords?



## CHAPTER III.

Second attempt to tax America.—Opposition.

**P.T. III.** 1. **ALTHOUGH** the repeal of the Stamp Act gave joy to the colonists, yet, while a principle was at the same time asserted, upon which any future ministry, with the sanction of parliamentary authority, might oppress them, they continued a jealous watch over the British government.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. III.**

**1766.**

Colonies  
jealous  
and  
watch-  
ful.

March  
31.  
Mass.

pays for  
the riot,  
but par-  
dons the  
rioters.

2. General Conway recommended to the colonies to make compensation to those who had suffered in attempting to enforce the Stamp Act. This referred particularly to the Boston affair. The assembly of Massachusetts at first refused to make any compensation to the sufferers ; but they finally consented, though in a manner highly displeasing to the British government ; for the same act which made the appropriation for the damage, gave a pardon to those by whom it was done.

Ju.y.  
Pitt in  
power.

3. In July, another change took place in the British ministry, and a cabinet was formed under the direction of Mr. Pitt, now Earl of Chatham. The proceedings of the Americans had given great offense to the British ; and they were condemned by many who had heretofore espoused their cause.

**1767.**  
Parlia-  
ment im-  
pose new  
taxes.

4. In May, 1767, Charles Townshend, then chancellor of the exchequer, influenced by Lord Grenville, brought into parliament a second plan for taxing America, by imposing duties on all tea, glass, paper, and painter's colors, which should be imported into the colonies. This bill passed both houses of parliament without much opposition. Another was passed, appointing the officers of the navy, as custom-house officers, to enforce the acts of trade and navigation.

---

CHAPTER III.—1. How did the news from England affect the colonies ? — 2. What did General Conway recommend ? What was done in Massachusetts ? — 3. What change occurred in the British ministry ? — 4. What new plan was proposed for taxing America ? What was done in parliament in reference to it ? What other act passed ?

5. These acts revived the feelings which the Stamp Act produced. In Massachusetts, the assembly sent a petition to the king. They also addressed circulars to the other colonial assemblies, entreating their co-operation, in obtaining the redress of their grievances. P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. III.  
1768.

6. The British ministry viewed this measure as an attempt to convene another congress; and they had always dreaded the effects of voluntary colonial union, independent of the crown. Governor Bernard required the assembly to rescind the vote by which the circulars were sent to the other colonies. The assembly refused to rescind the vote, and the governor dissolved it. But, instead of intimidating, this measure did but exasperate the people. Bernard  
dissolves  
the as-  
sembly.

7. In June, the custom-house officers seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, a merchant of eminence, and a patriot much beloved by the people of Boston. They assembled in crowds, insulted and beat the officers, and compelled them to leave the town. June 10.  
Seizure  
of Han-  
cock's  
sloop.

8. The assembly of Massachusetts had not convened, since its dissolution by Governor Bernard. A report was circulated, that troops were ordered to march into Boston. A town meeting was called, and the governor was earnestly entreated to convoke the assembly. His reply was "that he could not call another assembly this year, without further commands from the king." A convention of the people was then proposed, and accordingly held, on the 22d of September. The members petitioned the governor, that an assembly might be convened; but he refused, and called them rebels. They transmitted to the king a respectful account of their proceedings, and dissolved, after a session of five days. The  
governor  
refuses to  
call an  
assem-  
bly.  
  
Sept. 22.  
A con-  
vention.

9. Orders were given to General Gage, the com-

---

5. What measures were taken in Massachusetts? — 6. What was the view of the British concerning the Union? What did Governor Bernard require? What ground was taken by the assembly? What was the consequence? — 7. Where, and on what occasion, were the custom-house officers insulted and beaten? — 8. What did a town meeting in Boston request of the governor? What was his reply? What was then proposed and done?

P'T. III. mander-in-chief of the British troops in the colonies,  
 P'D. I. to station a force in Boston, to overawe the citizens,  
 CH. III. and protect the custom-house officers in the discharge  
 Sept. 28. of their duty. Two regiments were accordingly or-  
 Two re- dered from Halifax, and escorted by seven armed ves-  
 giments sels, they arrived at Boston on the 28th of September.  
 come The fleet took a station which commanded the town,  
 from and the troops marched into Boston. The select men  
 Halifax refusing to provide them with quarters, the governor  
 to Bos- commanded the state house to be opened for their re-  
 ton. ception. Though outward violence was restrained by  
 this measure, yet hostile dispositions were increased.

10. The proceedings in Massachusetts were declared  
 by the British parliament, to be "illegal, unconstitu-  
 1769. tional, and derogatory to the rights of the crown and  
 Threat- to parliament." Both houses, in a joint address to the  
 ening at- king, recommended vigorous measures, and besought  
 titude of Great him to direct the governor of Massachusetts Bay, to  
 Britain. make strict inquiries, as to all treasons committed in  
 that province since the year 1767, in order that the  
 persons most active in committing them, might be sent  
 to England for trial.

10. The house of burgesses in Virginia met a few days  
 after this address was received in the colonies. They  
 Met with spirit in passed resolutions, in which they boldly denied the  
 spirit in right of the king to remove an offender out of the  
 Virginia colony for trial. When the intelligence of these pro-  
 ceedings reached the governor, he suddenly dissolved  
 the assembly. The members assembled at a private  
 house; elected their speaker, Peyton Randolph, mode-  
 rator, and proceeded to pass some decided resolutions  
 against importing British goods. These were intro-  
 duced by Colonel Washington, who had been a mem-  
 ber of the house since his resignation. The example  
 was extensively followed.

11. The assembly of Massachusetts convened. They  
 refused to proceed with business while the state house

---

9. What orders were given to General Gage? What forces  
 were brought to Boston, and where placed? — 10. What news  
 was received from England? What was done by the legislature  
 of Virginia? Had Washington been in any public capacity since  
 his resignation? What was now done by him?



was surrounded by an armed force. The governor would not remove it, but adjourned them to Cambridge. Considering the establishment of a standing army in time of peace, as an invasion of their natural rights, they refused to make any of the appropriations of money which the governor proposed, and he again prorogued them. In August, Governor Bernard was recalled, and the government left in the hands of lieutenant governor Hutchinson.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. III.  
**1770.**  
May.  
Assembly of  
Mass. adjourned  
to Cambridge.

12. Some of the inhabitants of Boston insulted the military, while under arms; and an affray took place, in which four persons were killed. The bells were instantly rung; the people rushed from the country to the aid of the citizens; and the soldiers were obliged to retire to Castle William, in order to avoid the fury of the enraged multitude. The soldiers were tried and acquitted.

March 5.  
Affray  
with the  
British  
troops.

13. In England Lord North was appointed to the ministry. He introduced a bill into parliament, which passed on the 12th of April, removing the duties which had been laid in 1767, excepting those on tea. But they still claimed the *right* of taxing the colonies. In Rhode Island the people rose and destroyed the Gaspee, an armed British schooner, which had been stationed in that colony, for the purpose of enforcing the acts of trade.

**1771.**  
January  
Lord  
North  
temporizes

**1772**  
June.  
The  
Gaspee  
destroyed.

11. Were the British able, by their armed force, to frighten the assembly of Massachusetts, to make laws to please them? Why did they refuse to make appropriations of money? What change occurred respecting governors? — 12. Give some account of the affray with the military? — 13. What now occurred in England? Did the Americans refuse to obey the British, to save the money to be paid in these taxes, or to maintain their rights? What vessel was destroyed?

## CHAPTER IV.

Seizure of Tea.—Boston Port Bill.—Arrival of British Troops

P.T. III

P.D. I

CH. IV.

1773.

May.  
Law  
made in  
England  
respect-  
ing tea.

1. THE non-importation agreements which had been made and rigidly observed, in respect to the article of tea, now began to affect the commercial interest of Great Britain. Parliament passed an act, allowing the East India Company to export to America, its teas, free of all duties in England; thus enabling them to reduce its price in the colonies. Tea was accordingly shipped from England in large quantities. Resolutions were extensively adopted, that the tea should not be received on shore, but sent back to England.

Bostoni-  
ans put  
342  
chests  
into the  
sea.

2. In Boston, several men disguised as Indians, went on board the ships during the night, and threw their cargoes into the water. Three hundred and forty-two chests of tea were thus broken open, and their contents thrown overboard.

1774.

Parlia-  
ment  
shuts the  
port of  
Boston.

3. The parliament of England, in order to punish the inhabitants of Boston, and oblige them to restore the value of the tea, passed a bill in March, 1774, "interdicting all commercial intercourse with the port of Boston, and prohibiting the landing and shipping of any goods at that place," until these ends should be accomplished.

Expo-  
sure of  
Hutchin-  
son's let-  
ters.

4. General Gage was made governor of Massachusetts, in the place of Hutchinson. He had been removed from his office, in consequence of unpopularity occasioned by the exposure of letters, which had been written by him, during the years 1767 and 1768, to the leading men of Great Britain. These had tended greatly to increase the prejudice of parliament against the colonies.

---

CHAPTER IV.—1. What agreements had been made in regard to tea? Were they observed? What did they affect? What act did parliament pass? What was accordingly sent from England? What resolutions adopted? — 2. What daring exploit was performed at Boston? — 3. What was done by the British to retaliate? — 4. What change was made in Massachusetts?

5. On the arrival of the port bill in Boston, a meeting of the inhabitants was held, who declared that the "impolicy, injustice, and inhumanity of the act exceeded their powers of expression!" The assembly convened at this place, but was removed by the governor to Salem. It was here resolved, that a congress, composed of delegates from all the colonies, ought to be elected, to take their affairs into the most serious consideration. They nominated five eminent men, as their representatives to such a congress; and directed the speaker of the house to inform the other colonies of their resolution.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IV.

May 10.  
Boston  
port bill  
causes  
excite-  
ment.

A gene-  
ral con-  
gress.

6. The governor sent an officer to dissolve the assembly, in the king's name, but as the members would not permit him to enter the hall, he read the order aloud on the staircase; but it was not obeyed until the members had finished their most important business.

Assem-  
bly diso-  
beys the  
royal au-  
thority.

7. Governor Gage had believed that the advantages arising to the trade of Salem, from shutting up the port of Boston, would render its inhabitants more favorable to the royal government; but the people of that town declared, "that nature, in forming their harbor, had prevented their becoming rivals in trade; and that even if it were otherwise, they should regard themselves lost to every idea of justice, and all feelings of humanity, could they indulge one thought of raising their fortunes upon the ruins of their countrymen."

Noble  
conduct  
of the  
people of  
Salem.

8. The cause of the people of Boston was espoused by all the colonies, and their wants were supplied by contributions. The people of Marblehead generously offered them the use of their harbor, their wharves, and warehouses.

The Bos-  
tonians  
aided by  
the  
whole  
country

9. When, in May, 1774, the house of burgesses in Virginia, received the news of the Boston port bill, they proclaimed a fast. Lord Dunmore, the governor,

5. What was done on the arrival of the port bill? What important resolution was passed at Salem; and what consequent measures taken? — 6. In what manner did the assembly treat the royal authority? — 7. What generous part did the inhabitants of Salem take? — 8. What those of Marblehead? — 9. What was done by the Virginians respecting the troubles in Bos-  
ton?



P'T. III. at once prorogued them. They, however, formed an  
 P'D. I. association, and voted to recommend to the colonies  
 CH. V. a general congress. The first of June, the day on  
 The Vir- which the port bill was to take effect, was devoutly  
 ginians observed, in Virginia, as a day of fasting, humiliation  
 keep a and prayer, to implore that God would avert the evils  
 fast. which threatened them, and "give them one heart,  
 and one mind, firmly to oppose, by all just and proper  
 means, every injury to the American rights."

## CHAPTER V.

### Congress at Philadelphia.

1774. 1. ON the 4th of September, 1774, the proposed  
 Sept. 4. congress convened at Philadelphia. In this body, the  
 First most august and important which had ever assembled  
 continen- upon the American shores, all the colonies, except  
 tal con- Georgia, were represented; and all parties, struck with  
 gress. its array of splendid talents and stern patriotism, looked  
 12 colo- forward to results with deep interest and great expecta-  
 nies rep- tion.  
 resented.

2. Their first measure was to choose, by a unani-  
 mous vote, Peyton Randolph, Esq., of Virginia, as  
 Ran- president. They decided, that each colony should  
 dolph, have one vote. They chose a committee of two from  
 president each province, to draw up a "*Bill of Rights*." They  
 approved of the conduct of Massachusetts, and ex-  
 horted all to perseverance in the cause of freedom.  
 Approve They addressed a letter to General Gage, entreating  
 the con- him to desist from military operations; lest a differ-  
 duct of ence, altogether irreconcilable, should arise between  
 Mass. the colonies and the parent state.

9. What petition did they offer to the Almighty?

CHAPTER V.—1. When and where did the continental congress first convene? How many colonies were represented?—

2. What was their first measure? What did they decide? Whom choose? What approve? What exhort? What entreat?

3. By a non-importation compact, they agreed and associated for themselves and their constituents, "under the sacred ties of virtue, honor, and love of liberty," not to import, or use any British goods, after the first of December, 1774. They agreed to encourage agriculture, arts, and manufactures in America. Committees were to be appointed in every place, to see that this agreement was observed.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I  
CH. V

1774.  
Sanction  
non im-  
portation  
acts.

4. Finally, they determined to continue the congressional union, until the repeal by parliament, of oppressive duties—of the laws restricting their rights of trial by jury, and of the acts, against the people of Massachusetts.

Resolve  
to con-  
tinue the  
colonial  
union.

5. In the several addresses which were drawn up by their committees and accepted, congress fully met the high expectations which were entertained of that body of men, of whom Lord Chatham declared, "that, though he had studied and admired the free states of antiquity, the master spirits of the world, yet, for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, no body of men could stand in preference to this congress."

High  
charac-  
ter of a  
congress.

6. The petition to the king entreated him, in language the most respectful and affectionate, to restore their violated rights. Their grievances, they said, were the more intolerable, as they were born heirs of freedom, and had enjoyed it under the auspices of his royal ancestors. "The apprehension," say they, "of being degraded into a state of servitude, from the pre-eminent rank of English freemen, while our minds retain the strongest love of liberty, and clearly foresee the miseries preparing for us and our posterity, excites emotions in our breasts which we cannot describe."

They  
make an  
able ap-  
peal to  
the king

7. They express a hope, that the royal indignation will fall on those designing and dangerous men, who, by their misrepresentations of his American subjects, had, at length, compelled them, by the force of accu-

This pe-  
tition  
draught:  
ed by  
Mr.  
Dickson.

3. What was agreed in the non-importation compact? — 4. They determined to continue the union till the repeal of what acts? — 5. What was Lord Chatham's opinion of this congress? — 6. Give some account of their petition to the king? — 7. With what language did this petition close?

P'T. III. mulated injuries, too severe to be longer borne, thus  
 P'D. 1. to disturb his majesty's repose; a conduct extorted  
 CH. VI "from those" who would much more willingly bleed  
 in his service.

8. Not less moving was the appeal to their fellow-  
 subjects of England. "Can any reason," they ask, "be  
 A rea- given, why English subjects, who live three thousand  
 sonable miles from the royal palace, should enjoy less liberty,  
 appeal. than those who are three hundred miles from it?"

9. In the memorial to their constituents, they pre-  
 Memorial to sented an account of the oppressive measures of par-  
 their liament since 1763. They applaud the spirit which  
 consti- they had shown in defense of their rights, and en-  
 tuents. courage them to persevere, and be prepared for all  
 contingencies; hinting that those might occur, which  
 1774. would put their constancy severely to the test.

10. The congress rose on the 6th of October. Al-  
 though their powers were merely advisory, yet their  
 Congress rise, Oct. 6. decisions received the approbation of the colonial as-  
 Their proceed- semblies, and carried with them all the force of laws.  
 ings ap- proved.

## CHAPTER VI.

War approaches.—Massachusetts.—British Parliament.

1. THERE were however, a few persons, who fa-  
 Whigs voured the cause of Great Britain. They were called  
 and Tories, Tories, and were regarded as traitors by the great body  
 of the people; who, in opposition to Tories, were called  
 Whigs. These party names were derived from England.

2. The magazines of gunpowder and other military  
 Military stores stores, at Charlestown and Cambridge, were seized by  
 seized.

8. What question did they put to their fellow-subjects in Eng-  
 land? — 9. What was the subject of their memorial to their  
 constituents? — 10. When did Congress rise? What were their  
 powers? What weight had their decisions?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What description of persons favoured the  
 cause of Great Britain? — 2. What was done by the assembly  
 of Massachusetts?



order of Gen. Gage. An assembly was called in Massachusetts; but its sittings were countermanded by the governor. The representatives then met at Salem, resolved themselves into a "provincial congress," adjourned to Concord, and chose John Hancock their president.

P'T. III.  
P'D. I.  
CH. VI.

October.  
The assembly  
of Mass.  
a provincial  
congress

3. They then resolved, that, for the defense of the province, a number of the inhabitants should be enlisted, to stand ready to march at a minute's warning. In November, they sent persons to New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, to request their co-operation, in order to raise an army of 20,000 men, to act in any emergency.

Minute  
men.

4. The British parliament convened. The king, in his speech, informed the members, that a most daring resistance to the laws still prevailed in Massachusetts, which was encouraged by unlawful combinations in the other colonies; and, finally, he expressed his firm determination to withstand any attempt to weaken or impair the royal authority; and in these sentiments the two houses expressed, in their answer, a decided concurrence.

1774.  
Nov. 20.  
The king  
and parliament  
inflexible.

5. When the British ministry brought the American papers before parliament, Lord Chatham rose. "The way," he said, "must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. They say, you have no right to tax them, without their consent. They say truly. Representation and taxation must go together—they are inseparable. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves. They do not ask you to repeal your laws, as a favor; they claim it as a right. They tell you, they will not submit to them; and I tell you, the acts must be repealed, and you must go through the work; you must declare you have no right to tax—then they may trust you."

Lord  
Chatham  
in favour  
of America.

6. But his plan for conciliatory measures, was negatived by a large majority. Petitions from the mer-

Measures  
proposed  
by Chatham  
rejected.

3. What did they resolve? To what states send? — 4. What was the tone of the king's speech? What of parliament's reply? — 5. Give some account of Lord Chatham's speech?

P.T. III. chants of London, and other commercial places, in  
 P.D. I. favor of America, were referred, not to the regular  
 CH. VI. committee, but to one, called by the friends of the  
 Colonies refused a hearing. colonies, "the committee of oblivion." Dr. Franklin, and the other colonial agents were refused a hearing before parliament, on the plea, that they were appointed by an illegal assembly; and thus was put to silence, the voice of three millions of people, yet in the attitude of humble suppliants.

Blind-  
ness of  
the  
rulers. 7. Both houses of parliament concurred, by a large majority, in an address to the king, in which they declare, "that the Americans had long wished to become independent, and only waited for ability and opportunity, to accomplish their design. To prevent this," they said, "and to crush the monster in its birth, was the duty of every Englishman; and that this must be done, at any price, and at every hazard."

1775. Feb. 10. Parlia-  
ment at-  
tempt to  
divide  
the  
colonies. 8. On the 10th of February, a bill was passed, by which the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, were restricted in their trade to Great Britain and its West India possessions, and were also prohibited from fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions were soon after extended to all the colonies, excepting New York and North Carolina. It was expected that these prohibitions would prove particularly distressing to the inhabitants of New England, as an idea prevailed, that they depended on the fisheries for their subsistence, and must, if deprived of them, be starved into obedience.

---

6. Did his speech produce any effect? What petitions were offered? How treated? Who was refused a hearing? What may be said of all this? — 7. What address was made by parliament? — 8. What acts did they pass? What was expected from these acts?

## CHAPTER VII.

The War begins by the Battle of Lexington.

1. A SECOND provincial congress having assembled P.T. III  
in Massachusetts, ordered military stores to be P.D. I.  
collected, and encouraged the militia and minute-men CH. VII.  
to improve themselves in the use of arms.

2. General Gage having learned that a number of  
field pieces were collected at Salem, despatched a party 1775.  
of soldiers, to take possession of them, in the name of Feb. 25.  
the king. The people of Salem assembled in great Attempt  
numbers, and, by pulling up a drawbridge, prevented to  
their entering the town, and thus defeated their object. destroy  
stores at  
Salem.

3. A large quantity of ammunition and stores was also  
deposited at Concord, about twenty miles from Bos- April 18  
ton. These General Gage resolved to seize, or destroy; 800 men  
and, with that view, he sent a detachment of 800 men, sent to  
under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Concord.  
Pitcairn.

4. When the British troops arrived at Lexington,  
within five miles of Concord, the militia of the place  
were drawn up. The advanced body of the regulars  
approached within musket shot, when Major Pitcairn,  
riding forward, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!— April 18  
throw down your arms and disperse." Not being Battle of  
obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his men Lexing-  
to fire. They fired, and killed eight men. The militia ton.  
dispersed, but the firing continued. The detachment  
then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed or took  
possession of a part of the stores.

5. They then began their retreat. The colonists  
pressed upon them on all sides. They went to Lex- Retreat  
ington, where they met Lord Percy, with a reinforce- of the  
British

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the legislature of Massachusetts  
order to be collected? — 2. Where and for what did Gen. Gage  
send out a party of soldiers? Did they succeed? — 3. To what  
other place did he send a detachment? For what purpose? —  
4. How did the battle of Lexington commence? Did the Bri-  
tish take the stores? — 5. Describe their retreat?



P.T. 11. ment of 900 men. They however, continued their  
 P.D. I retreat: but from every place of concealment—a stone  
 CH. VII. fence, a cluster of bushes, or a barn, the concealed  
 British provincials poured upon them a destructive fire. At  
 loss, 273. sunset, the regulars, almost overcome with fatigue,  
 American passed Charlestown Neck, and found, on Bunker's Hill,  
 loss, 88. a resting place for the night; and the next morning,  
 under the protection of a man of war, they entered  
 Boston.

6. Blood had now flowed, and no language can  
 Great portray the feelings which the event excited. Couriers  
 excitement. were dispatched in every direction, who gave, as they  
 rode at full speed, their news, to be taken up and  
 Special carried in like manner to other places; and thus, in an  
 couriers increasing circle, it spread like electric fluid throughout  
 spread the news. the land. The messenger, if he arrived on Sunday, at  
 once entered the church, and proclaimed to the breath-  
 less assembly—war has begun! Every where the cry  
 was repeated, “war has begun!” and the universal re-  
 sponse was, “to arms, then—liberty or death!”

7. The legislatures of the several colonies convened,  
 Army appointed officers, and gave orders to raise troops.  
 collected at Every where, fathers were leaving their children, and  
 Boston. mothers sending their sons to the field; and an army  
 of 20,000 was soon collected in the neighborhood of  
 Boston.

8. General Gage was now so closely besieged in  
 British Boston, that although the British had the command  
 besieged in of the sea, his provisions became scarce.

9. To gain possession of Ticonderoga and Crown  
 Plans for Point, individuals in Connecticut, borrowed of the le-  
 taking gislature of that colony, eighteen hundred dollars.  
 Ticonde- They then proceeded to Bennington to secure the co-  
 roga and operation of “the Green Mountain Boys.”  
 Crown Point.

10. This was an appellation given to the hardy  
 Green freemen who had settled in that vicinity by the au-  
 Moun- thority of New Hampshire, and who had manifested  
 tain Boys.

---

6. Describe the state of the public mind, and the manner of  
 spreading the news? — 7. What was done in the several states?  
 — 8. What was the situation of Gen. Gage? — 9. What enter-  
 prize was set on foot in Connecticut? What steps taken? — 10  
 Who were the Green Mountain Boys?

their resolution in defense of their lands from the sheriffs of New York; that state claiming over them a jurisdiction, which they would not allow. At the head of this determined band, were Colonels Ethan Allen, and Seth Warner. They gladly engaged in the enterprise. Troops were soon raised, and the command was entrusted to Allen.

P.T. III

P.D. 1  
CH. VII.Ethan  
Allen  
and  
Seth  
Warner

11. In the meantime, Benedict Arnold, with the intrepid boldness of his character, had, in Boston, formed and matured the same design, and was on the march to execute it, when he was surprised to find that he had been anticipated. Becoming second in command to Allen, they marched together at the head of three hundred men from Castleton, and reached Ticonderoga on the 10th of May. They surprised and captured that fortress, and took peaceable possession of Crown Point.

Benedic  
Arnold.1775.  
May 10  
They  
capture  
Ticon-  
deroga  
and  
Crown  
Point.

12. Arnold, having manned and armed a small schooner found in South Bay, captured a sloop-of-war lying at St. Johns. The pass of Skeensborough, now Whitehall, was seized at the same time, by a detachment of volunteers from Connecticut. One hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war were obtained in this fortunate expedition.

Arnold  
seizes a  
sloop-of-  
war.

13. The continental congress again assembled at Philadelphia on the 10th of May, and Mr. Hancock was chosen President. Bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars were issued for defraying the expenses of the war; and the faith of the "Twelve United Colonies" pledged for their redemption.

May 10  
Congress  
issue  
paper  
money.

14. Lord Dunmore, the Governor of Virginia, showed his distrust of the people by seizing and conveying to an armed vessel in James' River, some powder belonging to the colony. Patrick Henry at-

Lord  
Dunmore  
and  
other  
govern-  
ors  
retire

10. Where had they settled? Under what state? What other state claimed jurisdiction over them? Would they allow it? Whom did they defend their lands against? Who was the commander of the force sent against Ticonderoga? — 11. What other person had formed the same design? Did they capture the forts? At what time? — 12. What other feat was performed by Arnold? — 13. When and where did congress next assemble? What bills of credit issue? — 14. What was the affair in Virginia respecting the powder?

P.T. III. tempting to retake it, Lord Dunmore paid him its value  
 P.D. I. in money. He then proclaimed Henry and his party  
 CH. VIII. rebels. Letters of Lord Dunmore to England were  
 intercepted. The people became so incensed, that  
 Dunmore fearing for his safety, fled to a man-of-war  
 named the Fowey, lying at Yorktown. The gover-  
 nors of North and South Carolina also, abandoned  
 their provinces. In North Carolina, the people of  
 Mecklenburg county, having on the 20th of May, as-  
 sembled at Charlotte, passed resolutions embodying  
 the bold declaration of Independence,—the first made  
 in America.

1775  
 May 20.  
 First de-  
 clarati'n  
 of Inde-  
 pend'ce  
 made in  
 Meck-  
 lenburg  
 Co., N.  
 Carolina

## CHAPTER VIII.

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Washington.

1. In May, the British army in Boston received a  
 May 25. powerful reinforcement from England, under Generals  
 Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. General Gage now  
 and Bur- proclaimed martial law throughout Massachusetts. He  
 goyne. however offered pardon to all rebels, who would re-  
 turn to their allegiance, except Samuel Adams and  
 June 12. John Hancock. He agreed to permit the people of  
 Gage's Boston to depart; but after a portion had gone, he  
 procla- changed his policy and kept the remainder.

2. Learning that the British threatened to penetrate  
 He vio- into the country, congress recommended to the coun-  
 lates his cil of war to take such measures as would put them  
 promise. on the defensive, and for this purpose, a detachment  
 of one thousand men, under Colonel Prescott, was  
 Night of ordered, on the night of the 16th of June, to throw  
 June 16, up a breastwork on Bunker's Hill, near Charlestown.  
 Ameri- By some mistake, the troops entrenched themselves  
 cans on Breed's Hill, nearer to Boston. They labored with  
 fortify such silence and activity, that by return of light they  
 Breed's Hill.

14. How did Lord Dunmore dispose of himself? How was it with other royal governors?

CHAPTER VIII.—1 What arrival was there in Boston? What did Gen. Gage now proclaim? What agree to do? How violate his promise? — 2. What did congress recommend? What was accordingly ordered? What was done in regard to entrenchments.



had nearly completed a strong redoubt, without being observed.

3. At dawn, however, the British, discovering the advance of the Americans, commenced a severe cannonade from the ships in the river; but this not interrupting them, General Gage sent a body of about three thousand men, under Generals Howe and Pigot. They left Boston in boats, and landed under the protection of the shipping in Charlestown, at the extreme point of the peninsula, then advanced against the Americans.

4. They set fire to Charlestown, and amidst the glare of its flames glittering upon their burnished arms, advanced to the attack. The Americans await their approach in silence, until they are within ten rods of the redoubt—then taking a steady aim, and having advantage of the ground, they pour upon the British a deadly fire. They are thrown into confusion, and many of their officers fall. They are thus twice repulsed. Clinton now arrives; his men again rally; advance towards the fortifications, and attack the redoubt on three sides at once.

5. The ammunition of the colonists failed. Courage was no longer of any avail, and Colonel Prescott, who commanded, ordered a retreat. The Americans were obliged to pass Charlestown neck, where they were exposed to a galling fire from the ships in the harbor. Here fell General Joseph Warren, whose death was a severe blow to his mourning country.

6. On the fifteenth of June, congress elected, by a unanimous vote, GEORGE WASHINGTON, who was present, and who had, from their first meeting at Philadelphia, been a delegate from Virginia, to the high office of general and commander-in-chief of the army of the United Colonies. When his appointment was signified to him by the president of congress, he was

P.T. III.

P.D. I.  
CH. VIIIJune 17,  
British  
cross  
from  
Boston.Burn  
Charles-  
town1775  
June 17,  
British  
loss,  
1054.  
Ameri-  
can, 453.June 15  
Wash-  
ington  
elected  
commander-in-  
chief.Wash-  
ington's  
modesty.

3. What measures were taken by the British to dislodge the Americans? — 4. Give some further description of the battle of Bunker's Hill? — 5. Give some account of the retreat of the Americans? What general was killed? Learn from the side note the number of killed and wounded on each side. — 6. What important office was now created? How was it filled?

P'T. III. deeply penetrated with a mingled sense of the high  
 P'D. I. honor which he had received, and the responsibility  
 CH. VIII. of the station to which he was raised.

His dis-  
 interest-  
 edness. 7. He declined all compensation for his services ;  
 for as money could not buy him from his endeared  
 home, and as he served his country for justice, and  
 the love he bore to her cause, he would not allow his  
 motives to be misconstrued. He stated that he should  
 keep an exact account of his expenses ; and those,  
 congress, he doubted not, would discharge.

He joins  
 the army  
 at Cam-  
 bridge. 8. Soon after his election, Washington set out for  
 the camp at Cambridge. He found the British army  
 strongly posted on Bunker's and Breed's hill, and  
 Boston neck. The American, consisting of 14,000  
 men, were entrenched on the heights around Boston,  
 forming a line which extended from Roxbury on the  
 right, to the river Mystic on the left, a distance of  
 twelve miles.

His  
 great ex-  
 ertions. 9. Washington perceived, that although the people  
 were ardent in the cause of liberty, and ready to en-  
 gage in the most desperate enterprises, yet there was a  
 total want of discipline and military subordination  
 among the troops. The army was scantily supplied  
 with arms and ammunition, and their operations re-  
 tardated, by a want of skilful engineers. He set him-  
 self with astonishing energy and judgment, to the  
 labor of bringing order out of confusion.

Dr.  
 Franklin  
 the first  
 post-  
 master-  
 general.  
 Posts  
 from Fal-  
 mouth  
 to Sa-  
 vannah. 10. During this session of congress, also, the first  
 line of posts for the communication of intelligence  
 through the United States, was established. Benjamin  
 Franklin was appointed, by a unanimous vote, post-  
 master-general, with power to appoint as many depu-  
 ties as he might deem proper and necessary, for the  
 conveyance of the mail from Falmouth, in Maine, to  
 Savannah, in Georgia.

---

7. How was it respecting a compensation for his services ? —  
 8. Where did Washington join the army ? What was its num-  
 ber ? — 9. What was the condition of the army ? — 10. What  
 was the beginning of our present post-office system ? Who was  
 the first postmaster-general ? Through what line was the mail  
 to be conveyed ?

## CHAPTER IX.

## Invasion of Canada.—Death of Montgomery.

1. WHILE the British army was closely blockaded in Boston, congress conceived the design of sending a force into Canada; as the movements of Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of that province, seemed to threaten an invasion of the northern frontier. Two expeditions were accordingly organized and dispatched, one by the way of Champlain, under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, the other by the way of the river Kennebec, under the command of Arnold.

P.T. III  
P.D. II  
CH. IX.

Americans  
send two  
parties  
against  
Canada.

2. Gen. Schuyler, though he rendered faithful service, did not on account of his health go to Canada. Montgomery showed himself an able officer. On the 3rd of November he took St. Johns, and proceeding to Montreal, Sir Guy Carleton abandoned the place. About this time Col. Ethan Allen, who was an officer in the army, was, in a rash adventure, made prisoner. He was loaded with irons and sent to England.

Nov. 3.  
St. Johns  
taken.

3. Arnold with 1000 men had with incredible perseverance penetrated the wilderness of Maine. He arrived at Point Levi on the 9th of November. On the 13th he crossed and occupied the heights of Abraham, but his army was reduced to 700 men, and Carleton was now in Quebec with 1500. He retired to Point aux Trembles to await the other division of the army.

Nov. 9.  
Arnold  
before  
Quebec.

4. Montgomery's arrival was on the first of December. He found himself in a situation far more critical and embarrassing than that of Wolfe, sixteen years before. His army was wasted, so that the united force was less than a thousand; and these were enfeebled by fatigue amidst the rigors of a Canadian

Bad  
position  
of Mont  
gomery

CHAPTER IX.—1. Who was governor of Canada? What two expeditions were set on foot? — 2. How did the western division under Montgomery proceed? — 3. How did the eastern under Arnold? — 4. What time did Montgomery join Arnold? What was his situation?



P'T. III. winter, which had already set in with uncommon severity.

P'D I.  
CH. IX.

Despe-  
rate  
assault.

Defeat  
and  
death of  
Montgo-  
mery.

5. He attempted to batter the walls of Quebec. He made piles of ice on which to mount his cannon; but the strong walls remained uninjured. With the advice of all his officers he took then the desperate resolution of storming the city. As the day dawned, and in a snow-storm, the army in four divisions, made the attempt. Two were to make feigned movements in order to divide the attention of the troops in the city; while Montgomery and Arnold, at the head of the other two, made real attacks in opposite points, intending to meet. Arnold had forced his way. Montgomery was cheering on his men, when he received his death-shot. Arnold was wounded and retired. The enterprise failed, with the loss of 400 men killed or made prisoners.

Arnold  
block-  
ades  
Quebec.

6. The treatment of Carleton to his prisoners, did honor to his humanity. Arnold, wounded as he was, retired with the remainder of his army, to the distance of three miles below Quebec; where, though inferior in numbers to the garrison, they kept the place in a state of blockade, and in the course of the winter, reduced it to distress for want of provisions.

1775.  
Oct. 18.  
Fal-  
mouth  
burned.

Efforts  
of an ex-  
aspera-  
ted peo-  
ple.

7. Orders were given to the British naval commanders, to lay waste and destroy all such sea-ports, as had taken part against Great Britain. In consequence, Falmouth, now Portland, was burned by the orders of Captain Mowatt of the British navy. This so exasperated the people, that they now put forth new efforts. They collected military stores; they purchased powder in all foreign ports where it was practicable, and, in many colonies, commenced its manufacture. They also began more seriously to turn their attention to their armed vessels.

Dec. 13.  
Congress  
fit out 13  
ships.

8. Congress resolved to fit out thirteen ships, and raise two battalions of marines. They framed articles

---

5. What attempts did he make? What desperate assault? At what time? What are some of the circumstances? What the final result? — 6. Where was Arnold during the winter? — 7. What orders were given to the British naval commanders? What place was burnt? What effect had this on the people?

of war for the government of the little navy, and established regular courts of admiralty, for the adjudication of prizes. The American privateers swarmed forth. Alert and bold, they visited every sea, and annoyed the British commerce, even in the very waters of their own island.

9. Lord Dunmore, still on board the king's ship, issued a proclamation declaring martial law, and promising freedom to such slaves as would leave their masters, and join his party. Several hundred negroes and royalists obeyed the call, when, leaving his ships, he occupied a strong position near Norfolk. The assembly sent 800 militia to oppose his movements. On the 7th of December they were attacked by the royalists and negroes, but they repelled the assailants, and gained a decisive victory; after which, they occupied the town of Norfolk.

10. Lord Dunmore, with his remaining forces, again repaired to the ships, where, in consequence of the many royalists who joined him, he became reduced to great distress for want of provisions. In this situation he sent a flag to Norfolk, demanding a supply. The commander of the provincials refusing to comply, he set fire to the town, and destroyed it. This availed him little. Assailed at once by tempest, famine, and disease, he with his followers, sought refuge in the West Indies.

11. The last hope of the colonies for reconciliation, rested in the petition of congress to the king, which had been emphatically styled "The Olive Branch." It was sent over by Mr. Penn, a descendant of the proprietor of Pennsylvania, and a former governor of that colony. The king, instead of responding to its affectionate language, accused the Americans in his speech, of rebellion; and declared that they took up arms to establish an independent empire.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IX.

Nov.  
Lord  
Dun-  
more  
makes an  
attempt.

Dec. 7.  
Is de-  
feated.

1776  
Jan. 1.  
Burns  
Norfolk  
and  
abandon  
"the do-  
minion."

1775.  
Mr. Penn  
carries  
over the  
"Olive  
Branch"

---

8. How did Congress now make a beginning with regard to a public navy? How was it with the American privateers? — 9. What were Lord Dunmore's movements in Virginia? How was he opposed? — 10. What was his last act in the dominion? Did it avail him? — 11. What was the last petition of congress to the king called? By whom was it sent? How was it received?

P'T. III. 12. He recommended that vigorous measures should  
 P'D. I. be taken to subdue them, and such also as were likely  
 CH. IX. to weaken them by division. Large majorities in both  
 The houses answered the king's speech, by the same ac-  
 king and cusations against the colonies, and the same determi-  
 the par- nation to reduce them to obedience, by measures of  
 liaments coercion and distress. Thus, with a folly which En-  
 hostile. glish patriots now deplore, was the "Olive Branch"  
 contemptuously rejected; and thus the last hope of  
 honourable peace was crushed.

13. An act was soon passed prohibiting all trade  
 and commerce with the colonies; and authorizing the  
 capture and condemnation of all American vessels  
 with their cargoes, and all others found trading in any  
 Dec. port or place in the colonies, as if the same were the  
 Severe vessels and effects of open enemies; and the vessels  
 laws. and property thus taken were vested in their captors;  
 and the farther barbarous item was added, that the  
 crews were to be treated, not as prisoners, but as  
 slaves.

14. About the same time, England made treaties  
 with the landgrave of Hesse Cassel, and other German  
 England hires mercenaries. princes, hiring of them 17,000 men, to be employed  
 against the Americans; and it was determined to send  
 over, in addition to these, 25,000 English troops.  
 The By the passage of this act, the hiring of foreign mer-  
 last cenaries, and the rejection of this last petition, Great  
 wrong Britain filled up the measure of her wrongs to Ame-  
 rica, and sealed her final separation from her colonies.

---

12. What did the king recommend? How did parliament  
 reply? What is now thought of the conduct of these rulers by  
 wise men and patriots of their own nation? — 13. What severe  
 law was passed? — 14. What number of men did England hire  
 of the German princes? Do you think the slave-holders in the  
 United States would for money set their negroes to kill people,  
 that either they or their nation had any quarrel with?



## CHAPTER X.

Washington enters Boston.—Disasters in Canada.

1. **ALTHOUGH** Britain was preparing so formidable a force, yet the American army was not only reduced in numbers, but at the close of the year 1775, was almost destitute of necessary supplies. The terms of enlistment of all the troops had expired in December; and although measures had been taken for recruiting the army, yet on the last day of December, there were but 9,650 men enlisted for the ensuing year.

P'T. II.  
P'D. I  
CH. X.

The  
army  
small  
and  
ill-ap-  
pointed.

2. Gen. Washington, finding how slowly the army was recruited, proposed to congress to try the influence of a bounty; but his proposal was not acceded to until late in January, and it was not until the middle of February, that the regular army amounted to 14,000. In addition to these, the commander-in-chief, being vested by congress with the power to call out the militia, made a requisition on the authorities of Massachusetts, for 6,000 men.

A bounty  
given.

Militia  
called  
out.

3. Washington had continued the blockade of Boston during the winter of 1775-6, and at last resolved to bring the enemy to action, or drive them from the town. On the night of the 4th of March, a detachment silently reached Dorchester Heights, and there constructed, in a single night, a redoubt which menaced the British shipping with destruction. On the morning of the 17th, the whole British force, with such of the loyalists as chose to follow their fortunes, set sail for Halifax. As the rear of the British troops were embarking, Washington entered the town in triumph.

1776.  
March 4  
Dorches-  
ter for-  
tified.

The  
British  
evacuate  
Boston,  
Mar. 17

4. The plans of the British cabinet embraced, for the campaign of 1776, the recovery of Canada, the re-

British  
have 3  
objects  
for the  
cam-  
paign.

CHAPTER X.—1. What was the condition of the American army at the close of '75?—2. What did Washington recommend? What was done?—3. What took place at Boston in March '76?—4. What did the British mean to do in the course of the year?

P'T. III. duction of the southern colonies, and the possession  
 P'D. I. of New York. This last service was entrusted to  
 CH. X. Admiral Howe, and his brother, General Howe; the  
 latter of whom succeeded General Gage, in the com-  
 mand of the British troops.

Arnold before Quebec. Is badly situated.  
 5. Arnold had continued the siege of Quebec, and  
 had greatly annoyed the garrison; but his army had  
 suffered extremely from the inclemency of the season,  
 and from the breaking out of the small-pox. Not-  
 withstanding the garrison of Montreal had been sent  
 to reinforce him, he had scarcely 1,000 effective men.

1776. A disastrous retreat, May 5.  
 6. General Thomas now arrived and superseded  
 Arnold. He made several attempts to reduce Quebec,  
 but the sudden appearance of the British fleet obliged  
 him to flee with such precipitation, that he left his  
 baggage and military stores. Many of the sick also  
 fell into the hands of Carleton, by whom they were  
 treated with honourable humanity.

June. Americans evacuate Canada.  
 7. One after another, the posts which had been con-  
 quered by the Americans, fell into the hands of the  
 British, and before the close of June, they had re-  
 covered all Canada. The Americans lost, in this un-  
 fortunate retreat, about 1,000 men, who were mostly  
 taken prisoners.

Sir Peter Parker sails to attack Charleston.  
 8. The British fleet, destined to the reduction of the  
 southern colonies, sailed, under Sir Peter Parker, to  
 attack Charleston, where they arrived early in June  
 The marines were commanded by General Clinton.

Sullivan's island fortified.  
 June 28. British are repulsed.  
 9. An intercepted official letter had given the alarm  
 to the Carolinians. On Sullivan's island, at the en-  
 trance of Charleston harbor, they had constructed a  
 fort of the palmetto tree, which resembles the cork.  
 This fort was garrisoned by about 400 men, com-  
 manded by Colonel Moultrie. On the morning of the  
 28th of June, the British ships opened their several  
 broadsides upon it, but their balls were received by  
 the palmetto wood, and buried as in earth. Moultrie

---

5. How was Arnold situated in the spring? — 6. Who was his successor? What was he forced to do? — 7. Mention some of the circumstances of the unfortunate close of the invasion of Canada. — 8. What fleet went to attack Charleston? — 9. How was Charleston defended?

defended the fortification with such spirit, that it has ever since been called by his name. P.T. III.

10. Once during the day, after a thundering discharge from the British cannon, the flag of the fort was no longer seen to wave; and the Americans, who watched the battle from the opposite shore, were, every moment, expecting to see the British troops mount the parapets in triumph. But none appeared; and, in a few moments, the striped banner of America was once more unfurled to their view. The staff had been carried away by a shot, and the flag had fallen upon the outside of the fort. A serjeant, by the name of Jasper, had jumped over the wall, and, amidst a shower of bullets, had recovered and fastened it in its place. At evening, the British, completely foiled, drew off their ships, with the loss of two hundred men. P.D. I.  
CH. X.  
1776  
  
Jasper  
recovers  
the flag.  
  
British  
sail for  
N. York

11. Washington had early apprehended that the enemy would endeavour to get possession of New York. He had, therefore, detached General Lee from Cambridge, to put Long Island and New York in a posture of defense. Soon after the evacuation of Boston, the commander-in-chief followed, and, with the greater part of his army, fixed his head-quarters in the city of New York. Wash-  
ington's  
head-  
quarters  
at New  
York.

12. On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, made a motion in congress, for declaring the colonies FREE AND INDEPENDENT. While the proposition was pending, individuals, public presses, and legislatures, sent from every quarter of the country to Philadelphia, a voice approving such a measure. June 7.  
Independence  
proposed  
in con-  
gress.

13. On the 14th of June, the legislature of Connecticut passed resolutions, instructing their delegates in congress, to propose to that body to declare the American colonies free and independent states, absolved from all allegiance to the king of Great Britain. The reasons, they state to be—the taking away their just rights—the contemptuous refusal to listen to their June 14.  
The  
feeling of  
all ex-  
pressed  
by Con-  
necticut

---

10. Mention serjeant Jasper's exploit. What was the British loss? — 11. What did Washington apprehend? What arrangements make? — 12. What proposal was made in Congress?



P'T. III. "humble, decent, and dutiful petitions"—the endeavour to reduce them to abject submission, by war and bloodshed, subjecting their persons to slavery, and hiring foreign mercenaries to destroy them;—so that no alternative was left, but either to submit to what must end in the extreme of wretchedness, or, appealing to God, to declare a total separation.

July 4. 14. The sentiments which Connecticut had thus embodied, pervaded the whole country. Congress, therefore, on the 4th of July, 1776, declared to the world, that "these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES."

Independence.

13. How had the Connecticut legislature expressed the sentiments of the nation? — 14. What was done on the 4th of July?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point to it on the chronographer. The Stamp Act was passed in 1765. Point out the place of this event. The first continental congress assembled in 1774. Point to the place of this date. The battle of Lexington was fought April 18th, 1775, and the battle of Bunker Hill June 17th. Point to the place of these dates.

Congress again assembled at Philadelphia, May 10th, and Washington was appointed commander-in-chief June 15th, 1775. Point out the year of these dates. The British evacuated Boston, March 17th, 1776. When does this period terminate? What event marks its termination? Point out its place on the chronographer.

*American Officers,*  
i. e. Citizens of the U. S.  
at the opening of the war.

WASHINGTON	<i>French.</i>
ALLEN,	LA FAYETTE,
WARNER,	D'Estaing,
ARNOLD,	ROCHAMBEAU,
PRESCOTT,	DE GRASSE,
WARREN,	Viomesnil.
PUTNAM,	—
SCHUYLER,	—
MONTGOMERY,	—
Thomas,	<i>English.</i>
MOULTRIE,	Lee.
Hale,	—
SULLIVAN,	—
STIRLING,	—
Mifflin,	<i>Polanders.</i>
Wooster,	KOSCIUSKO,
Herkimer,	PULASKI.
St. Clair,	—
GATES,	—
MORGAN,	<i>Prussian.</i>
STARK,	STEUBEN.
LINCOLN,	—
GREENE,	—
James Clinton,*	—
Boyd,	<i>German.</i>
PICKENS,	DE KALB.
Ashe,	—
Buford,	—
Huger,	—
SUMPTER,	<i>Irish</i>
MARION,	Conway.
WAYNE,	—
Lee,	—
Hayne,	—
Ledyard,	<i>Scotch.</i>
Hamilton.	PAUL JONES.

*British Officers*

GAGE,  
Pitcairn,  
Smith,  
Lord Percy,  
Lord Dunmore,  
Gen. Howe  
(Sir William),  
Gen. CLINTON  
(Sir Henry)  
BURGOYNE,  
Pigot,  
CARLETON  
(Sir Guy),  
Lord Howe  
(Admiral),\*  
De Heister  
(German)  
Tryon,  
Frazer,  
St. Leger,  
Baum,  
CORNWALLIS,  
Donop,  
Campbell,  
PREVOST,  
TARLETON,  
Arnold,  
Lord RAWDON  
André,  
Leslie,  
Balfour,  
Stuart,  
Arbuthnot,  
Philips.

\* Admiral Lord Howe and General Sir William Howe, were brothers to each other, and to that Lord Howe who was killed in the French war

\* Only once mentioned in this book.

[illegible]





Washington taking Command.

## PERIOD II

FROM  
THE DECLARATION { 1776, } OF INDEPENDENCE,  
TO  
THE COMMENCEMENT OF { 1789. } THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

### CHAPTER I.

Lord Howe attempts pacification.—American disaster at Long Island.

1. CONSIDERED as a step in the great march of P.T. III.  
human society, no one can be fixed upon of more P.D. II.  
importance, than the solemn promulgation of the writ- CH. I.  
ting, which contained the grievances of America, and July 6.  
declared her independence. It embodied the universal **1776.**  
wrongs of the oppressed; sent forth a warning voice The De-  
to the oppressor; and declared the common rights of claration  
all mankind. import-  
ant to the  
world.

2. The signing of this declaration, by the members  
of the American congress, who were the leading men  
of the nation, was doing that, which, if Great Britain  
should prevail, would subject every signer to the With  
America  
the final  
decision

CHAPTER I.—1. Why may the Declaration of Independence  
be properly regarded as an era in the history of mankind? — 2.  
Why did the people of the United States consider the signing of  
the declaration as their final decision?

P.T. III. penalty of death. As these patriots had thus exposed  
 P.D. II. themselves for the sake of their country, all now re-  
 CH. II. garded the grand decision as unalterably made.

July 2, to  
 July 12. 3. The British troops from Halifax, under the  
 British command of General Howe, took possession of Staten  
 in great Island on the 2d of July; and those from England,  
 force at commanded by Admiral Howe, joined them at that  
 Staten island on the 12th. These, with other English, and  
 Island. several Hessian regiments, would make up an army of  
 35,000 of the best troops of Europe.

Lord  
 Howe  
 attempts  
 peace-  
 able ex-  
 pedients  
 too late  
 4. Lord Howe, who was a man of kind disposi-  
 tion, hoped that the Americans, would be so much  
 afraid of this great force, that they would submit,  
 without his employing it against them. He took  
 various measures to appeal to the people against the  
 decision of Congress, but he did not succeed. Per-  
 ceiving Washington's great influence, he wrote him a  
 letter, directing it to Mr. Washington. The General  
 sent it back unopened; for he said that he was not  
 addressed in his public capacity; and as an individual,  
 he would hold no intercourse with the enemies of his  
 country.

Grand  
 plan  
 of the  
 British  
 5. General and Admiral Howe now determined to  
 attack New York. From this point they might, they  
 hoped, proceed with their grand scheme, which was  
 to divide New England from the south. Carleton,  
 with 13,000 men, was to make a descent from Canada,  
 by the way of Lake Champlain, and form a junction  
 with Howe, who was to ascend the Hudson.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 army.  
 6. Thirteen thousand of the militia were ordered to  
 join the army of Washington, which, thus increased,  
 amounted to twenty-seven thousand; but a fourth of  
 these were invalids, and another fourth were poorly  
 provided with arms. From these and other causes,  
 the force fit for duty did not exceed ten thousand; and  
 of this number the greater part was without order or  
 discipline.

3. How large a British army was in or near the United States?  
 —4. What hopes had Lord Howe? What measures did he  
 take? What occurred between him and Washington?—5.  
 What appears to have been the grand scheme of the English?  
 What city did they wish to make their head quarters?—6. What  
 was the number and condition of Washington's army?

7. These inconveniences proceeded, in part, from want of money, which prevented congress from paying regular troops, and providing for their equipments; and partly from parsimonious habits, contracted during peace, which withheld them from incurring, with promptitude, the expenses necessary to a state of war; while their jealousy of standing armies inspired the hope, that they could, each year, organize for the occasion, an army sufficient to resist the enemy.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1776.  
Its inferiority  
to the  
British.

8. On the 22d of August, the English landed without opposition on Long Island, between the villages of New Utrecht and Gravesend. They extended themselves to Flatlands, distant four miles from the Americans, and separated from them by a range of wood-covered hills, called the heights of Gawanus, running from east to west.

Aug. 22.  
British  
land on  
L. Island.

9. Washington had made the best disposition of his forces in his power, to guard the city of New York. The main army was on the island of New York, with detachments sent out to the most exposed points. Of these, the largest was on Long Island, extending from Wallabout Bay westward, and under command of Generals Putnam, Sullivan, and Stirling. They were opposed to the vastly superior force of the British, under the experienced Generals Clinton, Percy, Cornwallis, and Grant, and the Hessian commander, de Heister.

The two  
armies  
are op-  
posed.

10. Over the heights of Gawanus, there were but three roads. With such a force opposed to them, how could the American generals neglect to guard these passes, and watch them closely? Yet one of these roads, the most easterly, or Jamaica road, was left so carelessly guarded, that while a part of the British army were taking up the attention of the Americans, with a great noise and show of attack, another portion march-

Aug. 27  
Defeat at  
Brook  
lyn.

Am. lost  
probably  
2000.  
British  
loss 400.

7. From what did this unhappy state of things proceed? — 8. Where did the English army land? How were they arranged?

9. What disposition of his troops was made by Washington?

10. What carelessness were some of the American officers guilty of? What disaster was the consequence? What was the loss on both sides in the battle of Brooklyn?\*

\* N. B. The questions sometimes refer to the side notes



1. 11. ing easterly passed the heights through that road, and thus placed the Americans between two fires. They could not then win the battle, though they fought bravely. It proved the most bloody and the most disastrous defeat of the whole war.

11. In the height of the engagement, General Washington crossed to Brooklyn from New York. He saw with anguish that his best troops were slaughtered or taken prisoners. Had his object been his own glory, he would probably have drawn all his troops from the encampment; and also called over all the forces from New York, to take part in the conflict: but victory having declared in favour of the English, his judgment decided, that the courage with which it inspired them, and the superiority of their discipline, destroyed all just hope of recovering the battle. And, with true heroism, he preserved himself and his army, for a happier future.

12. On the night of the 28th, Washington cautiously withdrew the remainder of his troops from Brooklyn to New York; to which place the detachment from Governor's Island, also retired. Finding, however, a disposition in the British to attack the city, and knowing that it would be impossible to defend it, he removed his forces to the heights of Harlaem.

## CHAPTER II.

Disasters following the defeat on Long Island.

1. ABOUT this time, Captain Hale, a highly interesting young officer from Connecticut, learning that Washington wished to ascertain the state of the British

Capt.  
Hale ex-  
ecuted as  
a spy.

10. At what time, year, month and day, did the Americans meet this dreadful reverse? Show the position of the armies by the map.—11. What was Washington's conduct? — 12. What changes in the position of his army did he now make?

CHAPTER II.—1. Who was Captain Hale? On what service was he sent?

army on Long Island, volunteered for the dangerous service of a spy. He entered the British army in disguise, and obtained the desired information; but being apprehended in his attempt to return, he was carried before Sir William Howe, and by his orders was executed the next morning. At the place of execution, he exclaimed, "I lament that I have but one life to lay down for my country."

2. On the 15th of September, the British army took possession of the city of New York. Gen. Howe again attempted to negotiate; but he could not promise the Americans independence, and they would listen to no other terms. Still the prospects of the country were alarming. Until the check at Brooklyn, the Americans had flattered themselves, that Heaven would constantly favor their arms. They now almost despaired of divine protection. The militia abandoned their colors by hundreds, and entire regiments deserted, and returned to their homes. In the regular army desertions were common. Their engagements were but for a year, or for a few weeks; and the hope of soon returning to their families induced them to avoid dangers. Every thing appeared to threaten a total dissolution of the army.

3. Washington strove earnestly, with exhortations, persuasions, and promises, to arrest this spirit of disorganization. If he did not succeed according to his desires, he obtained more than his hopes. To congress he addressed an energetic picture of the deplorable state of the forces, and assured them that he must despair of success, unless furnished with an army that should stand by him until the conclusion of the struggle. To effect this, a bounty of twenty dollars was offered at the time of engagement, and portions of unoccupied lands were promised to the officers and soldiers.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. II.

Sept. 15.  
British  
enter N.  
York.

Americans dis-  
pirited  
by de-  
feat.

1776.  
Militia  
desert.

The  
regular  
army  
insubor-  
dinate.

Congress  
offer a  
bounty.

1. Where? What was his fate? — 2. When did the British enter New York? Would the Americans submit after their defeat at Brooklyn? What effect however, had it on their minds? What on the army? — 3. What was the conduct of the commander? What did he represent to congress? What did they do?

P.T. III. 4. But although Washington hoped ultimately to  
 P.D. II. reap the benefit of these arrangements, yet time must  
 CH. II. intervene; and his present prospect was that of a  
 handful of dispirited and ill-found troops, to contend  
 against a large and victorious army. In this situation  
 he adopted the policy to harass and wear out his  
 enemy, without risking any general engagement. By  
 this policy, Fabius Maximus had, two thousand years  
 before, preserved Italy, when invaded by Hannibal.  
 Washington has, therefore, been called "the American  
 Fabius."

5. A skirmish occurred, on the 16th of September,  
 between a British and American detachment, in which  
 the Americans had the advantage. The British sought  
 to get possession of the two roads leading east, from  
 which direction Washington received his supplies. To  
 keep one of these roads open, Washington removed  
 his camp to White Plains. Here the British attacked  
 him, but though there was bloodshed on both sides,  
 the enemy failed of their object. Washington re-  
 mained, till on the night of the 30th, when he with-  
 drew to North Castle. Leaving here 7,500 men under  
 Gen. Lee, he crossed the Hudson, and took post near  
 Fort Lee.

6. On the 16th of November, occurred the disas-  
 trous loss of Fort Washington; with the 2000 Ameri-  
 can troops, which composed its garrison. The gar-  
 rison of Fort Lee on the opposite bank of the Hudson,  
 under the guidance of Gen. Greene, evacuated the fort,  
 and joined Washington; who, with the main army,  
 had removed to Newark in New Jersey.

7. Washington retreated across New Jersey, and  
 was leisurely followed by a British army under Lord  
 Cornwallis. They entered Newark the day on which  
 Washington left it; and pursued him as he passed on  
 through New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton.

4. What policy did Washington adopt? — 5. What occurred  
 on the 16th of Sept.? What on the 28th of Oct.? What on the  
 30th? — 6. What forts were taken by the British? What num-  
 ber of American prisoners? Where was Washington? Who  
 joined him? — 7. Give an account of Washington's memorable  
 retreat through New Jersey? Show the scene of operations on  
 the map.



Here, at the Delaware, the British expected to seize their prey; but with a diligence and energy far exceeding theirs, the Americans had just crossed over,—the last boats with the baggage, being still on the river when the enemy appeared on the opposite bank.

8. Cornwallis had no boats in which to cross the river. He arranged his army along the eastern bank, from Mount Holly to Trenton, and waited for the Delaware to freeze. The British commanders had an army of at least six-fold numerical strength to that of Washington; and nothing but their own inertness, and his great and skilful exertions, hindered their overtaking him. This seems one of those cases, in which we can see clearly an interposing Providence.

Inefficiency of the British.

9. Feeble as was the American army when Washington commenced his retreat, it had hourly diminished. His troops were unfed amidst fatigue; unshod, while their bleeding feet were forced rapidly over the sharp projections of frozen ground; and they endured the keen December air, almost without clothes or tents. Washington, with the firmness of the commander, united the tenderness of the father;—he visited the sick,—paid every attention in his power to the wants of the army,—praised their constancy,—represented their sufferings to congress,—and encouraged their despairing minds, by holding out the prospects of a better future.

1776.  
Dec.  
Distress of Washington's army.

He becomes truly the "Father of his country."

10. The distress of the Americans, was increased by the desertion, of many of the supposed friends of their cause. Howe, taking advantage of what he considered their vanquished and hopeless condition, offered free pardon to all, who should now declare for the royal authority. Of the extremes of society, the very rich and the very poor, numbers sued for the royal clemency; but few of the middle classes deserted their country in its hour of peril.

The time that "tried men's souls."

---

8. What arrangements did Lord Cornwallis make? What was the difference in the strength of the armies? What in the energy and diligence of the commanders?—9. What was the condition of the American army? What the course of Washington?—10. How were the distresses of the army increased?

## CHAPTER II.

## American successes at Trenton and Princeton.

**PT. III.** 1. WASHINGTON, in this emergency, called in the distant detachments of the army; and fifteen hundred militia, under Gen. Mifflin, joined him. He had ordered Gen. Lee to go north, for certain important objects; but Lee thought that better uses might be made of the army under his command; and disobeying his orders, he had lingered among the mountains of New Jersey. Here a party of British cavalry surprised and took him prisoner. Gen. Sullivan conducted his forces to Washington's camp.

**P'D. II.**  
**CH. III.**

**Gen. Lee**  
**insubor-**  
**ordinate.**

**Made**  
**prisoner.**

**1776.**  
**A criti-**  
**cal mo-**  
**ment im-**  
**proved.**

2. With these reinforcements, the American army amounted to about 7,000 effective men. A few days, however, would close the year, and the period of enlistment for a considerable portion of the soldiers would expire with it. The cause of America demanded that important use should be made of the short space which intervened. At this critical moment, Washington, perceiving the inactivity of his enemy, struck a capital blow for his country.

**Dec. 26**  
**and 27.**  
**Wash-**  
**ington at**  
**Trenton.**

**Am. loss**  
**12. Two**  
**were**  
**frozen.**

3. He determined to recross the Delaware, and attack the British posts at Trenton and Burlington. The main body of the army, commanded by Washington in person, effected the passage, though with suffering and danger; for the night was intensely cold, and the river filled with floating ice. The troops marched in two divisions, but both arrived at Trenton at the same moment. The Hessians, under Colonel Rahl, were surprised, and their commander slain. Prisoners, to the number of 1,000, were taken by the Americans, who immediately re-crossed the Delaware

---

CHAPTER III.—1. What measures did Gen. Washington take to increase the exhausted army? What did Lee? What became of his forces? — 2. What was now the number and condition of the American army? What did Washington perceive, and the cause of the country demand? — 3. Give an account of the affair at Trenton?

Two days after the action, Washington crossed his whole army over the Delaware, and took quarters at Trenton.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. III.

4. Howe was thunderstruck at this astonishing reverse. Cornwallis, leaving a part of his troops at Princeton, immediately proceeded towards Trenton, with the intention of giving battle to the Americans, and arrived, with his vanguard, on the first of January.

1777

Jan. 1  
British  
in mo-  
tion.

5. Washington knew the inferiority of his force, and was sensible, too, that flight would be almost as fatal to the republicans as defeat. About midnight, leaving his fires burning briskly, that his army should not be missed, he silently decamped, and gained, by a circuitous route, the rear of the enemy. At sunrise, the van of the American forces met, unexpectedly, two British regiments, which were on the march to join Cornwallis. A conflict ensued: the Americans gave way:—all was at stake. Washington himself, at this decisive moment, led on the main body. The enemy were routed, and fled. Washington pressed forward towards Princeton, where one regiment of the enemy yet remained. A part of these, saved themselves by flight; the remainder were made prisoners. Thus had he again accomplished his object.

Jan. 3.  
Prince-  
ton.  
Br. loss  
k. 100.  
Am. loss,  
k. Gen.  
Mercer,  
perhaps  
70.

Prison-  
ers taken  
300.

6. Thrilling were the emotions, with which, these successes were hailed, by a disheartened nation. Even to this day, when an unexpected and joyful event is to be related, the speaker, who perchance knows not the origin of the proverb, exclaims, "Great news from the Jerseys!!"

Great  
joy

7. On hearing the cannonade from Princeton, Cornwallis, apprehensive for the safety of his New Brunswick stores, immediately put his army in motion for that place. Washington, on his approach, retired to Morristown. When somewhat refreshed, he again took the field; and having gained possession of Newark, Woodbridge, Elizabethtown, and indeed of all the enemy's posts in New Jersey, except New Brunswick

Jan. 6.  
Wash-  
ington  
retires to  
Morris-  
town

4. What movement was made by the British? — 5. What second bold stroke was struck by Washington? What effect had these successes on the nation? — 7. What movements were next made by the two armies?



P'T. III. and Amboy, he retired to secure winter-quarters at  
 P'D. II. Morristown.

CH. IV. 8. Washington's military glory now rose to its  
 1777. meridian. Indeed, nothing in the history of war  
 Wash- shows a leader in a more advantageous point of light,  
 ington's than the last events of this campaign, did the com-  
 great manding general.—Hannibal made war for revenge.  
 merit. Cæsar and Napoleon for ambition; Washington for  
 justice,—for the rights of his country, and of mankind.

## CHAPTER IV.

Difficulties and exertions of Congress.—Campaign of 1777.

High  
 charac-  
 ter of the  
 old con-  
 gress.  
 Their  
 difficul-  
 ties.  
 1. CONGRESS in the mean time were surrounded  
 with difficulties which would have utterly discouraged  
 men of weaker heads, or fainter hearts. They were  
 without any power, except the power to recommend.  
 They had an exhausted army to recruit, and this, not  
 merely without money, but almost without credit; for  
 the bills, which they had formerly issued, had almost  
 entirely lost credit.

Franklin,  
 Deane &  
 Lee.  
 2. To raise money they authorized a loan,—they  
 created a lottery,—and they sent three commissioners  
 to France to borrow of that government. These com-  
 missioners, Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Ar-  
 thur Lee, were also, if possible, to prevail upon the  
 French government, to acknowledge the American in-  
 dependence.

April 26.  
 Tryon  
 turns  
 Danbury.  
 3. On the 25th of April, 2,000 men, under Gover-  
 nor Tryon, major of the royalists, or tories, having  
 passed the sound, landed between Fairfield and Nor-  
 walk. The next day, proceeding to Danbury, they  
 compelled the garrison, under Colonel Huntington, to

9. What was now Washington's reputation?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What was the situation of Congress? — 2.  
 What did they do to raise money? Whom send to France?  
 For what objects? — 3. Give an account of Gov. Tryon's expe-  
 dition?

retire; and not only destroyed the stores, but burned the town. P.T. III.

4. Meantime, 800 militia had collected to annoy them, on their return; of whom 500, under Arnold, took post at Ridgefield, to attack their front, while 200, under General Wooster, fell upon their rear. Both parties were repulsed. Wooster was slain; and Arnold retired to Saugatuck, about three miles east of Norwalk. The enemy having spent the night at Ridgefield, set fire to it, still retreating, although continually harassed by Arnold's party, now increased to 1,000. At Campo, between Norwalk and Fairfield, they took refuge on board their ships. P.D. II.  
CH. IV.  
  
1777.  
  
Ridge-  
field. Br  
loss, 170  
Am. 100

5. The British had collected at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, large magazines of forage and grain. Colonel Meigs left Guilford, on the 23d of May, with 170 men, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen brigs and sloops, and returned without loss. May 23.  
Sag Har-  
bour.  
Br. loss,  
k. 6; pri-  
soners,  
90.

6. Congress had, with great judgment, selected Dr. Franklin as one of the mission to France. A profound knowledge of human nature, had given to this philosopher a manner possessing a peculiar charm, attractive to all, however different their taste or pursuits. He exerted these powers so successfully, that he excited great interest at the court of France for the American cause. Dr.  
Franklin  
at the  
court of  
France.

7. Several gentlemen of rank and fortune came forward and offered their services. The most distinguished of these, was the Marquis de la Fayette, a young nobleman, who, although he had every thing to attach him to his own country, yet took the resolution to risk his life and fortune, for the cause of American liberty, and human rights. La Fay-  
ette and  
others  
offer  
their ser-  
vice.

8. After the disastrous battle of Long Island, he was told of the despairing state of the country, then so poor, that it could not provide him a conveyance. Magna-  
nimity of  
La Fay-  
ette.

---

4. Give an account of the retreat of the British, and show it on the map? — 5. Give an account of Col. Meigs' exploit? — 6. What kind of man was Dr. Franklin? What effect did he produce? — 7. Who made offers of service? — 8. What trait of magnanimity can you relate of La Fayette? How was he received in the United States?

P'T. III. "Then," said La Fayette, "this is the moment when  
 P'D. II. I can render the most essential service." He provided  
 CH. V. a vessel for himself. His arrival caused heartfelt joy.  
 1777. Washington received him as a son; and Congress  
 made him a major-general.

9. Washington removed the main army from Morristown, to a strong position on the heights of Middlebrook. Gen. Howe, crossed the Hudson and appearing before Washington's camp, vainly endeavoured to draw him out. Affecting to retreat in haste, Washington pursued, when Howe turned upon him; but the American general regained his camp, a skirmish only having ensued.

Move-  
ments of  
the two  
armies.  
June.

10. The British had taken Rhode Island in December. On the 10th of July, the British commander, General Prescott, was made prisoner by a daring party of forty country militia, under Col. Barton. General Prescott was surprised at night, and taken from his bed.

July 10.  
Col.  
Barton's  
exploit.

## CHAPTER V.

### Burgoyne's Invasion.

1. THE grand British plan, as has been mentioned, was to send an army to Canada, which should invade by the way of Lake Champlain; while a force from New York should go up the Hudson to act in concert. It was supposed the east might thus be divided from the south.

The  
grand  
plan to  
be at-  
tempted.

2. General Burgoyne was sent from England with an army, and arrived at Quebec in May. Burgoyne's army consisted of 7,173 British and German troops, besides several thousands of Canadians and Indians. His plan of operation was, that Colonel St. Leger

1777.  
May.  
Bur-  
goyne  
sent  
ver.

9. Give some account of the two armies? — 10. Give an account of the capture of Gen. Prescott.

CHAPTER V.—1. What was now the grand scheme of the British? — 2. Who was sent over to effect it? What forces had Burgoyne? What was his plan of operation?



should proceed with a detachment by the St. Lawrence, Oswego, and Fort Stanwix, to Albany. Burgoyne, proceeding by Champlain and the Hudson, was to meet St. Leger at Albany, and both, to join General Clinton from New York. Burgoyne moved forward with his army, and made his first encampment on the western shore of Lake Champlain, at the river Boquet.

3. St. Leger had united with Sir John Johnson, and having nearly 2,000 troops, including savages, they invested Fort Stanwix, commanded by Col. Gansevoort. General Herkimer, having collected the militia, marched to the relief of Gansevoort. He fell into an Indian ambushade on the 6th of August, and was defeated and slain. St. Leger pressed upon the fort.

4. General Schuyler, who commanded the northern forces, dispatched Arnold to its relief. On hearing of his approach, the Indians, having previously become dissatisfied, mutinied and compelled St. Leger to return to Montreal... Burgoyne advanced to Crown Point, from whence he proceeded to invest Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by 3,000 men under Gen. St. Clair. Up to this period, a circumstance respecting this fort seems strangely to have been overlooked. It is commanded by an eminence near, called Mount Defiance. The troops of Burgoyne got possession of this height on the 5th of July, and St. Clair, finding the post no longer tenable, evacuated it on the same night.

5. The garrison, separated into two divisions, were to proceed through Hubbardton to Skeenesborough. The first, under St. Clair, left the fort in the night, two hours earlier than the second, under Colonel Francis. The stores and baggage, placed on board 200 batteaux, and convoyed by five armed galleys, were to meet the army at Skeenesborough.

6. General Frazer, with 850 of the British, pursued

P.T. III.

P.D. II.

CH. V.

June 20.

Burgoyne at the river Boquet.

Battle of Oriskany

Herkimer's defeat.

Am. loss, 400.

Aug. 6.

Aug. 22.

St. Leger returns to Montreal.

June 30.

Burgoyne at Crown Point

July 5.

The British take Ticonderoga.

3. Describe the route of St. Leger? When, and by whom, was the battle of Oriskany fought? What was the American loss? — 4. By what means was St. Leger forced to return? By what means did Burgoyne get possession of Ticonderoga? — 5. What arrangements were made for the retreat of St. Clair's army? — 6. Give an account of the disaster at Hubbardton?

P'T. II. and attacked the division at Hubbardton, whose rear  
 P'D. II. was commanded by Colonel Warner. The American  
 CH. V. made a brave resistance, but the British, in the  
 1777. heat of the action, receiving a reinforcement, the re-  
 July 7. publicans were forced to give way. They fled in  
 Am. loss, every direction, spreading through the country the  
 k., w. terror of the British arms. Many of the wounded  
 and pris., perished in the woods.  
 nearly  
 1000.

7. A part of the stores and armed galleys, which  
 Br. loss, had been sent up the lake, fell into the hands of the  
 k. 130. British. St. Clair, on hearing of these disasters, struck  
 July 12. into the woods on his left. He was joined by the  
 St. Clair, remnant of the vanquished division, conducted by  
 reaches Colonel Warner. After a distressing march, he  
 Ft. Ed- reached the camp of General Schuyler, at Fort Ed-  
 ward. ward. Warner, with a detachment, remained in Man-  
 Aug. 13. chester. Burgoyne took possession of Skeenesborough.  
 Gen. Schuyler, with the American army, retired from Fort  
 Schuyler at the Edward to Saratoga, and from thence to the islands at  
 Mo- the mouth of the Mohawk.  
 hawk.

8. General Schuyler had obstructed the roads, by  
 Gates breaking the bridges, and, in the only passable defiles,  
 more po- by cutting immense trees on both sides of the way, to  
 pular, fall cross and lengthwise... General Gates was ap-  
 super- pointed to supersede General Schuyler in the com-  
 sedes mand. Lincoln, Arnold, and Morgan, were sent north,  
 Schuy- which encouraged volunteers to join the army. The  
 ler. celebrated patriot of Poland, Kosciusko, was also in  
 the army, as its chief engineer.

9. Burgoyne, having with much labor and time,  
 July 30. opened a way for his army, arrived at Fort Edward on  
 Bur- the 30th of July, but he was in want of supplies.  
 goyne Learning that there was a large depôt of provisions at  
 reaches Bennington, he sent 500 men, under Lieut. Col. Baum,  
 Ft. Ed- a German officer, to seize them. General Stark, with  
 ward. a body of New Hampshire and Vermont militia, was  
 Col. on his march to join General Schuyler. He met the  
 Baum at Ben-  
 nington.

7. What became of St. Clair's division? Of Col. Warner's?  
 Where was now Burgoyne? Where was Gen. Schuyler?—8.  
 What popular officers now joined the army?—9. What de-  
 tachment did Burgoyne send out? Where was Gen. Stark?  
 Give an account of the battle of Bennington.

British force four miles from Bennington. Baum was killed, and his party defeated. The militia had dispersed, to seek for plunder, when a British reinforcement of 500 men arrived. The Green Mountain Boys, under Colonel Warner, appeared at the same time, and the British were again defeated, and compelled to retreat.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. V.  
**1777.**  
Aug. 26.  
British  
loss 600

10. Miss M'Crea of Fort Edward, was engaged in marriage to Capt. Jones, an officer of Burgoyne's army. She left her father's house by stealth, and for this wrong step, she paid a direful penalty. The Indians whom she accompanied, and whom Capt. Jones had first sent, met in the woods a second party, whom he had unwisely dispatched to aid the first. They quarreled; each determining to conduct the lady to their employer. The first party, finding the second likely to succeed, tied her to a tree and shot her.

The  
murder  
of Miss  
M'Crea.

11. When this tragic affair became known; it greatly excited the minds of the people against the British, who had thus let loose the cruel savages upon the land; and there was now a general rising, and rush to the camp of Gates. The army thus reinforced,—encouraged by the victory of Bennington, and now amounting to 5,000, Gates left the encampment at the islands, and advancing to Stillwater, occupied Behm's heights.

Sept. 8.  
Gates  
encamps  
at Sara-  
toga.

12. On the 12th, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, and on the 14th, encamped at Saratoga, about three miles distant from the American army. An obstinate and bloody battle occurred at Stillwater on the 19th. Both sides claimed the victory; but the advantage was clearly on the side of the Americans. Skirmishes, frequent and animated, occurred between this and the 7th of October, when a general battle was fought at Saratoga.

Sept. 19  
Bur-  
goyne  
defeated  
at Still-  
water.

Oct. 7.  
British  
defeated  
at Sar-  
toga.

13. The Americans made the attack. The battle was fierce and desperate. The British gave way in

Loss  
great on  
both  
sides.

10. Relate the story of Miss M'Crea? — 11. What effect did it produce on the public mind? What advance movement was made by Gates? — 12. What by Burgoyne? Where did the armies meet and contend? Which had the advantage? When and where was a great and decisive battle fought? — 13. Why could not Burgoyne retreat? What did he do on the 17th of Oct.?



P.T. III. fifty minutes. That short time decided great events.  
 P.D. II. The loss was severe in killed and wounded, on both  
 CH. VI. sides. The British lost Gen. Frazer. Arnold had  
 1777. greatly distinguished himself in the battle, and was  
 Frazer is severely wounded... Burgoyne made efforts to retreat;  
 killed. but he was hemmed in by a foe, whose army con-  
 stantly increasing, now amounted to four times his  
 own wasting numbers. He capitulated on the 17th of  
 October.

14. The whole number surrendered, amounted to  
 5,762 men. There also fell into the hands of the  
 Americans, 35 brass field pieces, and 5,000 muskets  
 Whole Br. loss, 9,000. It was stipulated that the British were to have free  
 Part passage across the Atlantic; but they were not to serve  
 from de- again in North America, during the war. On hearing  
 scription. of the defeat of Burgoyne, the British garrison at Ti-  
 conderoga returned to Canada, and not a foe remained  
 Garrison of Ti. in the northern section of the Union. Sir Henry  
 retreat to Clinton had sailed up the Hudson; but as Burgoyne  
 Canada. had failed, he returned to New York; having first  
 barbarously burned Esopus, now Kingston.

## CHAPTER VI.

Battle of Brandywine.—British in Philadelphia.—Germantown.

Howe lands at Elkton. 1. ADMIRAL and Gen. Howe, intent on the capture  
 of Philadelphia, left Sandy Hook on the 23d of July  
 They were long at sea. At length they were heard  
 Aug. 25. of, sailing up the Chesapeake. They disembarked their  
 Wash. troops, amounting to 18,000, at the head of the Bay  
 marches to meet him. Washington crossed the Delaware and marched to op-  
 pose them. Approaching the enemy, he encampe-

14. How many men were surrendered? How many pieces  
 of artillery? What did Sir Henry Clinton?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Trace on the map and describe the course  
 of Admiral Howe's fleet? What course did Washington take?

on the rising grounds which extend from Chad's Ford; and there, the shallow stream of the Brandywine, being between the armies, he awaited an attack from the British commander.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
OH. VI.

1777.

2. Early in the morning, the hostile army commenced the assault Washington had made, and partly executed, a plan which would probably have won the day; but in the heat of the action, his judgment was misled by false intelligence, and he lost the battle. Gen. Green here distinguished himself; as did the brave Polander, Pulaski. Gen. La Fayette, endeavouring to bring back the flying, to face again the enemy, received a wound in the leg. When in his old age, the country for whom he here shed his blood, conveyed him home an honored guest, returning from her shores, the new war-ship which carried him to France, was named from this battle, the Brandywine.

Sept. 11  
Brandy  
wine.  
Am. de-  
feat.  
or. loss,  
500.  
Am. loss,  
1,300.

3. Congress, finding themselves insecure in Philadelphia, adjourned to Lancaster, to which place the public archives and magazines were removed. A detachment of the British army, under Cornwallis, entered the American capital, while the main body, under Howe, took post at Germantown. The American army encamped at Skippack creek. Washington, knowing that Howe was weakened by detachments, left his camp at seven in the evening of Oct. 4th, and at dawn succeeded in giving the British a complete surprise. They at first retreated in disorder. Several companies having thrown themselves into a stone house, annoyed the Americans. A thick fog came on, and unable to distinguish friend from foe, confusion arose in the American ranks, and they lost the battle.

Sept.  
The  
British  
enter  
Phila.

Oct. 4.  
Ger-  
man-  
town.  
Am. loss  
k. 200.  
w. 600  
pris. 400

4. Congress had made it death to any citizen to furnish the enemy with food; and such was the spirit of the people, and the vigilance of the commander, that Howe now found his army in danger of starva-

Howe in  
danger of  
starving.

2. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine? Mention the loss on both sides? What officers distinguished themselves? What vessel was named after this battle? — 3. What movement did Congress make? When did the British troops enter Philadelphia? Where were Generals Howe and Washington? Describe the battle of Germantown?

P.T. III. tion. To prevent this, he must open the navigation  
 P.D. II. of the Delaware, which had been obstructed by sunken  
 CH. VI. ranges of frames, and by forts on Mud Island, Red  
 1777. Bank, and other places. Howe removed his army to  
 Ft. Mer- Philadelphia; and to open the navigation, he sent Col.  
 cer. Donop with a detachment of Hessians. They at-  
 Hessians tacked Fort Mercer on Red Bank, and were repulsed  
 lost 500. with heavy loss. At length, however, the British sent  
 Opens against it such a force, that the Americans evacuated  
 the navi- it. The British fleet then passed up the Delaware to  
 gation. Philadelphia. Much of the American shipping in the  
 river was burnt; and the remainder fell into the hands  
 of the enemy.

5. Washington now retired to winter-quarters at  
 Valley Forge. The huts for the camp were not com-  
 pleted, when the magazines were found to contain  
 scarcely a single day's provision. As to clothing,—  
 they were destitute, almost to nakedness. Barefooted,  
 on the frozen ground,—their feet cut by ice,—they  
 left their tracks in blood. A few only had a blanket  
 at night. Straw could not be obtained, and the sol-  
 diers, who, during the day, were benumbed with cold,  
 and enfeebled by hunger, had at night no other bed  
 than the damp ground. Diseases attacked them; and  
 the hospitals were replenished, as rapidly as the dead  
 were carried out.

6. This melancholy state of the army was owing to  
 the condition of the finances. Congress had carried  
 on the war thus far, by making a great quantity of  
 paper money. That is, they had issued notes in the  
 name of the government, promising to pay the holders  
 such and such sums. If the government had possessed  
 gold and silver enough actually to pay these notes,  
 whenever they were presented, then they would have

4. What was the condition of the British army? What was  
 now Howe's object? What measures did he take? Did he suc-  
 ceed? — 5. Where did Washington make winter-quarters? As  
 to the condition of the army, had they food? Had they clothing?  
 Had they shoes? What was their lodging at night? What the  
 state of their health? — 6. How had congress thus far carried  
 on the war? Give some account of the "continental money" as  
 their bills were termed. Why did people become unwilling to  
 take it?



been good money, like the bills of good banks. But they had no specie; and the country became over-run with this paper. People began to think it doubtful whether it ever would be redeemed; and then they did not wish to take it. Its market value had depreciated to one-quarter: that is, for an article, valued at one dollar, must be paid of this money four dollars.

F.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VI.

1777.

1-4 below par.

7. But the people, who had such articles to sell, as the army needed, would not sell them, and take for pay this paper money at par. Congress on the other hand would not allow their agents to part with it below par, and the country was so poor, they had nothing else to give. The consequence was, that they could not now provide either food or clothing, for the army. The pay of the officers was not sufficient to provide them the necessaries of life. Those who had fortunes were spending, or had already spent them. Those who had not, were in a state of actual suffering. Many resigned;—not merely the worthless,—but often, the bravest and the best.

Congress have no other

The army suffers.

8. Amidst the grief and care, to which the commander was thus subjected, a cabal was stirred up, to prejudice the minds of the people against him; and thus to get his office for Gen. Gates. The most active agent of the plot, was Gen. Conway. Even congress so far gave way as to appoint this man inspector-general. Washington, in the calmness of his righteous mind, turned not aside from his public duties, to notice his private enemies. But the people took his part; and, the more for this magnanimity. The army were so indignant, that at length, all who had been engaged in the plot, whatever had been their former services, were now afraid of their resentment, and kept out of the way. Gen Conway's office, was given to the Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer.

Shameful cabal against W.

An example of magnanimity.

9. Laws were passed which meliorated the condition of the army. The officers were allowed half-

---

6 How much had it now depreciated?—7. Why could not the government agents procure things needful for the army? How was it with the officers?—8. How was the commander now treated? How did this vile treatment affect Washington,—the people, and the army?

**T. III.** pay for seven years after the close of the war. . . The  
**P'D. II.** Americans were successful in the depredations, which  
**CH. VI.** their swift sailing privateers made upon the British  
**Officers** commerce. With these they boldly scoured every sea,  
**provided** even those about the British islands. Since 1776,  
**for.** they had already captured 500 of the British vessels. . .  
**Success** Early in the season, Sir Henry Clinton arrived in Phil-  
**of Am.** adelphia, to supersede Sir William Howe.  
**priva-**  
**teers.**

**1778.** 10. The news of the capture of Burgoyne caused a  
**England** deep sensation in Europe. The English people were  
**in per-** astonished and afflicted. The FRENCH ACKNOW-  
**plexity.** LEDGED THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES.  
 A treaty of alliance was made, on the 6th of February,  
 by which it was stipulated that France and the United  
**France** States should make common cause; and that neither  
**makes a** party should make either peace or truce with England  
**treaty** without the consent of the other; and neither party lay  
**with the** down their arms, till the independence of the United  
**U. S.** States was secured. The American commissioners,  
**May.** Franklin, Deane, and Lee, were received at the court  
**A French** of France as the representatives of a sister nation. M.  
**minister** Gerard was appointed minister to the United States.  
**arrives** Dr. Franklin, still in France, was the following Sep-  
**with the** tember, made minister plenipotentiary.  
**treaty.**

**A** 11. The British now sent over three men, Carlisle,  
**plan un-** Eden, and Johnstone, under pretence of treating for  
**worthy a** peace; but, in reality, to plot secretly against the go-  
**great** vernment established in the United States; and to draw  
**uation.** off influential individuals, by direct bribery, and the  
 promises of wealth and titles for the future. Johnstone  
 offered to Gen. Reed, if he would aid the royal cause,  
 ten thousand pounds sterling, and any office in the co-  
 lonies within the king's gift. "I am not," said the  
 patriot, "worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the  
 king of England is not rich enough to buy me."

9. What law was passed? What success had the American privateers? By whom was Howe superseded? How did the English receive the news of Burgoyne's capture? What important result did the news produce in France? — 10. What arrangements were now made by France and the United States? — 11. What plan did the British government now resort to? How did Gen. Reed reply to the offer of Johnstone? — 12. How did congress treat these emissaries?

12. In some instances, Johnstone had the indiscretion to write. The offended patriots brought forward his letters, which contained the evidence of his base intrigues, and Congress indignantly forbade all farther communication.

P.T. III.  
P.T. II  
CH VII.

## CHAPTER VII.

Battle of Monmouth.—Seat of war transferred to the South.

1. THE British army, on the 18th of June evacuated Philadelphia, and, marching through New Jersey, now directed their course to New York. Washington left Valley Forge, and adding to his army the New Jersey militia, hung on the rear of the enemy, and brought them to action at Monmouth or Freehold. The advantage was on the side of the Americans. In the beginning of the battle, Gen. Lee was guilty of an inadvertence which endangered the whole army. Washington rebuked him sternly; for which, Lee afterwards wrote him insulting letters. A court martial censured Lee, and suspended him from his command.

1778  
June 28.  
Battle of  
Mon-  
mouth.  
Br. loss.  
700.  
Am. not  
so much.

2. The French now fitted out a fleet, which under the Count d'Estaing, left Toulon on the 18th of April, and arrived in America in June. Washington, in order to derive the utmost advantage from the presence of the French fleet, directed an expedition against the British forces at Newport, in Rhode Island. He detached a force of 10,000 troops under the command of Gen. Sullivan. By concert with Sullivan, d'Estaing arrived off Newport, on the 25th of July.

d'Es-  
taing and  
Sullivan  
sent to  
R. I.

3. On the 9th of August, Sullivan landed on the north end of Rhode Island. On the 10th, the fleet of

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the British army on the 18th of June? Give an account of the battle of Monmouth. — 2. What was now done by the French? What plan was conceived by Washington? — 3. What was done by Gen Sullivan? What caused the failure of the expedition?



P'T. III. Lord Howe appeared in sight, and d'Estaing left Sullivan to give chase to the British admiral. The crafty  
 P'D. II. Howe led him on, and both fleets were soon out of  
 CH. VII. sight. When he returned he was in so shattered a  
**1778.** condition, that he left Sullivan, in spite of his remon-  
 Admiral strances, to his fate. He narrowly, by good general  
 Howe ship, escaped falling with his whole army into the  
 outwits hands of the British. An engagement occurred be-  
 d'Es- tween the hostile armies, at Quaker Hill. These affairs  
 taing. caused Washington much trouble, as they irritated the  
 Quaker Americans against the French. . . In June occurred the  
 Hill. massacre at Wyoming, a well known delightful val-  
 Br. loss, ley on the banks of the Susquehannah. The perpe-  
 266. trators were a body of tories and Indians, led by Colo-  
 Am. loss, nel John Butler, a tory, and Brandt, a half-blooded  
 211. Indian.  
 June. Savan-  
 Massa- nah.  
 cre of  
 Wyom-  
 ing.

4. In their military operations, the enemy now  
 Dec. 27. placed their principal hope of success, in conquering  
 Am. loss, the southern states. Sir Henry Clinton sent to Georgia  
 k. 160, 2,500 men, commanded by Col. Campbell. Savannah  
 pris. 450, being unprepared for defense, he defeated the Ameri-  
 much ar- cans, and then took possession of the city. That part  
 tillery, of the American army which escaped, retreated into  
 etc. South Carolina. . . Washington took winter-quarters at  
 W. takes Middlebrook.  
 winter-  
 quarters.

**1779.** 5. The capital of Georgia being already in pos-  
 session of the British, they soon overran the adjacent  
 country. Gen. Prevost, commander of the troops at  
 St. Augustine, pursuant to the orders of Clinton, left  
 Georgia Florida, and, after having in his way taken Sunbury,  
 overrun. the only fort which held out for congress, he arrived  
 at Savannah, where he took the command. The  
 whole of Georgia was now under the authority of the  
 Tories royalists.

6. There were tories at the south, though not so  
 encouraged to rise.

3. What was the loss in the battle near Quaker Hill? Of what party were Butler and Brandt the leaders? Of what massacre were they the perpetrators? — 4. What did the enemy now regard as their principal plan of operations? What force was sent from New York? To what place? What was the American loss at Savannah? Where did the remainder of the army go? — 5. Give an account of the British movements in Georgia? — 6. Were there tories in the south?

many as the British had been led to believe. To encourage them, they moved up the river to Augusta. They sent out many persons to persuade them to take up arms immediately, promising them revenge on their opposers, and great rewards. The royalists rose, put themselves under the command of Col. Boyd, and, moving towards the British army, pillaged, burnt and murdered on their way. A Carolinian force, under Col. Pickens, met them, and after severe fighting, totally defeated them.

P.T. 111  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII

Col.  
Pickens  
defeats  
the Tories  
near  
Augusta.

7. Gen. Lincoln now took command of the southern forces, at Charleston. Intending to recover the upper part of Georgia, he detached Gen. Ashe, with 2,000 men, of the Carolina militia, to take post at a strong position, on Briar creek. Here he was completely surprised by Gen. Prevost. The militia fled, without firing a shot; but many of them were drowned in the river, and swallowed up in the marshes.

Lincoln  
at the  
south.

1779.  
Ashe de-  
feated at  
Briar c.  
March 3  
Am. loss  
1600.

8. Again the British were masters of all Georgia. Gen. Prevost now proceeded to organize a colonial government... He defeated the Americans under Gen. Moultrie, and compelled them to evacuate Black Swamp and Purysburg, in which they had placed garrisons. On the 11th of May he appeared before Charleston; but Gov. Rutledge, and Gen. Lincoln, successfully defended the city.

Prevost  
carries  
the war  
into S.C.  
May 11  
At  
Charles-  
ton.

9. In May, Sir H. Clinton sent out from New York a fleet, with a corps of 2,000 men, under Gen. Matthews, to ravage and subdue Virginia. Portsmouth, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Gosport, were barbarously burned. Failing in the grand object of producing a revolt, Clinton recalled his troops to New York... The British again planned to cut off in part the eastern states from the others, by getting the entire command of the waters of the Hudson. Gen. Clinton succeeded in taking the important forts at

British  
in Va.  
burn  
several  
towns

6. What happened to a party in arms? — 7. Who received the command of the southern army? What did he do? What detachment did he send out? What was its fate? What was the American loss? — 8. What were now the British operations in Georgia and Carolina? What happened at Charleston? — 9. Describe the descent made by Gen. Matthews upon Virginia.

P'T. III. Stony and Verplank's Points. The British, however,  
 P'D. II. were not more than six weeks in possession, before  
 5H. VIII. they were surprised at Stony Point by a detachment  
 1779. of the American army, ably commanded by Gen.  
 July 15. Wayne. His assault of Stony Point, was one of the  
 at Stony most brilliant successes of the war. Washington re-  
 Point. moved the artillery and munitions, dismantled and  
 Br. loss, abandoned the fort.  
 600.

Am. loss, 100. 10. The Connecticut privateers cut off the supplies  
 of the British at New York. Clinton sent a detach-  
 Tryon in ment under Tryon to New Haven, which destroyed  
 Conn. all the shipping in that port. Tryon then burned  
 burns several towns. Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich... To chastise the  
 Indians, Gen. Sullivan, with 3,000 troops, proceeded  
 up the Susquehannah. At Wyoming he was joined by  
 Aug. 29. a reinforcement of 1,600 men, under the command of  
 Sullivan defeats the Tories and Indians. James Clinton, of New York. The Indians and roy-  
 alists, under their ferocious leaders, Johnson, Butler,  
 and Brandt, had advanced to Newtown, and there  
 thrown up an entrenchment. Sullivan attacked and  
 defeated them, and laid waste their country.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Campaigns of 1779, and 1780.—The British conquer the South.

Oct 3. 1. By previous concert, the French fleet, and the  
 Unfor- army of Lincoln were to co-operate against the British  
 tunate force, under Prevost, now at Savannah. A bombard-  
 bom- ment was commenced by the allies. Fifty-three pieces  
 bard- of cannon, and nine mortars, sent an incessant shower  
 uent of balls and shells, and the city was on fire in many  
 of Savan-  
 nah.

9. What happened on the shores of the Hudson? — 10. What provocation had Conn. given to the British? How were the Indians chastised?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. What now were the French engaged in? What course was taken by d'Estaing? What did the allies agree to attempt? Give an account of the bombardment of Savannah.



places. The burning roofs fell upon the women, the children, and the unarmed multitude; and every where were seen the crippled, the wounded, and the dying. But the fort remained uninjured. It was then resolved to assault the town. The flower of the combined armies were led to a bloody and unsuccessful attack, by the two commanders, d'Estaing and Lincoln. Count Pulaski here fell. The allies, totally defeated, raised the siege.

P. R. III.  
P. D. II.  
CH. VIII.

1779.  
Fr. loss,  
700.  
Am. loss,  
400.

2. On the coast of Great Britain, Paul Jones, a native of Scotland, but commanding a small fleet in the service of the United States, attacked Capt. Pearson, the commander of an English fleet in convoy of merchant ships. This fierce battle occurred in the night; with the horrible circumstances of magazines of powder blowing up,—vessels taking fire, and sinking,—and the most shocking carnage. In some of the vessels, more than three quarters of the officers and men were killed. Jones finally prevailed.

Paul  
Jones'  
melan-  
choly  
victory

3. At the close of this year, a dollar in specie could scarcely be obtained for forty in continental bills. But, the paper was fluctuating in its value. Hence a set of men arose, who preferred speculating on this currency, to honest industry; and often in the changes which occurred, the worthless amassed sudden wealth, while many deserving persons of moderate fortunes, sunk at once to poverty. The honest individual of private life, will be surprised to learn another reason of the depreciation of American paper. England, on this occasion, turned counterfeiter. Her ministers sent over, and her generals distributed whole chests of spurious bills, so perfectly imitated, as scarcely to be distinguished from the true.

Public  
immo-  
rality  
caused  
by a fluc-  
tuating  
currency

England  
counter-  
feits  
money.

4. Washington took winter-quarters at Morris-town... Sir Henry Clinton, with 7,000 men, sailed in December from New York, and soon after his land-

Sir H.  
Clinton  
with  
7,000  
men at  
the  
south

1. Give an account of the assault? — 2. Who was Paul Jones? Give some account of his sea-fight? — 3. What was now the condition of the country in regard to the currency? What effect had it on the morals of the people? What had England done to aid in depreciating the currency? — 4. Where was Washington? Where did Sir Henry Clinton go?

P.T. III. ing, menaced Charleston. Gen. Lincoln removed  
 P.D. II. thither with his army; and in conjunction with Gov.  
 CH. VIII. Rutledge, tried every measure to put the city in a pos-  
 1780. ture of defense. But they had great difficulties to en-  
 counter. The militia had been disbanded; they were  
 Lincoln and Rut- dispirited, and afraid to enter Charleston on account  
 ledge. of the small-pox, which was there prevailing.

Their  
discour-  
agements.

Huger's  
defeat at  
Monk's  
corner.

May 12.  
Lincoln  
surren-  
ders his  
whole  
army.

5. Clinton commenced the siege on the 1st of April. On the 14th, a detachment of the American army, under Gen. Huger, was defeated at Monk's corner. Thus the only retreat of the army of Lincoln was cut off. On the 7th of May, Fort Moultrie was given up. Gen. Lincoln then surrendered his army; which consisted of seven general officers, ten continental regiments, and three battalions. Four hundred pieces of artillery, and four frigates fell into the hands of the enemy.

Clinton  
master of  
S. C.

6. After taking possession of the capital, Clinton's next object was to make himself master of the whole state. A corps of Carolinians, under Col. Buford, were in arms. Col. Tarleton, noted for rapid movement and unrelenting cruelty, was sent against him at the head of a body of cavalry. He came up with him at Waxhaw, defeated him, and barbarously slew his men, after they had laid down their arms, and while they were crying for quarter.

June 10.  
Returns  
to N. Y.

Many Carolinians flocked to the royal standard. Clinton wrote to England, that "South Carolina was English again." He published a full pardon to all who should immediately return to their duty. But they must take up arms in support of the royal cause. Gen. Clinton distributed his army into the most important garrisons, and leaving Lord Cornwallis in the command of the southern department, he returned to New York.

7. The winter had been so severe, that all the waters

---

4. What was the condition of Charleston in regard to defense against invasion? — 5. What advantages were gained by the British previous to the 8th of May? What was surrendered? — 6. What was Clinton's next object? Who were in arms? Give an account of Tarleton? Of the engagement? What was at this time the position of affairs in South Carolina?

about New York were frozen...Springfield, in New Jersey had been burned by the Hessian army.

P'T. III.

P'D. II.  
CH. VIII

8. Congress now decided, that in future, the continental bills should pass, not at the value indicated by the note, but at such a rate as people were willing to allow. ... In Carolina, and Georgia, the British treated all those who adhered to the republic, with great severity. Against their agreement, they were about to compel them to fight in their armies. They then said, "If we must fight, it shall be for America and our friends, not for England and strangers."

Congress sanctions the depreciation of their bills.

Southern patriots.

9. The women of Carolina, refused their presence at every scene of gaiety. Like the daughters of captive Zion, they would not amuse their conquerors. But, at every hazard, they honored, with their attention, the brave defenders of their country. Sisters encouraged their brothers,—the mother her son, and the wife her husband; and their parting advice was, "prefer prisons to infamy, and death to servitude."

1780.

Heroism of the women of South Carolina.

10. In every part of the nation that fire of patriotism rekindled, which burned so brightly, in the beginning of the revolution. The militia and the men of capital, came forward with alacrity. The women, with Martha Washington at their head, formed an industrious society, to make clothing for the soldiers. All seemed ready to contribute, in such ways as they could, to the common cause.

Renewal of patriotism.

The wife of the commander.

11. At this period, La Fayette, who, by leave of Congress had visited France, returned with the cheering intelligence, that a considerable body of French troops had embarked for America. The fleet soon arrived, bearing 6,000 soldiers, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. To prevent contention, it was arranged that Gen. Washington should be the

La Fayette returns.

July 10.  
A Fr. squadron arrives.

---

7. Was the winter of 1779-80 severe? What was done in New Jersey by the Hessians? — 8. How were the men of the south treated? What did they say? — 9. What was the conduct of the women of the south? — 10. How did the same spirit manifest itself throughout the nation — 11. At what time did the French squadron arrive? What number of troops came over? Who commanded the French troops? Who commanded the whole allied army?



P'T. III. commander-in-chief of all the forces, both French and American.

P'D. II.  
CH. VIII.

1780.

Partisan  
officers  
and men.

Sumpter  
defeats  
the Br. at  
Hanging  
Rock.

Baron de  
Kalb en-  
ters N.  
C. with a  
force,  
and is  
joined by  
Gates.

He is  
joined by  
many.

Aug. 16.  
Am. de-  
feated at  
Camden.

Am. loss,  
2000.  
Br. loss,  
324.

Death of  
de Kalb.

12. The insolence of the British troops had aroused the people of North and South Carolina. Among the partisan officers, who headed the resolute parties which were formed, none rendered such distinguished services as Cols. Sumpter and Marion. Their men were such as were contented to serve their country, half-clothed, half-fed, and half-armed, rather than submit to lose the rights of freemen. Frequent skirmishes with the British, at length, furnished muskets and cartridges; and Col. Sumpter, whose numbers now amounted to 600 men, assaulted the strong post of Rocky Mount, where he was repulsed; he then attacked, and destroyed a British regiment at Hanging Rock.

13. A few regular troops, under the command of the Baron de Kalb, had been sent from Maryland to the defense of Carolina. At Deep River they were joined, on the 25th of July, by Gen. Gates, who had been appointed to the command of the southern army. He advanced towards South Carolina with a force, now amounting to about 4,000 men. Multitudes flocked to join Gates, among whom were whole companies, which had been levied for the service of the king.

14. Lord Rawdon, who had the command of the British forces of Carolina, had concentrated them at Camden, where he was joined by Cornwallis. The hostile armies, each making an attempt to surprise the other, met in the darkness of night. Waiting, by mutual consent, for the dawn, they drew up their men for the fight. The American militia fled, and the regulars could not sustain the unequal strife. Gen. Gregory was killed in this disastrous and bloody battle; the Baron de Kalb was mortally wounded. All theartil-

12. What distinguished partisan officers appeared at the south? What kind of men composed their parties? Who was successful at Hanging Rock?—13. Who was sent from Maryland? Who joined him? How large was the southern army? How was the army further enlarged?—14. Where and under whom were the British forces? Describe the meeting of the armies—the arrangements of the generals? Describe the battle of Camden. When did it occur? What was the loss?

lery, baggage, and stores, fell into the hands of the enemy. P'T. III.

15. After this disastrous defeat, Gen. Gates retreated to North Carolina, leaving the British triumphant in the south. Col. Sumpter, on learning the defeat of Gates, retired with 300 men to North Carolina. Tarleton, with his legion, surprised him on the banks of Fishing Creek. Sumpter, with a few of his men, escaped; but most of them were taken by Tarleton, and put to the sword. Marion, who about this time was promoted to the rank of brigadier general, still kept the field. P'D. II.  
CH. IX.  
**1780**  
Aug. 18.  
Tarleton  
defeats  
Sumpter  
at Fish-  
ing  
Creek.  
General  
Marion.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Arnold's Treason.

1. ARNOLD did not fully recover from the wounds which he received in the battle of Saratoga. Not being able to take the field, he was, by his own request, made commandant of Philadelphia. Here, he indulged in high play, and extravagance of living; by which he expended more than his income. When he found that this was the case, had he possessed the good sense and moral courage to retrench his expenses, and give up the vicious habit of gaming, much disgrace and suffering might have been spared. Arnold  
becomes  
extrava-  
gant.

2. But instead of this, he kept on in these expensive courses; and set himself to devise expedients, to get the required money. In presenting his accounts to the government, he made dishonest charges; and when they were challenged, he attempted to carry Extrava-  
gance  
breeds  
disho-  
nesty.

15. What did General Gates? What officer yet made head in South Carolina? What misfortune did he meet? Who yet kept the field?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Give an account of Arnold? When he found his expenses exceeded his income what ought he to have done? — 2. Into what measures did his extravagance lead him? How were his dishonest accounts received?

P'T. III. them through, by bluster and bravado. In the end  
 P'D. II. these accounts were disallowed; he was tried, for his  
 CH. IX. disrespectful language and behaviour to those in au-  
 1780. thority; and by the sentence of a court martial, reprimanded by Washington.

Revenge and treason follow. 3. Revenge was now added to avarice; and Arnold addressed a letter to Col. Robinson at New York, opening, by this means, a negotiation with Sir Henry Clinton, in which he sold himself to the British to do their bidding, for the sum of ten thousand pounds, and a commission in the British army.

The price of himself and his country's blood. 4. Instigated by Clinton, he sought and obtained of Washington the command of the fortress at West Point. His first measure was to scatter the army, so that it might be easily cut off by the British. Major André, the young and interesting aid-de-camp of Gen Clinton, had been by him intrusted to plan with Arnold, how the army might be put into the power of the British.

He obtains the command at West Point. Major André. 5. To concert their last measures, André met Arnold a little below Stony Point. They spent the whole night in conference; and when the day dawned, their arrangements were not all concluded. André was kept in close concealment through the day, and at night he prepared to return. By the entreaties of Arnold, he was prevailed upon to change his uniform for a common dress.

Sept. 21. They have a personal interview. 6. It became necessary for him to proceed towards New York by land. He took a horse from Arnold, and a passport, under the name of John Anderson. Having safely passed the American guard, and reached Tarrytown, near the British posts, three soldiers of the militia crossed his way, and he passed on. One of them thought the traveller had something peculiar in his appearance, and called him back. André inquired, "where are you from?" "From below," (intending

André is taken by three soldiers.

2. What was done by a court martial? — 3. What did Arnold's fierce passions next lead him to? For what did he sell himself? 4. What command did he obtain? Why did he scatter the army? Whom did Sir Henry Clinton authorize to plan with Arnold the delivery of the army? — 5. Relate the circumstances of the interview? — 6. Relate the circumstances of André's seizure?



to be understood from New York,) replied the soldiers. "So am I," said the self-betrayed André. The soldiers arrested him.

P.T. III.

P.D. II.

CH. IX.

7. André plead earnestly to be released, and offered large sums of money; but the humble patriots spurned the bribe, and were deaf to the entreaty. Their names were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wert. They searched his person, and found papers in his boots, in the hand-writing of Arnold, which disclosed the treason. They immediately conducted

1780

Paulding  
Wil-  
liams,  
and Van  
Wert.

André to Col. Jameson, the officer, who commanded the advanced guard, near Peekskill. This officer could not be persuaded that his general was a traitor, and he permitted André to write to him. Arnold seized a boat and escaped.

They  
take him  
to the  
nearest  
Ameri-  
can fort

7. What did André? What were the names of the three who seized him? What further happened to André and Arnold?

P.T. III. 8. Washington summoned a court martial, of which  
 P.D. II. Greene and La Fayette were members. André appear-  
 CH. IX. ed before his judges with a noble frankness. He dis-  
 guised no fact, and resorted to no subterfuge. His  
 judges, according to the usages of war, were com-  
 pelled to sentence him to death as a spy. He was  
 accordingly led from his prison to the gallows.

Oct. 2.  
Execu-  
tion of  
André.

9. After the battle of Camden, Lord Cornwallis  
 marched into North Carolina. He had sent before  
 him Col. Ferguson with a body of troops. They had  
 committed such shocking outrages, that the people,  
 highly exasperated, had collected in great numbers,  
 under several commanders, the principal of whom  
 were Campbell and Shelby. They attacked Ferguson  
 on a woody eminence, called King's Mountain. He  
 was killed and his party totally defeated.

Oct. 7.  
Defeat of  
the Br. at  
King's  
Moun-  
tain.  
Br. loss  
300.

Cornwal-  
lis re-  
treats to  
S. C.

Affair at  
Black-  
stocks.

Dec 2.  
Gates is  
super-  
seded by  
Greene.

Arnold  
makes a  
descent  
upon  
Virginia.

10. This was a severe blow to Cornwallis, and ren-  
 dered his situation in North Carolina precarious.  
 Cols. Sumpter and Marion were on the alert, and his  
 troops were in continual danger of being surprised by  
 these active leaders. He therefore retired to South  
 Carolina, and stationed his army at Winnsborough.

11. Tarleton was sent in pursuit of Sumpter. He  
 attacked him at Blackstocks, but was compelled to  
 retreat. Sumpter being dangerously wounded, his  
 forces were disbanded. Gen. Gates was now super-  
 seded by Gen. Greene. This officer found the army at  
 Charlottetown.

12. Gen. Leslie, with 1,500 men, having joined  
 Cornwallis at Winnsborough, his hopes of reducing  
 North Carolina and Virginia were renewed. Arnold,  
 whom the British had made a brigadier-general, had  
 been sent to the Chesapeake. He landed 1600 men in  
 Virginia, and commenced, what now seemed his favo-  
 rite employment, the devastation of his country.

---

8. What course did Washington pursue? What was the fate  
 of André?—9. Describe the operations of the British? Who  
 had committed outrages? Who were the leaders of the people?  
 Describe the affair of King's Mountain?—10. Why did Corn-  
 wallis now retire to South Carolina?—11. Give an account of  
 the affair at Blackstocks? By whom was Gates superseded?  
 Where did Green find the army?—12. What can you relate of  
 Arnold?

## CHAPTER X.

Robert Morris.—Revolt of the Pennsylvania line.—Cornwallis at the South.

1. It is scarcely possible to conceive a situation more trying than that of the American Congress. They were striving, not for conquest, but for existence; their powerful foe was in full strength, in the heart of their country; they had great military operations to carry on, but were almost without an army, and wholly without money, as their bills of credit had ceased to be of any value.

P.T. III

P.D. II  
CH. X.1780.  
Perplexities of  
congress.

2. But instead of sinking in despair, they redoubled their exertions. They directed their agents abroad to borrow, if possible, from France, Spain, and Holland. They resorted to taxation, and they determined on introducing thorough reform, and strict economy. They accordingly appointed as treasurer, the excellent Robert Morris, of Philadelphia. By a national bank, to which he obtained the approbation of congress, he contrived to draw out the funds of wealthy individuals; and by borrowing, in the name of the government from this bank, and pledging freely his private credit, he once more put the government in funds. Franklin had obtained from Louis XVI. a gift of six millions of livres; and his guarantee to the States General of Holland, which, on this security, lent to congress the sum of ten millions of livres.

They lay  
a direct  
tax to  
raise  
money.Morris  
founds  
the first  
national  
bank.Franklin  
obtains  
money  
from  
France  
and  
Holland

3. Before these measures had imparted vigor to the fainting republic, an event occurred which threatened its subversion. The Pennsylvania line, amounting to near 1,500 men, were suffering the extremity of want. A violent tumult broke out on the night of the 1st of January. The soldiers declared that they would march, with arms in their hands, to the hall of congress, and demand justice. It was in vain that their

1781.  
Jan. 1.  
Revolt of  
the Pa.  
line

CHAPTER X.—1. What difficulties had congress to encounter? — 2. What course did they take? Whom did they make treasurer? What measures did Morris adopt? What had Franklin obtained? — 3. Give an account of the mutiny of Jan. 1781?



P.T. III. officers attempted to appease them. Their most popular leader, La Fayette, was constrained to quit the camp. Gen. Wayne presented himself boldly among them, with a pistol in his hand, but they menaced his life, and pointed their bayonets, as if to execute their threats.

1781.

Jan.

A pacific course advised by Washington and adopted by congress.

Clinton's emissaries hanged.

New Jersey troops revolt and are punished.

Greene separates the southern army into two divisions.

Jan. 17. Battle of the Cowpens. Br. loss, 800.

Am. loss, 12 k., 60 wounded

Morgan pursued by Cornwallis.

4. Sir Henry Clinton, informed of these affairs, sent three American loyalists, to make them the most tempting offers. The commissioners of congress offered them at the same time, the earliest possible payment of arrears, an immediate supply of necessary clothing, and an oblivion of past conduct. The mutineers accepted these proposals; and congress, in due time, fulfilled the conditions. The Pennsylvanians then delivered up the emissaries of Clinton, who were immediately hanged. The troops of New Jersey next erected the standard of revolt. Washington marched against them with so powerful a force, that he compelled them to submit; and chastising their leaders with severity, the army was no longer disturbed by sedition.

5. Gen. Greene separated the southern army, which consisted of 2,000 men, into two parts; and at the head of one division he encamped at the confluence of Hicks' creek with the Pedee; while Col. Morgan, at the head of the other, moved by his direction into the western part of the state.

6. Cornwallis detached Tarleton, who finding Morgan's division at a place called the Cowpens, attacked with his usual impetuosity. After one of the severest and best fought engagements of the whole war, the British were entirely defeated, with heavy loss.

7. Cornwallis pursued the victorious party. Each army made exertions to reach the fords of the Catawba, before the other. Morgan succeeded; having crossed the river two hours only, when the British

---

3. What was done to overawe and what to appease the mutineers? — 4. What did Sir H. Clinton? How was the difficulty settled? What was done to Clinton's emissaries? What happened in regard to the troops of New Jersey? — 5. How did Gen. Greene proceed in regard to the southern forces? — 6. Relate the affair of the Cowpens, mentioning the loss? 7. Give an account of the race between the two armies?

appeared on the opposite bank. Night came on, heavy rain fell, and Cornwallis was obliged to wait three days before the subsiding waters allowed him to pass. Greene here joined Morgan, having left Gen. Huger in command. Another race was begun, from the Catawba to the Yadkin. Again the British commander arrived just as the Americans had crossed, and again the waters rose, so that he could not immediately follow them.

P<sup>T</sup>. III.  
P<sup>D</sup>. II.  
CH. XI.  
1781.  
Another  
race  
from the  
Catawba  
to the  
Yadkin.

8. Gen. Greene marched to Guilford, where he was joined by the forces under Gen. Huger. Cornwallis proceeded to the Dan; intending, by reaching these fords before the Americans, to prevent their communication with Virginia. In this, also, he was disappointed.

Feb. 9.  
The two  
divisions  
unite.

9. Greene's army had been augmented to 4,400. He now advanced upon his enemy, and took post at Guilford Court House, about eight miles from the British general. The armies met on the 15th of March. The American regulars fought for an hour and a half, with great bravery, and in some instances forced the British to give way. They were, however, at length compelled to retreat, but it was only step by step, and without breaking their ranks. Cornwallis, after a few days repose, marched towards Wilmington; and from thence into Virginia, to co-operate with Arnold, in subduing that state. Greene proceeded towards Camden in South Carolina.

Mar. 15.  
Battle of  
Guilford  
C. H.  
Am. loss,  
1,360.  
Br. loss,  
probably  
more.

## CHAPTER XI.

Campaign of 1781.--Battle of Eutaw Springs.--Cornwallis taken.

1. LORD RAWDON, whom Cornwallis had left to command in Carolina, fixed his head-quarters at Cam-

8. Where was General Greene joined by the forces under Huger? Give a further account of the movements of Cornwallis?—9. Give an account of the battle of Guilford Court House. Where did Cornwallis then go? Where did Greene?

P'T. III. den. Gen. Greene advanced to Hobkirk's Hill, within  
 P'D. II. a mile of Camden, where he entrenched his army.  
 CH. XI. Here the Americans carelessly suffered themselves to  
 1781. be surprized in the night by Lord Rawdon. By good  
 Battle of generalship, Greene came near defeating the British;  
 Hob- but the advantage in the encounter, was at last with  
 kirk's H. the enemy. Greene retired five miles, and encamped.  
 loss near-ly 300 on each side.

Rawdon leaves Camden. May 10. 2. Rawdon however, found his army weakened, and the inhabitants, in every direction, rising against him. On the 10th of May he evacuated Camden, and retreated towards Charleston. In two months, most of the upper forts of the British, were either abandoned or taken by the Americans. Marion, Sumpter, and Lee, took three of the forts, and 800 prisoners.

Hostilities suspended. 3. Lord Rawdon now established his camp at Orangeburg. Greene pursued him; but finding his position covered by the windings of the Edisto, he bent his march, on the 16th, to the heights which border the Santee. The season proved uncommonly hot and sickly, and the contending armies, by tacit consent suspended their operations. . . A tragic scene occurred about this time at Charleston, which greatly irritated the Carolinians. Col. Isaac Hayne was executed, without even the form of a trial, by order of Lord Rawdon and Col. Balfour.

Sept. 8. Battle of Eutaw Springs. Br. loss, 1,000. Am. 600. 4. Gen. Greene crossed the Congaree, and descended along its right bank, intending to attack Col. Stuart, who had succeeded Lord Rawdon in command. This officer fell back upon Eutaw Springs, and thither Gen. Greene pursued him. The armies engaged on the 8th. The battle of Eutaw Springs, is memorable as being one of the most bloody, and valiantly contested fields of the war; and also for being the last of any note that occurred at the south. Greene's army in the first encounter, routed the British, but they found

CHAPTER XI.—1. How were the armies in South Carolina now situated? Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill? —2. What was Rawdon's situation after the battle? 3. Where did each army now move, and where rest for a season? What measure of the British incensed the Carolinians? —4. Give an account of the movements of the armies? Give an account of the battle which now occurred? Why was the battle of Eutaw Springs memorable?



in their flight a house, and other sheltering objects, where they made a stand and rallied. Greene withdrew, bearing to his camp 500 prisoners. He with his officers received the thanks of Congress. The British no longer dared to keep the open country, but retired to Charleston. The whole of South Carolina and Georgia, except their capitals, was recovered.

5. La Fayette, at the head of 1,200 light infantry, was now dispatched by Washington towards Virginia, while a French fleet from Rhode Island, was sent out to cut off the retreat of Arnold from the Chesapeake. But Clinton sent Admiral Arbuthnot, who fought the French off Cape Henry, and obliged them to return. Clinton, sent Gen. Philips, with 2,000 men, to assist Arnold. La Fayette arrived in time to save Richmond; but he witnessed from that place, the conflagration of Manchester, on the opposite bank of the James.

6. Cornwallis went to Petersburg, and was there met by Arnold. He then moved the whole army into the interior of Virginia, hoping to overrun and subjugate the state. He harassed the country by sending out his light troops, especially those under Tarleton. They on one occasion, came near taking prisoner Mr. Jefferson, then governor of the state. But he secreted himself, and escaped.

7. Cornwallis was suddenly recalled to the sea-coast, by an order from Sir Henry Clinton. Fearing that the Americans and French meditated an attack on New York, he had directed Cornwallis to embark 2,000 of his troops for that city. He marched with his army to Portsmouth, where he received counter orders. Clinton having had a reinforcement, he believed he could dispense with further aid; but he ordered Cornwallis to remain upon the coast. This general marched to Yorktown, which he proceeded to fortify.

8. Washington had learned that a French fleet with a large force under the Count de Grasse was to

P.T. III.

P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

1781.

Am. re-  
gain the  
country.La Fayette  
sent  
to Va.Mar. 16.  
Naval  
battle.  
Fr. and  
English  
fleets.Man-  
chester  
burned.Corn-  
wallis  
and  
Arnold  
unite.Sir H.  
Clinton  
recalls  
Corn-  
wallis.  
Remands  
his  
order.Aug. 23  
Corn-  
wallis  
enters  
York-  
town

1. What was now the condition of the British in South Carolina? — 5.—6. What was done in and near Virginia? — 7. Why was Cornwallis recalled to the sea-coast? Where did he fortify?

8. What fleet did Washington expect?

**P.T. III** arrive in the Chesapeake. He concerted measures with  
**P.D. II.** Count Rochambeau, the French commander in the  
**CH. XI.** United States. The allied force was concentrated in  
**1781.** the neighbourhood of New York. Sir Henry Clinton  
 Wash- believed they meant to attack him there. He was sur-  
 ington's grand  
 manoeuvre. prised to learn that Washington had directed their  
 Allied march south, through New Jersey; but supposed it a  
 armies go to take  
 to take Corn-  
 wallis. wallis. forces had gone to take Cornwallis; and had so got  
 the start of Clinton, that he could not now hinder  
 them.

**De** 9. The Count de Grasse, with twenty-five sail of  
**Grasse** the line, entered the mouth of the Chesapeake, only  
**enters** one hour before Washington arrived at the head of  
**and** Elk, and immediately performed the part assigned to  
**blocks** him, by blocking up the mouths of the York and  
**up the** James rivers; thus cutting off all communication be-  
**Chesa-** tween the British at Yorktown and New York. A  
**neake.** French squadron from Rhode Island got safely by the  
 British fleet, and brought the artillery necessary for the  
 siege.

**1781** 10. Clinton, vainly hoping to make a diversion in  
**Sept. 6** favor of Cornwallis, sent the traitor Arnold, lately  
**Fort** returned from Virginia, to ravage Connecticut. The  
**Gris-** garrison of fort Griswold, in Groton, near New Lon-  
**wold.** don, being attacked, made a resolute defense. At length  
 they were overpowered. As the British entered, an  
 officer inquired, "who commands this fort?" "I did,"  
 said Col. Ledyard, "but you do now;" and presented  
 his sword. The monster took it, and plunged it in  
 his bosom. Scarcely was there a father of a family,  
 in the little town of Groton, but was that night  
 butchered; and almost its entire population became  
 widows and orphans. New London was then burned.

11. By the aid of the French fleet, Washington had

8. With whom did Washington take counsel? Where were the allied forces concentrated? What did Clinton suppose? What in the mean time did Washington do?—9. What fleet arrived? Where? When? What did it perform? How were the allies supplied with artillery?—10. What diversion did Clinton attempt to make in favor of Cornwallis? Relate the capture of fort Griswold? What was the traitor's next exploit?

effected the removal of his army and stores from the head of Elk. The whole force amounted to 16,000; 7,000 of whom were French. The allies commenced their works at Yorktown, on the night of the 6th of October. On the 14th, two redoubts in advance of the English main works were taken; the one by the Americans under La Fayette and Col. Hamilton, and the other by the French, under the Baron Viomesnil.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. XI.

Oct. 14.  
Two re-  
doubts  
taken.

12. Cornwallis had confidently expected aid from Clinton, but becoming discouraged, he made an effort to escape, by crossing the river in the night. His army were to embark in three divisions:—a part had already crossed, and landed at Gloucester Point; a part were upon the river; the third division alone had not embarked. The air and the water were calm, and his hopes of escape were high. In a moment, the sky was overcast, and a tempest arose. The very elements seemed armed against him, as if he was checked by an Invisible Power, which watched over the American people. At dawn, the besiegers opened a destructive fire upon him, and he was glad, when the abating tempest allowed, to return to his almost dismantled fortifications.

1781.  
Corn-  
wallis at-  
tempts to  
escape

13. Seeing no hope, the general on the 17th, sent a flag to Washington, and the terms of surrender were immediately agreed on. A sloop, laden with such persons as Cornwallis selected, was to be allowed to pass, without search or visit, to New York. The whole remaining British force was to be surrendered to the allies; the land army, with its munitions, to the Americans; the marine, to the French.

October  
17 to 19  
Number  
surren-  
dered  
7,000.  
Cannon  
60.  
To the  
French  
2 frigates  
20 trans-  
ports.

14. This event caused a burst of joy throughout America. Nor did the people, or the civil rulers, amidst the honors, which were showered upon the

Rejoic-  
ings,  
public  
and  
devout

---

11. How was Washington enabled to remove his army and stores? What was the number of the combined army? What was done, and by whom, on the night of the 14th? — 12. What reflections might Cornwallis naturally make? — 13. What step did Cornwallis now take? What were the most important of the terms of surrender? What was surrendered to the Americans? What to the French? How did this surrender affect the Americans?



P'T. III. American and French commanders, forget to acknowledge their supreme obligation, to the GREAT COMMANDER and RULER, of armies, and of nations.

**1781.** 15. Gen. La Fayette, who had sought America in her adversity, left her as soon as prosperity dawned upon her fortunes. He embarked about this time for France; leaving deep, in the hearts of a grateful people, the remembrance of his virtues and his services.

La Fayette returns to France.

## CHAPTER XII.

Vermont.—Measures of Peace.—Fears and discontents of the Army happily quieted.

Situation of Vermont.

1. VERMONT was, at this period, an independent nation. Its territory was first settled by grants from New Hampshire, and afterwards decided, by the English government, to belong to New York; and had that state given quiet possession of the soil to those individuals who had purchased, and cultivated farms under New Hampshire, Vermont would now have been a part of its territory. But the attempt having been made to eject those settlers by force, they forcibly resisted. The inhabitants met in convention, in 1777 and declared the New Hampshire grants to be an independent state, under the title of "New Connecticut, alias Vermont;" the first appellation, and the ungraceful "alias," being afterwards dropped. Their affairs were, at first, managed by several of the leading men, called "a Council of Safety." Their first legislature met at Windsor, in March, 1778.

Declares itself independent.

Exhaustion of the U. S.

2. It was most fortunate for America that the result of the last campaign had been favorable; for such was

14. What did they remember to acknowledge? — 15. Where was now the most generous of the defenders of America?

CHAPTER XII.—1. What was Vermont? Under what state had the first settlements been made? What state afterwards laid claims to the settlements? How did the settlers proceed? By whom were their affairs first managed?

the extreme poverty of the government, that it seems impossible that another could have been sustained. The several state governments wholly failed of paying their taxes; alleging the utter inability of the people to meet further taxation.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XII.

3. The people of England had also felt very severely their great expenses; and on hearing the disasters which had attended their arms, they murmured against the government for continuing the war. The house of commons, moved by this expression of feeling, as well as by the eloquent speeches of Gen. Conway, and others, voted, "that they should consider as enemies to his majesty and their country, all who should advise, or attempt, a further prosecution of offensive war on the continent of America."

Feb.  
Parlia-  
ment  
takes  
measure  
for  
peace.

4. To be ready for overtures of peace, congress appointed as their agents four distinguished men, already in Europe,—Dr. Franklin, John Adams, John Jay, and Henry Laurens. Mr. Adams procured, from the states of Holland, on the 19th of April, the recognition of American Independence. On the 8th of October, he obtained a treaty of amity and commerce; and, not long after, a loan of money; to the great relief of his exhausted country.

Frank-  
lin,  
Adams,  
Jay, and  
Laurens  
to treat  
for  
peace.  
April 19  
Holland  
recogn-  
nises  
Am. in-  
depend-  
ence.

5. On the 20th of January, 1783, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Versailles. The definitive treaty was deferred until the adjustment of affairs between England and France, and was not signed until the 3d of September. The terms granted to the Americans by this treaty, in respect to the extent of territory, and right to the fisheries, were equal to their most sanguine expectations. It was a treaty which made America, independent, in fact, as well as in name.

1783

Sept. 3.  
Defini-  
tive trea-  
ty is  
signed.

2. What was the condition of the United States at the close of the war? — 3. What was the state of public feeling in England? What resolution passed in parliament? — 4. What men were chosen by congress? For what purpose? What was procured from Holland? By whom? — 5. When were the preliminaries of peace signed, and where? What was deferred? Till what time? What can be said of the terms of the treaty as regards the United States?

**1783.** **T. III.** **D. II.** **H. XII.** **Discont-**  
**ments**  
**among**  
**the offi-**  
**cers.** **A rebuke.** 6. The officers of the army feared, that if they should disband, themselves and their services would be forgotten. Some were ambitious; and thought that if a monarchy should succeed, they might become dukes or earls. A letter was addressed by one of these to Washington, endeavouring, in a smooth and artful strain, to persuade him, that a monarchy was the most desirable form of government, and himself a suitable man for king. Washington replied, that "he viewed such ideas with abhorrence, and must reprehend them with severity."

**1783.** **The**  
**New-**  
**burg**  
**address.** 7. But the discontents of the army remained; and Washington repeatedly urged congress to attend to their just claims. While the army were lying at Newburg, an anonymous paper, able, but seditious, was circulated. The advice it contained, was that the officers should cease to *petition* congress, but march with arms in their hands, and *demand* justice. Washington had foreseen such a crisis, and had remained with the army. His monitory voice was heard, as he exhorted the officers not to tarnish their fame, pure and bright as it was; but to believe and trust, that their country would yet be grateful for their devotion and services. To congress, Washington wrote; and in the most forcible language, presented the claims, and great merits, of those, who had breasted the common danger, and gained for all, the inestimable prize.

**April 19.** **War**  
**closes**  
**after**  
**just eight**  
**years.** 8. Congress used their utmost exertions to meet the exigency. They commuted the half-pay, which had been pledged, for a sum equal to five years' full pay. The officers were satisfied, and the army peaceably disbanded. ... On the 19th of April, just eight years from the battle of Lexington, the joyful certainty of peace was proclaimed from head-quarters to the American army. On the 25th of November, the

---

6. What fears had the officers of the army? What ambitious project had some of them? What letter was addressed to Washington? How did it affect his mind? — 7. Give a further account of the discontents of the army? What paper was circulated? What did it propose? How did Washington meet this crisis? To what did he exhort the officers? How did he write? — 8. What did congress? What did then the officers? What happened on the 19th of April? What on the 25th of November?



British troops evacuated New York, and a detachment entered it from the army of the new Republic. P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XIII.

9. On the 4th of December, Washington parted from his officers at New York. A day was appointed at Annapolis, where Congress were sitting, and in the presence of a large and deeply affected audience, he resigned his offices, and commending his country to the protection of God, retired to Mount Vernon, followed by the benedictions of America, and the admiration of the world. 1783  
Dec. 23.  
Washington  
resigns.

## CHAPTER XIII.

Depression subsequent to the war.—Shays' Rebellion.—  
Constitution formed.

1. At the close of the war, debts encumbered the general and state governments. Heavy burdens were necessarily laid upon the people, who were so poor as to be often nearly destitute of the necessaries of life. The distress of the country at length produced insurrections. 1784  
Distresses, discontents and insurrections.

2. In August, nearly 1500 insurgents assembled under arms at Northampton. They took possession of the court-house, to prevent the sittings of the court, and the issuing of executions. The next month a similar scene occurred at Worcester. The leader was Daniel Shays. At the head of 300 men he marched into Springfield, and barred the court-house against the supreme court. Gen. Shepard at the head of 1200 men, was sent to Springfield; where the multitude refusing to lay down their arms, he fired upon them, and killed three men. The rioters fell into confusion, and soon dispersed. Fourteen only were 1787.  
'Shay's' rebellion  
Gen. Lincoln sends Gen. Shepard to Springfield.

9. What occurred on the 4th of Dec. ? On the 23rd ?

CHAPTER XIII.—1. What was the condition of the country ? What was the consequence of this extreme depression ? — 2. Relate the circumstances of Shay's rebellion. How was it quelled ? How was the affair finally disposed of ?

P'T. III. sentenced to death, and these were afterwards par-  
 P'D. II. doned.

CH. XIII.

Defects  
in the  
govern-  
ment.

Articles  
of confe-  
deration.

1786.

Dele-  
gates  
meet  
from five  
states.

3. The articles of confederation, although they had served, during the pressure of danger, to keep the several parts of the nation together, were now found inadequate. Congress had no authority *to enforce* its ordinances; and now, that the pressure of public danger was removed, they were contemned and disre- garded. A convention of delegates, from five of the middle states, met at Annapolis, in 1786, who came to the conclusion, that a thorough reform of the existing government, would alone be effectual for the welfare of the country; and Congress passed a resolution, re- commending a general convention of delegates, to be holden at Philadelphia.

1787.

Consti-  
tution  
framed  
at Phila.

Honest  
differ-  
ence of  
opinion.

4. In May, 1787, the convention met, and instead of amending the articles of confederation, they pro- ceeded to form a new constitution. Their debates were long and arduous. Much honest difference of opinion existed; in particular, where the strength of the new government came in question. On the one hand it was contended, that, if the government was made too weak, a state of anarchy, and consequent revolution, would ensue; on the other, that if it were made too strong, America would lose those blessings of liberty, which she had bled to obtain; and only make an exchange of foreign, for domestic oppression. Those in favor of holding the states strongly united, were called, at this time federalists, and their oppo- nents, anti-federalists.

Points in  
the slave  
question  
agitated  
and com-  
promised

5. Other points of dispute arose, which were still more dangerous, because they divided parties by geo- graphical lines. The most difficult of these, regarded the representation, in congress, of the slave-holding

---

3. Why was the government, as it then existed, found inad- equate? Where did a convention meet? At what conclusion did they arrive? What resolution was passed by congress? — 4. What important assemblage convened in May, 1787? What did they proceed to do? In what respect was there an honest difference of opinion in the minds of the framers of the constitu- tion? What was maintained by each side? Who were called federalists, and who anti-federalists? — 5. What other point of dispute was there?

states. The slaves were at length allowed to be reckoned, in settling the quota of direct taxes and representatives, as equal to three-fifths of an equal number of free white inhabitants. That these great difficulties were compromised, holds up this convention, as an example to future times, of the triumph of strong patriotism and honest zeal for the public welfare, over party feeling and sectional prejudice.

6. The supreme authority, in whose name the constitution is promulgated, is that of "the people of the United States;" the objects for which they ordain and establish, and bind themselves to obey its precepts, are "to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to themselves and their posterity."

Its mandates from "the people."

Its objects.

7. The legislative power of the Federal Union, is vested in a senate and house of representatives, the latter to be chosen for two years, by electors qualified to choose representatives to the state legislatures;—each to have been for seven years an inhabitant of the United States, and at least twenty-five years of age. Representatives are to be appointed in each state, according to the number of the inhabitants; though there must never be more than one representative to thirty thousand people. Lest the congress should become too numerous, the apportionment is varied, once in ten years; or after the taking of each census.

The people represented by the lower house.

8. The senate is composed of two members from each state, to be chosen by the state legislatures. The term of service is six years; but the first senate was to be so chosen, that one-third of the members had two years to remain in office, another four, and another six; so that, thereafter, no more than one-third of the senate should be composed of new members.

The states represented by the senate.

---

5. How was it disposed of? What may we say of this convention?—6. What is the supreme authority in which the constitution is promulgated? What are the objects for which it was established?—7. In what is the legislative power vested? How are representatives chosen—and for what time? By whom? How are they apportioned?—8. Of how many members is the senate composed?



P'T. III. A senator must have been an inhabitant of the country nine years, and be not less than thirty years of age  
 P'D. II.  
 H. XIII. 9. The house of representatives choose their presiding officer, who is called the speaker. The senate are presided over by the vice-president of the United States. Congress must sit as often as once a year, and the ordinary sessions commence on the first Monday in December.

Presiding officers.

Time.

The representatives have the purse.

The executive the sword.

The judicial power.

Impeachment.

1787. The North West erected into a territory.

Three states relinquish claims.

10. All bills for raising a revenue must originate in the house of representatives. While the executive bears the public sword, the branch nearest the people carries the purse. . . . The executive power is vested in a president and vice-president; each chosen for a term of four years; each to be a native born citizen, and to have attained the age of thirty-five. The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy when in actual service. With the consent of two-thirds of the senate, he is vested with the power to make treaties, to appoint ambassadors, judges of the supreme court, and many other officers.

11. The judicial power is vested in one supreme court, and such other courts as congress may establish. The judges retain their offices during good behaviour. They as well as the president and vice-president, may be impeached by the house of representatives, and tried by the senate.

12. Towards the close of this period, Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, extended to the Mississippi. The great tract north of the Ohio river was formed by Congress into the North West Territory.

The original charters of Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Virginia, gave to these states title to large portions of its lands; but, Congress had previously compromised with these states, and extinguish-

---

8. What their term of office? — 9. Who chooses the presiding officer of the house of representatives? What is he called? Who is the presiding officer of the senate? How often must they sit? — 10. What bills must originate in the house of representatives? Who bears the sword? Who the purse? Where is the executive power vested? What is requisite to make a person eligible? What power has the president? How are treaties made? — 11. Where is the judicial power vested? By whom are impeachments made? Who tries them?

ed their claims; except to certain specified reser-  
 tions. Connecticut had a large reservation in the north  
 east part of Ohio; by means of which, she obtained  
 the nucleus of her school fund.

P.T. III

P.D. II.

Conn.  
sc. fund

13. The bill for the erection of the North West  
 Territory passed Congress in 1787. While it was  
 pending, Mr. Jefferson introduced and carried an  
 amendment, forever excluding slavery from that ex-  
 tensive region. . . . A territorial government was here  
 first introduced into the American system. The gene-  
 ral government appoints for the territory its executive,  
 and high judicial officers, while the people exercise,  
 by an assembly of delegates, the legislative power.

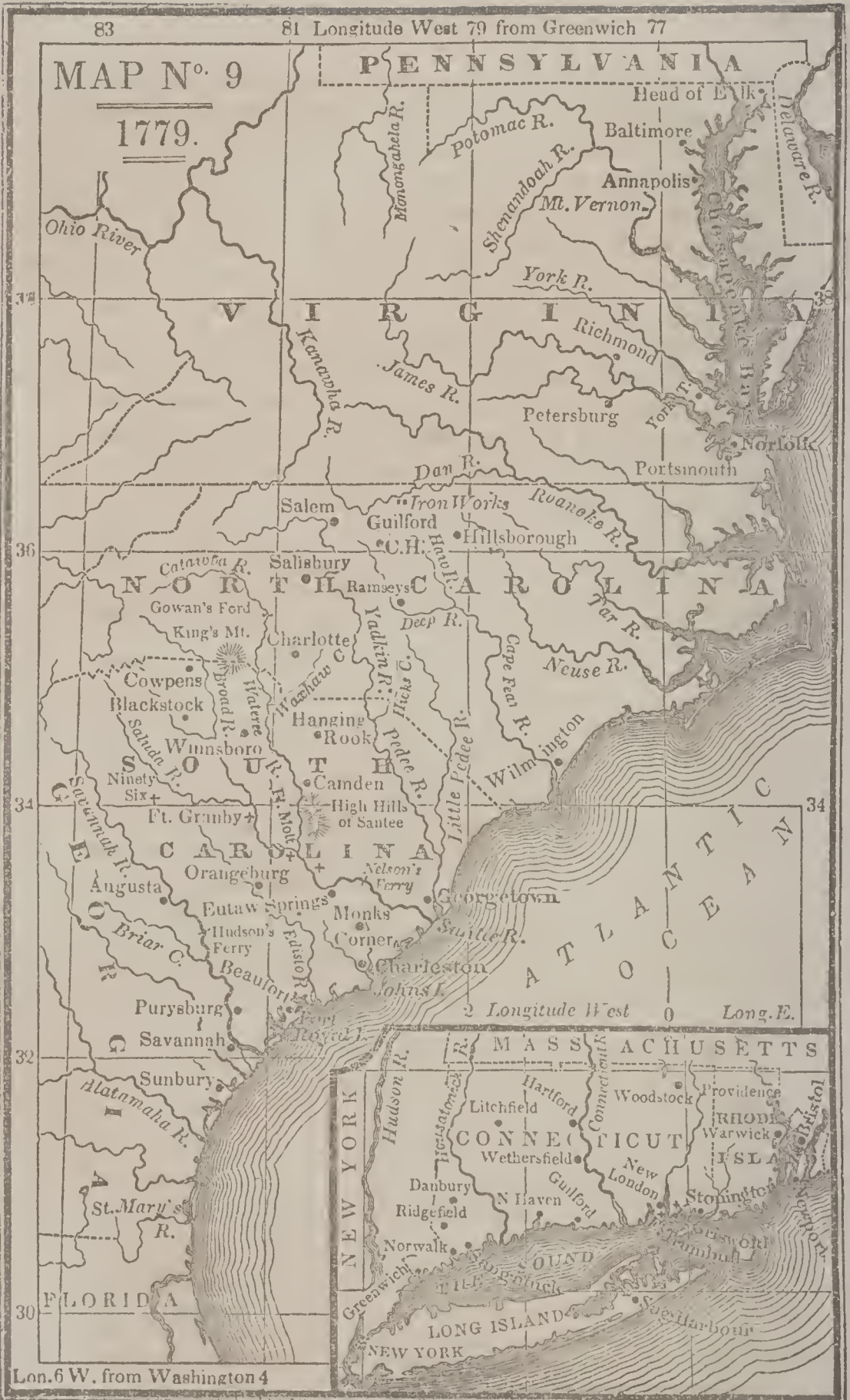
Slavery  
pro-  
hibited  
in the  
N. W

First  
territori-  
al gov't

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its  
 date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

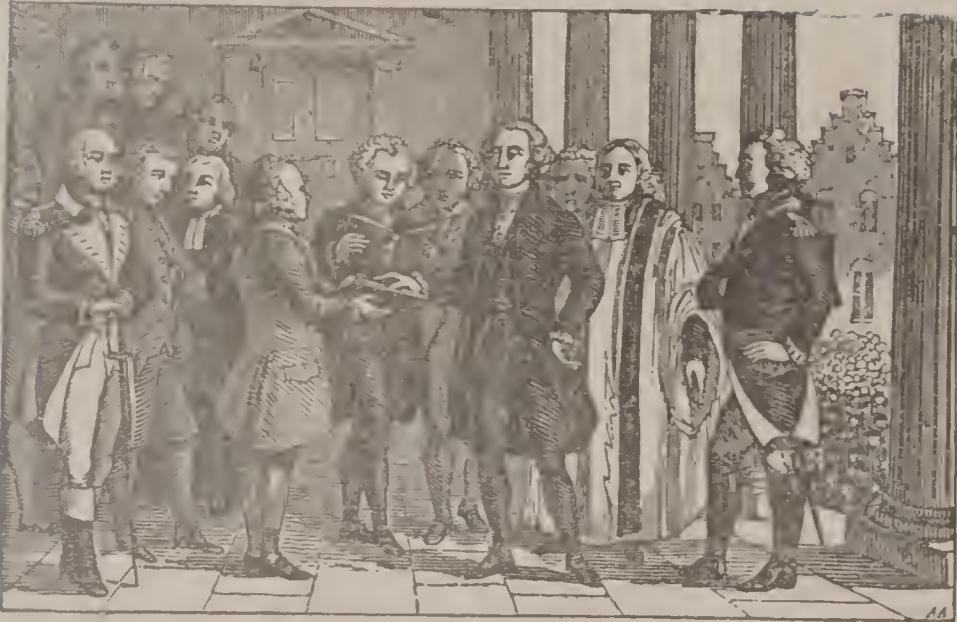
Point out on the chronographer the place of the following  
 events according to their dates: The Americans were defeated at  
 the battle of Long Island, Aug., 1776. They defeat the Hessians  
 at Trenton, Dec., 1776, and the British at Princeton, Jan., 1777.  
 Dr. Franklin was sent on a mission to France, and Lafayette of-  
 fered his services to Congress, in 1777. Burgoyne surrendered  
 to General Gates, Oct., 1777. France made a treaty with the  
 United States, in 1778. The battle at Savannah, and the naval  
 victory of Paul Jones, occurred in 1778. Arnold's treason was  
 1780. Cornwallis' surrender at Yorktown, Oct., 1781. The  
 treaty of peace was signed Sept. 3d, and Washington resigned  
 Dec. 23. 1783. The N. W. Territory was erected, 1783.





# PART IV.

FROM 1789 TO 1841.



Washington's Inauguration.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE FINAL ADOPTION OF { 1789, } THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION,  
TO  
THE PURCHASE { 1803. } OF LOUISIANA.

### CHAPTER I.

Organization of the new Government.—The Funding System.—  
Party lines strongly drawn.

1. WHEN Washington retired at the close of the war, he had fully intended to pass the residue of his days in domestic retirement. The first summons, which he received to quit his delightful retreat, was when the legislature of Virginia chose him first delegate to the convention, which framed the constitution. With reluctance he consented to the pleas of friendship, and the call of public duty. He was made president of the convention by a unanimous vote.

P.T. IV  
P.D. I  
CH. I.  
**1787**  
Washington  
made  
president of  
the convention

CHAPTER I.—1. What had been Washington's intention when he left the army? What was the first time he was induced to violate it? Of what body was he made president? How?

**P.T. IV.** 2. The constitution being adopted, the universal voice of the nation called him forth, to organize the government. A special messenger from the president of congress, brought him the official intelligence of his election, and in two days he set out for New York, where congress first convened.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. I.**  
Unani-  
mously  
elected  
president.

**1789.**

April 30.  
Is inau-  
gurated  
at N. Y.

3. The ceremony of his inauguration was witnessed, with inexpressible joy. He made an address to congress, in which he offered his "fervent supplications to the Almighty Being, whose providential aid can supply every human defect, that his benediction would consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States, a government instituted by themselves; and would enable every officer to execute with success, the functions allotted to his charge."

Congress  
lay du-  
ties on  
mer-  
chandise  
and ton-  
nage.

The first  
secretaries,  
Jef-  
ferson,  
Hamilton  
and  
Knox.

4. Congress made it their first object to establish a revenue, sufficient for the support of government, and for the discharge of the debt, contracted during the revolutionary war. For this purpose, they laid duties on the importation of merchandise, and on the tonnage of vessels. . . . The first appointed under the constitution as the heads of departments, were, Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state, Alexander Hamilton of the treasury, and General Knox of the department of war. The small navy was assigned to the care of the latter.

Consti-  
tution  
amended

5. During this session it was proposed to amend the constitution. Congress agreed upon twelve new articles, which were submitted to the respective state legislatures; and being approved by three-fourths of these bodies, they became a part of that instrument.

**1790**

Hamilton's  
funding  
system.

6. Mr. Hamilton, early in the second session brought forward his celebrated report, which was drawn up with a masterly hand. He showed the importance of public credit, and proposed, assuming or funding, not only the public debt, amounting to fifty-four millions

2. By what vote was he elected president of the U. S.? Where did Congress at this time meet? Did their messenger wait long for Washington? — 3. Give some account of his inauguration? — 4. What did Congress make their first object? Who were made heads of departments? — 5. What was done respecting the constitution? — 6. Give an account of Mr. Hamilton's system of funding the public debts?

of dollars, but also the state debts, estimated at twenty-five millions; and of making permanent provision for the payment of the interest, by imposing taxes on certain articles of luxury, and on spirits distilled within the United States.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

7. The debates on this report produced an irritation of feeling, which, in the event, shook the foundation of the government; and they may fairly be said, to be the origin of that violent party spirit, which, under the names of federalists and republicans, for thirty years arrayed one part of the American community against the other. Mr. Hamilton's plan was finally adopted; and at the same time, a law passed fixing the seat of government where it now is. The debt funded, amounted to a little more than seventy-five millions of dollars; upon a part of which, an interest of three per cent. was paid, and on the remainder, six per cent.

1790.

Heated  
debates  
and  
party  
animosi-  
ties.

8. Rhode Island had refused to send delegates to the convention, which formed the constitution; and neither that state, or North Carolina, had accepted it at the time of its adoption. North Carolina acceded to it in November, 1789; Rhode Island in May, 1790. ... An act was passed, accepting the cession of the claims of North Carolina to a district, west of that state; and a territorial government was established by congress, under the title of "the Territory of the United States, south of the Ohio."

N. C.  
and R. I.  
accede to  
the con-  
stitution.

9. Kentucky was separated from Virginia, and also erected into an independent government, receiving its name from its principal river. ... A national bank was, during this session, recommended by Mr. Hamilton, and passed through congress, although it met a violent opposition from the republican party. After deliberate investigation, the president was convinced of its constitutionality and utility, and gave it his signature.

1791

A na-  
tional  
bank es-  
tablish-  
ed.

---

7. What effect did its introduction produce in congress? Was it adopted? What other law passed at the same time?—8. What two states at first refused to adopt the constitution? When did they agree to it? What territory was taken from N. C.?—9. What was done respecting a national bank?



P.T. IV The bank was established at Philadelphia, with a capital of ten millions of dollars.

P.D. I.  
CH. II. 10. Vermont was this year admitted as one of the states of the union. ... In 1791, the first census of the United States was completed. The number of inhabitants was 3,929,000, of whom, 695,000 were slaves. The revenue amounted to 4,771,000 dollars, the exports to 19,000,000, and the imports to about 20,000,000 ..

Feb. 18. Vermont admitted to the union.  
Oct. Number of representatives, 1 to 33,000.

In October, the second congress apportioned the number of representatives, according to the census. After much disagreement, they fixed the ratio at one for every thirty-three thousand inhabitants

## CHAPTER II.

The Moravians.—The Indians of the North West.

1 AFTER Pontiac's treacheries, the Moravian converts, in danger of perishing from the indiscriminate fury of the whites, went in a body to Philadelphia, and were sheltered by the governor in a prison; yet, even there, some of them were murdered. Soon after this, Zeisberger led a party, who rested, for a time, on the Alleghany river. The French war caused them to remove; and they next settled on the banks of the Ohio, near Beaver Creek. A still more inviting country being offered them by the chiefs of the Delawares, they removed to the banks of the Muskingum. Here they had several flourishing towns, among which were Leichtenau and Salem.

Shocking disorders.

1767. A mission on the Alleghany river.

2. But the missionaries were endangered by the jealousy of the chiefs, which operated now, as in the time of Elliot. The most powerful man of the Dela-

10. In what year was Vermont admitted to the Union? What in 1790 was the number of inhabitants? The amount of revenue? Of exports? Of imports? What the ratio of apportionment

CHAPTER II.—1. What happened to some of the Moravian converts in Philadelphia? What progress did the missionaries afterwards make?

wares, Capt. White-Eyes, a person of great and good qualities, was, however, convinced of the importance of civilization. He saw how much better off were the Europeans, and even the christian Indians, than were his own people. Christianity, he regarded as the principal cause of the great difference. The constancy and talents of this chief sustained the missionaries against alarming opposition, and brought the nation to favour them. "Let us," said one aged chief to another, "do a good work before we depart, and leave a testimony to our children." The chiefs solemnly determined in council, and promulgated the decree, that the Delawares, as a nation, would receive the word of God. Great prosperity followed. Zeisberger had made a spelling-book of the Delaware tongue, and was gathering the children into schools.

P.T. IV.

P.D. I.

CH. II.

1774.

White-  
Eyes  
takes a  
noble  
stand.

3. The war of the revolution came on, and the missionaries and their converts, were, with their principles of peace, placed in situations of the utmost difficulty. At length, the unconverted Indians could be restrained no longer. They would fight, and were determined that the Moravian converts should take arms also. Because the missionaries refused consent, they forced them away. Hundreds of their converts followed them to a barren spot on the Sandusky river. Winter came on, and they suffered from hunger and cold.

1776.

Oct.  
Cruel  
hard-  
ships on  
the San-  
dusky.

4. A party of their Indian brethren and sisters, went back to the Muskingum, to gather the corn from their deserted fields. This party consisted of ninety-eight persons. They were at Lichtenau and Salem. An armed party of American marauders, possessed with the superstitious belief, that the Indians, like the Canaanites of old, were all to be destroyed by the chosen race, which, in their opinion, were themselves, hearing of this party, came upon them unawares; and, by fraud and religious pretences, disarmed and made them prisoners. They were then put to a cruel death; for

1782.

A party  
go back  
to the  
Muskin-  
gum.

2. Relate circumstantially what happened among the Delawares? — 3. What changes did the war of the revolution cause among the Moravians and their converts? — 4. What plan was attempted by a party of 98 of the Indian converts?

P.T. IV. which these innocents prepared, by a night spent in  
 P.D. I. prayer and praise. Two lads, alone escaped the mas-  
 CH. II. sacre.

**1781.** 5. The missionaries were forcibly taken, and carried to Detroit. They gathered their faithful converts again, on the Huron River. After the peace, the savage tribes being still hostile, they went towards their flourishing settlements in Pennsylvania. They had baptized 720 of the Indians.

Har-  
mar's  
defeat.

6. After the treaty with Great Britain, that nation refused to deliver up Detroit and other posts in the western country; alleging that the Americans had not fulfilled certain stipulations of the treaty. These posts became the rallying points of the combined savage tribes, who under Michikiniqua, the chief of the Miamies, called "the Little Turtle," now ravaged the frontiers of the United States. Pacific arrangements were attempted by the president, but without effect. On their failure, Gen. Harmar was sent from Fort Washington on the site of Cincinnati, with a force amounting to 1,400 men. In an engagement near Chilicothe, he was defeated with loss.

**1792.** 7. Gen. St. Clair, in October of the following year, with 1,400 men, marched into the wilderness, near to the Miami villages. He and his officers were asleep, while at dead of night the savage chieftains assembled in council. At dawn, the terrified Americans were roused by the war-whoop. The carnage was indescribable. Not more than one-quarter of the Americans escaped, and their whole camp and artillery, fell into the hands of the savages.

Oct.  
St.  
Clair's  
defeat.

**1792.** 8. Kentucky was admitted to the Union in 1792. A mint was established by congress; and the division and value of the money, to be used throughout the country, was regulated by statute, and called "Federal money." . . . Gen. Washington was again elected

A mint.

**1793.**  
Wash-  
ington's  
2d inau-  
guration.

---

4. What wicked transaction is here related? — 5. What further account is given of the Moravians? — 6. What did the British refuse to do after the peace? What did these forts become? What party was first defeated by the Indians? Where? — 7. Give an account of St. Clair's defeat? — 8. What was done in 1792?



president, and in March, 1793, was inaugurated. John Adams was also re-elected vice-president.

P'T. IV.

P'D I.  
CH. II.

1793

9. The party-spirit, which had already agitated the whole Union, raged with increased violence. The democratic or republican party, were charged by the federalists with abetting all the crimes of the French revolutionists, who had just beheaded their king; while the federal party were accused by the democratic, of being in favour of monarchical principles, and under the influence of Great Britain.

10. Information was received of the declaration of war by France, against Great Britain and Holland. Washington was an American, and he did not choose to involve his country in the contests of Europe. He accordingly, with the unanimous advice of his cabinet, issued a proclamation of neutrality. This measure contributed, in a great degree, to the prosperity of America; whose proper maxim was, and is, "Friendship with all, entangling alliances with none."

April 22  
Washington's  
neu-  
trality.

11. M. Genet, who was appointed by the French republic, arrived in Charleston, S. C. The flattering reception he met with, induced him to take the presumptuous measure of attempting to induce the American people to embark in the cause of France, whatever might be the determination of their government. This turned many against him. The conduct of the administration towards M. Genet was approved by congress. France, at the request of the president, annulled his powers, and he was succeeded by Mr. Fauchet.

April.  
Arrival  
of Genet.

Congress  
sustain  
the exe-  
cutive.

Feb. 1.  
1794.  
Fauchet  
arrives.

12. At Pittsburg a meeting of citizens was held, and an opposition to the law of congress, laying a duty on distilled spirits, agreed on. The marshal of the district, was seized by armed men, and compelled to enter into an engagement to refrain from executing the duties of his office; and other public officers were maltreated.

Insur-  
rection  
in Pa.

Oct.  
Gov  
Lee sent  
against  
the in-  
surgents.

9. What was the state of parties? — 10. With what powers was France at war? What course did Washington take? What is the proper maxim of America? — 11. What was done by the French minister? What part did congress take? By whom was Genet succeeded? — 12. Give an account of the whiskey insurrection in Pa.?

P.T. IV. The number of the insurgents was calculated at seven thousand. Washington, made requisitions on the governors of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, for 15,000 militia. These under command of Gov. Lee of Virginia, marched into the revolted district. Such salutary terror was inspired, that no farther opposition was attempted.

P.D. I.  
CH. II.

1794.

Mutual  
com-  
plaints  
of the  
British  
and  
Ameri-  
cans.

13. A war between the United States and England was, at this time apprehended. The Americans were accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts, made before the war. On their part, they complained of the arrogant pretensions of England, in regard to navigating the sea; and also, that the military posts, of the western wilderness, were still retained, contrary to the treaty; and that the Indians were, by their garrisons, incited to make incursions upon the frontier settlements,—and sheltered in the forts, as they returned from midnight burning and murder.

April.  
Mr. Jay  
sent to  
England.

14. Congress passed bills laying an embargo for thirty days—for erecting fortifications—for raising a provisional army, and for organising the militia. To avert, however, if possible, the calamity of another war, Mr. Jay was sent to England, to negotiate with the British government.

The  
Little  
Turtle's  
opinion  
of  
Wayne.

Wayne's  
victory.  
Aug. 20.

15. Gen. St. Clair was succeeded by Gen. Wayne, to whom the Indians gave the name of the "Black-Snake." Many had forsaken the alliance, and the Little Turtle believing that the Indians would be defeated, would have persuaded them to peace. "We shall not surprise them," said he, "for they have now a chief who never sleeps." But the council overruled his opinion. Wayne attacked, and completely routed the confederacy, near the mouth of the river Au Glaize. The British at the neighbouring fort who had incited the Indians, now refused to shelter them. By this means they lost all influence with them, and the savages made peace.

13. Why was a war with England apprehended? — 14. What laws were passed by congress? Who was sent to England? For what? — 15. Give an account of Gen. Wayne's operations at the west?

16. Mr Jay, having negotiated a treaty with Great Britain, returned in the spring of 1795. His treaty provided that the posts, which the British had retained, should be given up to the Americans, and compensation made for illegal captures; and that the American government should hold £600,000, in trust for the subjects of Great Britain to whom American citizens were indebted. But it did not prohibit the right of searching merchant vessels, which was claimed by the British.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II.  
Nov. 19  
**1794**  
Jay's  
treaty  
with G.  
Britain.

17. While the senate were debating with closed doors, a member had given an incorrect copy to a printer. It was circulated with rapidity, and produced great irritation. The senate, after much debate accepted the treaty. The president received addresses from every part of the Union, praying him to withhold his signature; but Washington believing the conditions to be the best which, under existing circumstances, could be obtained, signed it in defiance of popular clamor. . . . Treaties were also made with the western Indians, with Algiers, and with Spain. By the latter, the Mississippi was made the western boundary, and a right to the navigation of the river and to the use of New Orleans as a place of deposit, was secured to the United States. . . . In 1796, Tennessee was admitted to the Union.

Passed  
the se-  
nate, and  
is signed  
by W

**1795.**

18. The French government tried various means to flatter and cajole the Americans into aiding them in their European wars; but finding a steady system of neutrality maintained, they began depredating on the American commerce; their cruisers being encouraged in capturing the vessels of the United States.

France

19. As the period for a new election of the president of the United States approached, Gen. Washington publicly signified his determination to retire to private life. He received addresses from every part

---

16. When did Jay's treaty arrive? What were its provisions? — 17. What happened while the treaty was before the senate? What was the consequence, and what was done in reference to the treaty? What other business was transacted at this time in congress? — 18. What was the conduct of the French? — 19. What determination had Washington made?



P'T. IV. of the country, which though expressing regret at the  
 P'D. I. loss of his services, yet congratulated him on the as  
 CH. III. tonishing increase of national wealth and prosperity.  
 1796. during the period of his administration over a country,  
 which was more indebted to him, than to any other  
 human being, for its very existence.

Wash-  
 ington's  
 Farewell  
 address.

20. On retiring Washington published a Fare  
 well Address, in which he called on his countrymen to  
 cherish an immovable attachment to the national union.  
 He recommended the most implicit obedience to the acts  
 of the established government, and reprobated all ob-  
 structions to the execution of the laws,—all combina-  
 tions and associations, with the design to overawe the  
 constituted authorities. Good faith and equal justice  
 should be observed towards all. Honesty, no less in  
 public, than in private affairs, is the best policy. Reli-  
 gion and morality are the pillars of human happi-  
 ness. These great truths, with others, were taught  
 us, as parting precepts, by our parental friend, whose  
 fame, for wisdom, gathers brightness as time passes on.

## CHAPTER III.

America resents the indignities of France.—Adams's Adminis-  
 tration.—Jefferson's.

1797.

Mar. 4.  
 Adams  
 presi-  
 dent,  
 Jefferson  
 vice-pre-  
 sident.

Insult  
 from  
 France.

1. THE party candidates for president, were Tho-  
 mas Jefferson on the part of the republicans, and John  
 Adams on that of the federalists. Mr. Adams was  
 elected president, and Mr. Jefferson vice-president. . .  
 Mr. Adams received intelligence of an open insult on  
 the part of the French government, now in the hands  
 of the directory. They had desired the American  
 minister to quit France, and determined not to receive  
 another, until the United States had complied with  
 their demands.

20. What can you repeat of Washington's Farewell Address?

CHAPTER III.—1. Who were the candidates of the two par-  
 ties for president? Who was made president? Who vice-pre-  
 sident? In what year? What government treated our republic  
 with insolence?

2. Mr. Adams, to show his desire for peace, notwithstanding this ill usage, appointed three envoys extraordinary to the French republic; but they, instead of being openly received, were privately beset with intrigues; the object of which, was to make them pay money, to bribe the persons in power. These shameful proposals were made in letters signed X. Y. and Z. . . Nothing seemed now to remain but war. An army was provided for by Congress, and Washington appointed to the command. Capt. Truxton of the American frigate Constellation, fought and captured the French frigate L'Insurgente.

P'T. IV.

P'D. I.  
CH. III.Pinkney,  
Marshall  
and  
Gerry

3. The French government at length became convinced, that, although the Americans might choose to quarrel among themselves, yet they would not suffer foreign interference; and they made overtures for a renewal of negotiations. Mr. Adams promptly met them, by appointing three envoys to Paris. They found the government in the hands of Napoleon Buonaparte. With him they amicably adjusted all disputes.

1800

Buona-  
parte  
head of  
the con-  
sulate.Sept. 30.  
Treaty  
made.

4. Washington calmly and peacefully expired at Mount Vernon, in the sixty-eighth year of his age. His history is that of his country, during the period of his public services. What may be said of many of the worthies of the revolution, may be eminently said of him; in no instance has he rendered his country a more important service, than in leaving to her future sons, his great and good example.

1799.

Dec. 14.  
Death of  
Wash-  
ington.

5. Suitable buildings having been erected, the seat of government, agreeably to the law passed by congress in 1790, was transferred from Philadelphia to the city of Washington. A territory, ten miles square, in which it was to be permanently located, had been ceded to the general government, by the states of Virginia and Maryland; and received the name of "the

1800

Nov.  
Seat of  
govern-  
ment  
transfer-  
red to  
Wash-  
ington.

2. Give some account of the X. Y. and Z. mission as it was called? What was done in reference to the expected war? —  
3. Of what did the French government become convinced? Who was at the head of the French government, and what was done?  
— 4. What interesting event is next related? — 5. What transfer was now made?

P<sup>T</sup>. IV. District of Columbia." . . . Mississippi, and a part of the northwest territory, called Indiana, were this year made territories, with separate governments.

P<sup>D</sup>. I.  
CH. III.

**1800.** 6. The time had now arrived for electing a president. It was at this period, that the feuds and animosities of the federal and republican parties were at their greatest height. Mr. Adams had lost the people's favour by one of those changes of popular sentiment which public men often experience. He had sanctioned two acts which were regarded as hostile to the constitution; "the Alien Law," which authorised the president to order any alien, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and liberty of the country to depart from the United States, on pain of imprisonment, and another, called the "Sedition Law," which imposed a heavy fine, and imprisonment for years, upon such as should "write, print, utter, publish, &c, any false, scandalous, and malicious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of congress of the United States, or the president, &c." Under the sedition law, several persons were actually imprisoned.

Sedition  
and alien  
laws.

Jefferson  
and  
Burr.

7. By the constitution, as it then existed, each elector voted for two men, without designating which was to be president. He who was found to have the greatest number of votes, was to be president, and the second on the list, vice-president. The republican electors, who had a very considerable majority over the federal, gave their votes, to a man, for Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr; intending that Jefferson should be president. They had thus an equal number of votes; and the election must, according to the constitution, be decided by the house of representatives.

8. The federalists considered that they might yet defeat their opponents; and probably believing that they should find a grateful friend in Col. Burr, they determined, if possible, to raise him to the presidency

---

6. What two unpopular laws had been passed? — 7. How did each elector then vote for president and vice-president? How was the vote of the electors given? — 8. What did the federal party now think and do?



On counting the votes in the house, Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each an equal number. Thirty-five times the voting went round, and the hour had nearly come, when if a president had not been chosen, the government would have been destroyed. At length Jefferson had a majority of one State. . . . The constitution was afterwards amended, so that the same danger might never occur again. The conduct pursued by both parties in congress, on this occasion, manifests how little, party spirit cares for public good.

PT. IV.  
P'D. I.  
CH. III.

**1801.**  
Are  
made  
president,  
and vice  
president.

9. A second census of the United States was completed; giving a population of 5,319,762, an increase of one million four hundred thousand in ten years. In the same time, the exports increased from nineteen to ninety-four millions, and the revenue, from 4,771,000 to 12,945,000 dollars. This rapid advance in the career of prosperity, is unparalleled in the history of nations.

Second  
census  
**1800**  
declared  
in  
**1801**

10. In 1802, Ohio was admitted as an independent state into the Union. Much of the territory of this state was originally claimed by Virginia and Connecticut; and was ceded by them to the United States, at different times, after the year 1781. From this state, as a part of the N. W. territory, slavery was excluded.

**1802.**  
Ohio ad  
mitted to  
the  
union.

11. In 1802, the port of New Orleans was closed against the United States. Spain having ceded Louisiana to the French, the Spanish intendant announced that the citizens of the United States could no longer be permitted to deposit their merchandise and effects in the port of New Orleans. The western states apprehended the ruin of their commerce; and great agitation was excited. The right of deposit was subsequently restored; but the alarm had shown, how important was the possession of the waters of the Mississippi to the western states.

Louisiana  
ceded by  
Spain to  
France.

Alarm  
of the  
western  
states.

8. What singular position of affairs now presented itself? How did it terminate? What does this affair show with respect to party spirit? — 9. In what year was the second census taken? How many inhabitants? What increase of population in ten years? What of exports and revenue? — 10. What account can you give of Ohio? — 11. On what account were the western states alarmed and agitated? Was the right of deposit restored? What had this alarm shown.

P.T. IV. 12. Negotiations were therefore set on foot, by  
 P.D. I. which the United States purchased of France, for the  
 CH. III. sum of fifteen millions of dollars, the whole territory  
 1803. of Louisiana. This acquisition nearly doubled the  
 Lo: extent of the Republic, adding the vast western sec-  
 na pur- tion of the basin of the Mississippi, and giving the  
 chased of United States a boundary on the Pacific Ocean.  
 of France.

12. What negotiations were set on foot? What purchase was made. For what consideration? What may be said of this acquisition?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Washington was inaugurated president April 30th, 1789. Point out the place of this date. Mr. Hamilton's funding system in 1790 was the origin of the federal and republican parties. Point to the place of that year. The national bank was established in 1791, and the first census of the United States completed. Point out the place of this date.

The defeat of Gen. St. Clair occurred in 1792. Locate this event. Kentucky was admitted into the Union in 1792. Washington was inaugurated the second time, in 1793. Point out the places of these events. Gen. Wayne totally defeated the Indians, August 20th, 1794. Jay's treaty with Great Britain was signed by Washington the same year. Point out the place of the year. Washington published his Farewell Address in 1797. Point out the place of this date.

John Adams was inaugurated president and Thomas Jefferson vice-president, March 4, 1797. Point to this year. Washington died Dec. 14th, 1799. Point out the place of this date. In 1801, Thomas Jefferson was made president, and Aaron Burr vice-president. Point to the place of this date. At what event does this period terminate? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

Let the teacher now select other dates, as before.

*American Officers, mentioned in this work.*

Dearborn,	Ludley,
Gen. Hull,	CROGHAN,
M'Arthur,	PIKE,
Cass,	Chandler,
Findlay,	Winder,
MILLER,	JACKSON,
Brush,	FLOYD,
Van Horne,	RIPLEY,
Gen. Van Rensselaer,	Børstler,
JOHNSON,	
Col. VAN RENSSELAER,	Wilkinson,
SCOTT,	Hampton,
Wool,	Boyd,
Smyth,	Izard,
KING,	M'Clure,
Hopkins,	BROWN,
SHELBY,	HOLMES,
Russel,	TOWSON,
Campbell,	PORTER,
HARRISON,	STRICKER,
Winchester,	SMITH,
Clay,	STRONG.

*Naval Officers.*

COM. HULL,	LAWRENCE,
PORTER	ALLEN,
JONES	BURROWS,
DECATUR	BARNEY,
BAINBRIDGE,	DOWNES,
CHAUNCEY	BLAKELY,
PERRY,	MACDONOUGH.

*British Officers.*

Sir George Prevost,  
 BROCK,  
 TECUMSEH,  
 SHEAFFE,  
 PROCTOR,  
 ST. VINCENT  
 Drummond,  
 RIALI,  
 Ross,  
 Brooke,  
 Nicholls,  
 PACKENHAM,  
 GIBBS,  
 Kean.

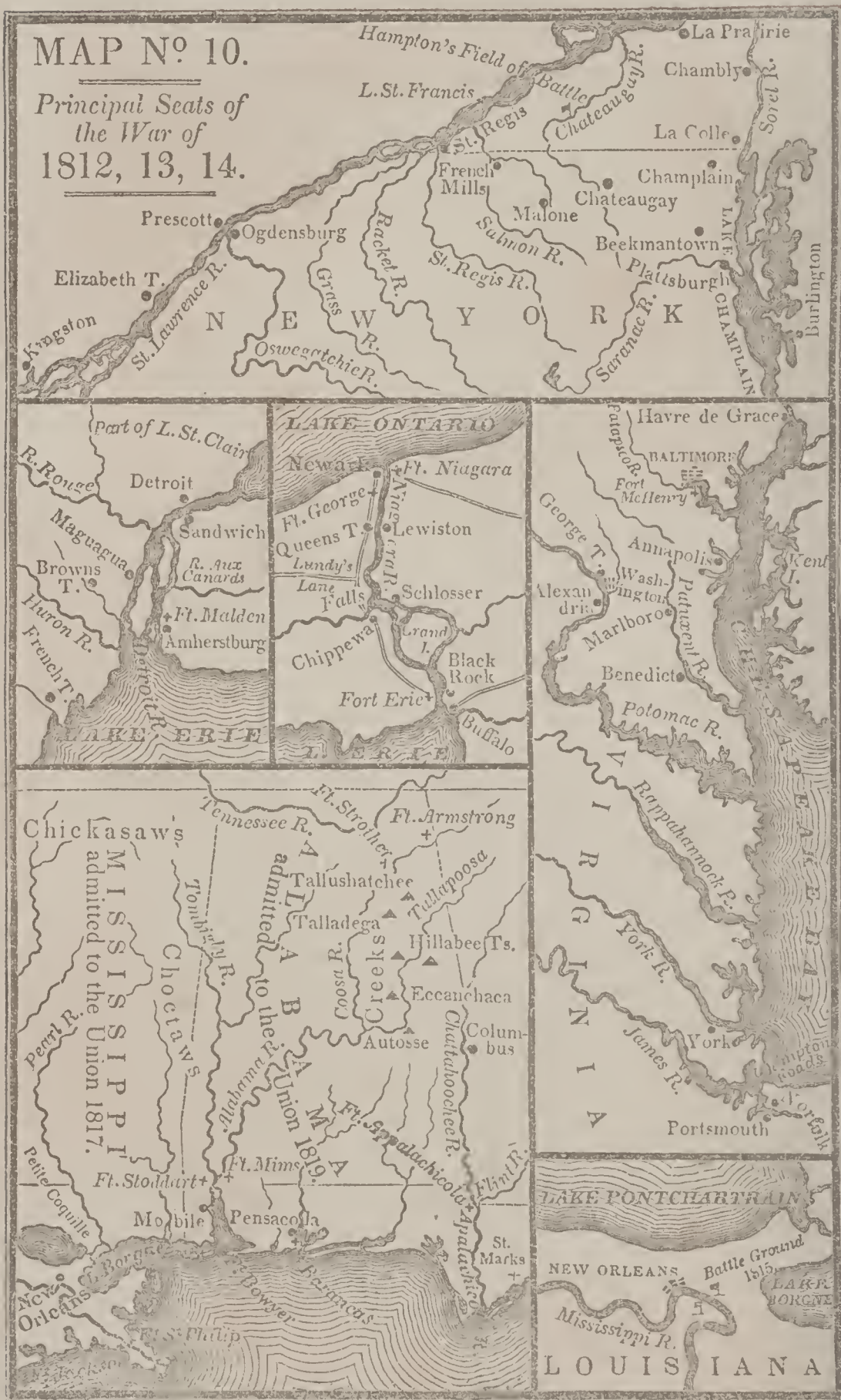
*Naval Officers.*

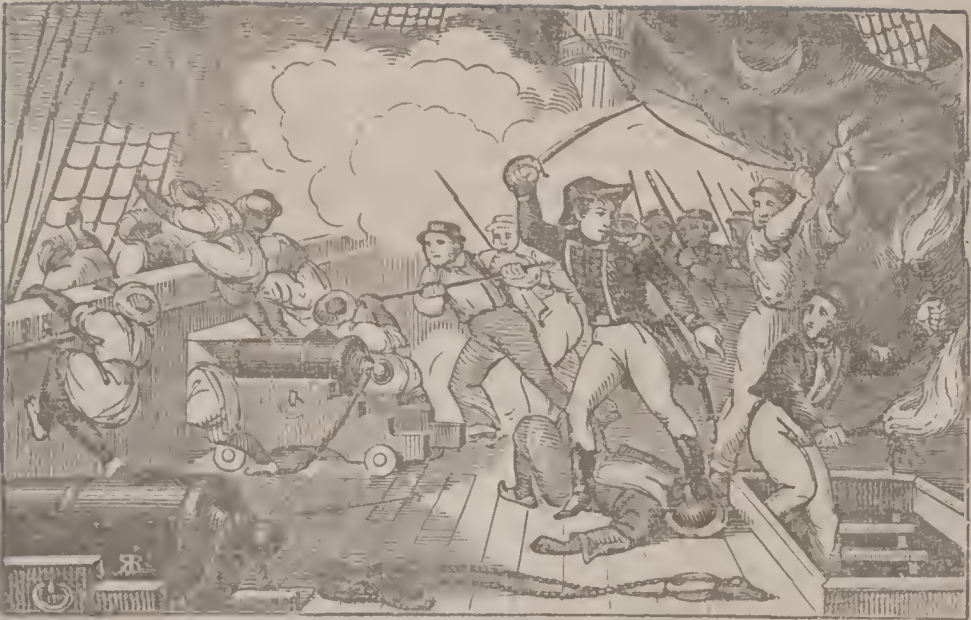
Dacres,  
 Carden,  
 BARCLAY,  
 Warren,  
 Cockburn,  
 Beresford,  
 BROKE,  
 Hardy,  
 Cochrane  
 DOWNIE,  
 HILLYAR  
 Tucker.



# MAP N<sup>o</sup> 10.

*Principal Seats of  
the War of  
1812, 13, 14.*





Decatur firing at Philadelphia.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
THE PURCHASE { 1803, } OF LOUISIANA,  
TO\*  
THE CESSION { 1820. } OF FLORIDA.

### CHAPTER I.

War with Tripoli. Troubles with England and France.

1. THE Barbary Powers were nations of professed pirates. They took and made slaves of American citizens, as they did those of other countries; appropriating vessels and their cargoes. If any nation would pay them annual tribute, they would not take that nation's vessels. This was for several years done by the United States, as it had long been, by European nations. At length the American republic determined to resist, and declared war against Tripoli. This war is memorable, as it laid the foundation of the American naval character, and discipline. Commodore

P.T. IV  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1803.

Barbary  
power  
pirati  
cal.

CHAPTER I.—1. What were the Barbary Powers? What did they with respect to the citizens and vessels of the European and American nations? In what case would they desist from their piracy? What did the U. S. do? Why is the Tripolitan war memorable?

\* The treaty of cession.



P'T. IV. Preble, who commanded the American fleet, sent in  
 P'D. II. 1803 to the Mediterranean, was not only an able of-  
 CH. I. ficer himself, but he possessed the talent of moulding  
 others.

**1804.** 2. Lieut. Stephen Decatur, retook the frigate Phila-  
 delphia from under the guns of the Tripolitan battery;  
 set her on fire in the harbor, and escaped. This  
 frigate, commanded by Capt. Bainbridge, was one of  
 Preble's squadron, and had ventured too far into the  
 harbor of Tripoli, and ignorant of the navigation had  
 grounded. The officers and crew were made cap-  
 tives, and with other Americans, were treated with  
 every indignity. Their sufferings went to the hearts  
 of their fellow citizens; and, as an expedient to oblige  
 the bashaw of Tripoli to release them, the government  
 authorised Capt. William Eaton to unite with Hamet,  
 an expelled bashaw, to assist him to recover his for-  
 mer station.

Feb.  
 Deca-  
 tur's ex-  
 ploit.

**1805.** 3. Eaton was made general of Hamet's forces, amount-  
 ing to a few hundred Arabs. He marched from Egypt  
 to Derne, where the American fleet co-operated with  
 him. He assaulted and took Derne. The Tripolitans  
 sent an army, which was defeated in two engage-  
 ments. The bashaw then sued for peace; and Col.  
 Lear, the American consul, negotiated with him a  
 treaty, by which the American prisoners were set at  
 liberty, sixty thousand dollars ransom-money being  
 paid. Support was withdrawn from Hamet, but he re-  
 covered his wife and children.

Feb.  
 Eaton  
 takes  
 Derne.

June 3.  
 Peace  
 with  
 Tripoli.

4. In July, 1804, occurred the death of Gen. Alex-  
 ander Hamilton. He died in a duel, fought with  
 Aaron Burr, vice-president of the United States. Burr  
 was the challenger. Hamilton, not having the courage  
 to brave the opinion which would call him coward,  
 met his antagonist against his sense of right, and with-  
 out desire or intention to injure him. By this lament-

**1804.**  
 Hamil-  
 ton killed  
 in a duel  
 with  
 Burr.

- 
1. Who was the commander? What can you say of him? —
  2. What daring exploit was performed by Decatur? How came the Philadelphia stranded? Where were the captain and crew? What was William Eaton to do in this war? —
  3. Give an account of his movements? On what terms was peace concluded? —
  4. Give an account of the death of Hamilton, and its cause?



able weakness of mind, America lost one of her most gifted sons. . . Mr. Jefferson received his second presidential election; and such was his popularity, that out of 176 votes, he received 162. George Clinton of New York, was chosen vice-president.

5. Col. Burr was a dark and subtle man. Neither party had, any longer, confidence in him. He went to the west, and there set on foot some great scheme, which he was carrying on, when, becoming suspected of treasonable designs against the government, he was seized, and taken to Richmond for trial. It was supposed, that he intended to possess himself of the bank of New Orleans; and that he was raising an army, with which he meant, either to subdue Mexico, or some other of the Spanish provinces. Sufficient evidence of his guilt not appearing on trial, he was acquitted.

Burr's  
treason  
able pro-  
ject.

6. Although a neutral policy had been steadily maintained, the American nation was now made to suffer in her commerce, by the measures which England took, on the one hand, to humble France, by keeping all neutrals from trading at her ports; and the counter measures assumed, on the other hand, by the emperor Napoleon, to keep all neutrals from the ports belonging to Great Britain.

1806  
to  
1809

Am. com-  
merce  
injured.

7. The "decrees" made by France, and the "orders in council" made by Great Britain, for these purposes, were unjust, and contrary to the laws of nations. The United States were not in right obliged to abstain from trading to the French ports, because the sovereign of Great Britain commanded it; nor to abstain from trading to Great Britain, because it was so ordered by the French emperor. And when these two nations proceeded, which on both sides they did, to take, and condemn as prizes, American vessels for disobeying their unlawful decrees, they both committed acts of war upon our nation.

Eng. and  
Fr. or-  
ders and  
decrees.

8. The American government by its agents at the courts of Great Britain and France, remonstrated in

5. What further account is given of Col. Burr? — 6. How did America now suffer in her commerce? — 7. What may be said of the decrees and orders in council as regards the right of the case? What did both nations with regard to the U. S.?

**P.T. IV.** decided terms. As the shipping of the country was  
**P.D. II.** so much exposed to seizure, congress laid an embargo  
**CH. I.** This also deprived the nations, which had injured the  
**1807.** American commerce, of the advantages of their trade.  
**An em-** But the measure was much disliked by many of the  
**bargo,** American people.

**Pretend-** 9. There were other causes of complaint against  
**ed right** the English. In the exercise of what they termed the  
**of search.** right of search for British native born subjects, their  
 naval officers entered and searched American vessels  
 on the high seas; and repeatedly took, not only natu-  
 ralized, but native American citizens. The Leopard,  
 a British ship of war, attacked and overpowered an  
 American frigate, the Chesapeake, but a few miles  
 from the coast, and took from her four men.

**Outrage** 10. The outrage upon the Chesapeake, which hap-  
**upon the** pened before the embargo was laid, was resented by the  
**Chesa-** whole nation. But the English government sent out  
**peake.** Mr. Rose, who made such explanations as satisfied the  
**1809.** federal party. . . . In 1809, Mr. Madison was inaugurated  
**Madison** president, and Mr. George Clinton of New York was  
**presi-** re-elected vice-president. . . . In the meantime the em-  
**dent.** bargo met with the most violent opposition throughou  
**Non-in-** the country. The government repealed it and substi-  
**tercourse** tuted a law, prohibiting all intercourse with France  
**substi-** or Great Britain; with a proviso, that should either  
**tuted.** revoke her edicts, this non-intercourse law should  
 cease to be enforced, as it regarded that nation.

**Mr. Er-** 11. In April, a treaty was concluded with Mr. Ers-  
**skine's** kine, the British minister; which engaged on the part  
**arrange-** of Great Britain, that the orders in council, so far as  
**ment dis-** they affected the United States. should be withdrawn.  
**owned** The British ministry refused their sanction, alledging  
**by the** that their minister, whom they recalled, had exceeded  
**ministry.** his powers. His successor, Mr. Jackson, insinuated

8. What course was taken by the Am. government?—9. What other cause of complaint was against England? What was done by a British armed ship?—10. What was the national feeling respecting this outrage? Who were made president and vice-president? In what year? What law was substituted for the embargo?—11. What arrangement was made by Mr. Erskine? What was done by the British ministry? What was Mr. Jackson's behaviour, and the consequence?

In a correspondence with the secretary of state, that the American government knew that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. This accusation was denied by the secretary, but repeated by Mr. Jackson. The president then declined further intercourse.

12. In 1810, France repealed her decrees, and the president issued a proclamation on the 2d of November, declaring, that all the restrictions imposed by the non-intercourse law, should cease, in relation to France and her dependencies.

**1810.**  
French  
decrees  
repealed.

13. The population of the United States, by the third census, taken in 1810, was 7,239,903. . . . An encounter took place off Cape Charles, between the American frigate President, commanded by Com. Rogers, and the British sloop of war, Little Belt, commanded by Capt. Bingham. The attack was commenced by the Little Belt, but she was soon disabled. This was a token that war was at hand.

**1811.**  
May 16.  
Attack  
on the  
Presi-  
dent.  
Br. loss,  
32.

14. The appearance of a hostile confederacy, had been discovered among the Indians on the western frontier. At its head, was the great chief Tecumseh, and his twin brother, Elskwatawa. Tecumseh, who was the master-spirit, took upon himself the departments of war and eloquence, while Elskwatawa was to invest himself with the sacred and mysterious character of "Prophet." Pretending to be favored with direct communications from the Great Spirit, he by tricks and austerities, gained belief. He then began a species of drill, the object of which seems to have been to discipline the Indians to obedience and union. He ordered them to kill their dogs, and these faithful friends were instantly sacrificed. They must not, he said, permit their fires to go out; and at once the fire of every wigwam was watched as by vestals.

Indians  
hostile.

Tecum-  
seh and  
Elskwa-  
tawa.

The In-  
dians led  
by their  
supersti-  
tion.

15. While the Prophet thus manifested, that priest-craft, in its worst form, may inhabit the desert as well

---

12. What was done by France? What by the president? —  
13. What was the population? Of what year? What encounter took place? — 14. What two remarkable characters appeared among the Indians? Give an account of Tecumseh? Of Elskwatawa?



P'T. IV. as the city, Tecumseh was going from one Indian con-  
 P'D. II. federacy to another, and, by his eloquence, inflaming  
 CH. I. their minds against the whites. He did not, like  
 Tecum- Philip, believe it possible to exterminate the entire  
 seh's white population, but he thought the combined Indian  
 views. power, might suffice to set them their bounds.

16. Gov. Harrison, of the Indiana territory, was di-  
 rected to march against them with a military force.  
 On the 7th of November, he met a number of the Pro-  
 phet's messengers at Tippecanoe, and a suspension of  
 hostilities was agreed upon until the next day. Har-  
 rison formed his men in order of battle; and they thus  
 reposed upon their arms. Just before day, the faith-  
 less savages rushed upon them. But the war-whoop  
 was not unexpected. The Americans stood, repelled  
 the shock, and repulsed the assailants. Tecumseh  
 was at a distance, not having expected, that the whites  
 would strike the first blow.

17. The French decrees being annulled, commerce  
 had begun with France, and nine hundred American  
 vessels, richly laden, had been captured by the British  
 since the year 1803. The president recommended to  
 congress, that the United States should be placed in  
 an attitude of defense. Provision was accordingly  
 made to increase the regular army to 35,000 men, and  
 to enlarge the navy. The president was authorized  
 to borrow eleven millions of dollars, and the duties on  
 imported goods were doubled.

18. Mr. Madison laid before congress documents,  
 which proved that in 1809, the British government, by  
 its agent, Sir James Craig, governor of Canada, had  
 sent John Henry, as an emissary to the United States;  
 to intrigue with the leading members of the federal  
 party, and lead them, if possible, to form the eastern  
 part of the union into a nation, or province, dependent  
 on Great Britain. Henry proceeded through Vermont

---

15. What was made manifest by the Indian prophet? What  
 was Tecumseh doing? What were his views? — 16. Who was  
 sent against the Indians? Describe the battle of Tippecanoe? —  
 17. How many of the American vessels had the British taken?  
 Since what year? What measures were taken to prepare for  
 war? — 18. What disclosure was made by the President?

and New Hampshire to Boston; but he returned without effecting, in any degree his purpose.

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.

CH. II.

1812

## CHAPTER II.

War of 1812.—Condition of the country.—Hull's surrender.

1. ON the 18th of June, 1812, war with Great Britain was formally declared. In 1775, the Americans were comparatively a warlike people; they had now become enervated by a peace of nearly forty years. In 1808, the regular army consisted of only 3,000 men; but during that year, the government increased it to nine thousand. The act to raise an additional force was passed so short a time previous to the declaration of war, that not more than one-fourth of the number were enlisted at that time; and those were, of course, raw and undisciplined.

June 18.  
War de-  
clared.

Military  
force of  
the U. S.  
inade-  
quate.

2. The state of the revenue in 1812, was extremely unfavorable to the prosecution of an expensive war. Derived almost solely from duties on merchandise imported, it was abundant in a state of commercial prosperity; but in time of war and trouble, the aggressions of foreign powers, while they produced an increase of public expenditure, almost destroyed the means of defraying it.

State of  
the re-  
venue

3. The condition of the navy was better than that of the army. The situation of the United States, as a maritime and commercial nation, had kept it provided with seamen. The recent contest with Tripoli, had given to the officers and men, some experience in war. But the navy was small. Ten frigates, ten sloops, and one hundred and sixty-five gun boats, was all the public naval force, which America could oppose to the thousand ships of Great Britain. . . . Henry Dearborn, a

The na-  
vy in a  
better  
condition  
than the  
army.

General  
Dear-  
born,  
com-  
mander-  
in-chief

CHAPTER II.—1. At what time was war declared? What was the condition of the army? — 2. What was that of the revenue? — 3. What that of the navy? Who was made commander?

P.T. IV. surviving officer of the revolution, was appointed  
 P.D. II. major-general and commander-in-chief of the Ameri-  
 CH. II. can army.

1812.

Army of  
 the  
 north-  
 west.

4. The plan of the campaign was formed at Wash-  
 ington. It was intended to invade Canada, at Detroit  
 and Niagara, and that the armies from these places  
 should be joined, on the way, by the force stationed  
 at Plattsburg, and all proceed to Montreal. The army  
 destined for Detroit, was collected at Dayton, in Ohio,  
 some time before the declaration of war. The forces  
 consisted of three regiments of volunteers, command-  
 ed by Cols. M'Arthur, Cass, and Findlay, and 300 reg-  
 ulars under Col. Miller;—the whole under Gen.  
 Hull, who had been, for some time, governor of the  
 Michigan Territory.

June 30.

Hull at  
 the  
 rapids.

A trunk  
 caseless-  
 ly placed.

5. Gen. Hull, moving slowly through an unculti-  
 vated region, reached the rapids of the Maumee, and  
 on the first of July sent off his hospital stores, his  
 sick, and part of his baggage, in a vessel to go by  
 water to Detroit. This vessel, in which was his  
 trunk of private papers, containing accounts of the  
 army, and plans of movement, was taken by the Bri-  
 tish. Gen. Hull arrived at Detroit on the 5th, and on  
 the 12th invaded Canada. At Sandwich he issued a  
 bold and imposing proclamation, inviting the Canadians  
 to join him. The British force, which it was expect-  
 ed his army would attack, was at Fort Malden. He  
 waited near it for artillery from Detroit. A detachment  
 of the army took a bridge leading to the fort, but he  
 would not suffer them to retain it.

Van  
 Horne's  
 party de-  
 feated by  
 Tecum-  
 seh.

6. As the British had the command of the waters,  
 the road from Ohio, by which Hull expected a party  
 under Capt. Brush to bring provisions, was infested by  
 warriors whom their shipping landed on the American  
 side. Hull sent a detachment, under Van Horne, to  
 keep open the road. Tecumseh and his Indians lay  
 in ambush, and killed thirty of his men, when the re-  
 mainder fled to Detroit.

2. What was the plan of the campaign? Describe the army  
 of the north-west? — 3. Describe Hull's progress from Dayton  
 to the vicinity of Malden? — 4. What happened to the first party  
 sent by Hull to escort Capt. Brush?



7. On the 17th, the important fortress of Mackinaw was taken, by a party of British and Indians, the small garrison being allowed the honors of war. The victorious party were now bearing down upon Hull. Nor was this all, Gen. Dearborn was drawn by the British, on pretence of treating for peace, into an armistice, in which Hull's army was not included. This set free the whole British army of Canada to come against him, as nothing was to be feared from any other quarter.

P.T. IV  
P.D. II.  
CH. II.

1812

Circumstances which alarm Hull.

8. Gen. Hull took counsel of his fears, and against the entreaties of his officers, returned to Detroit. He sent immediately Col. Miller, with 600 men, to escort Capt. Brush. In the woods of Maguaga he routed, in a severe fight, Tecumseh and his Indians: and then returned to Detroit, Gen. Hull having learned that Capt. Brush had taken another route. . . . Fifty persons, mostly the garrison of Chicago, were slain by a party of savages, as they were attempting to pass from that place to Detroit.

Aug. 8.  
Battle of  
Maguaga.  
Am. loss  
80.

9. On the 13th, Brock, the most able of the British Generals, arrived at Malden, and took command. On the 14th, he moved the British forces to Sandwich, and the next day sent a summons to Hull to surrender; threatening him, that the Indians would be let loose upon Detroit, unless he did. On the morning of the 16th, Brock crossed to Spring Wells, and moved towards Detroit. Gen. Hull drew up his men in order of battle; then, while they were eager for the fight, ordered them to retire to the fort. The indignation of the army broke forth, and all subordination ceased. They crowded in, and without any order from the general, stacked their arms, some dashing them with violence upon the ground. Many of the soldiers wept, and even the women were angry at such apparent cowardice.

Aug. 15.  
Brock  
ap-  
proaches  
Detroit.

7. What circumstances alarmed Gen. Hull? — 8. What retrograde movement did he make? What second party send out? What battle was fought? What happened on the 15th of August? — 9. Who took command of the British army? Describe the movements of Brock? What was done by Hull? What was the conduct of the army, when bid to retire to the fort?

P.T. IV. 10. Hull, perceiving that he had no longer any au-  
 P.D. II. thority, and believing that the Indians were ready to  
 CH. II. fall upon the inhabitants, was anxious to put the place  
 1812. under the protection of the British. A white flag was  
 Hull sur- hung out upon the walls of the fort. Two British  
 renders officers rode up, and a capitulation was concluded by  
 his army. Hull with the most unbecoming haste. His officers  
 Am. loss, were not consulted, and every thing was left at the  
 prisoners mercy of the British general. . . . Gen. Hull was soon  
 800. after exchanged, and brought to trial. He was sen-  
 tenced to death, for cowardice and unofficer-like con-  
 duct, but pardoned by the president, as he had, in his  
 youth, been a brave revolutionary officer.

## CHAPTER III

### Naval successes.

Aug. 19. 1. THREE days after the disgraceful surrender of  
 Naval land, the capture of the British frigate *Guerriere*, under  
 victory. the command of Capt. Dacres, by the American frigate  
 Br. loss, Constitution, commanded by Capt. Hull. Capt. Dacres  
 k. 65, w. had challenged any American vessel of her class, and  
 83. Am. in various ways, manifested his contempt of "the  
 loss, k. Yankees." In thirty minutes after the first broadside  
 7, w. 7. of the Constitution, the *Guerriere* had her masts and  
 rigging shot away, and her hulk so injured, that she  
 was in danger of sinking. . . . Capt. Porter, of the United  
 States frigate *Essex*, captured, near the same place, the  
 British sloop of war *Alert*, after an action of only  
 eight minutes.

2. On the 13th of October, the army stationed at  
 Lewiston, under Gen. Van Rensselaer, mostly com-

10. What was then done? What was the manner of the sur-  
 render? What sentence was passed against Hull? Was it  
 executed?

CHAPTER III.—1. What important naval victory happened  
 about the time of Hull's surrender? What was the loss on both  
 sides? What other naval victory occurred?

posed of New York militia, made an unfortunate and unsuccessful attempt to invade Canada. A part of the army crossed, and a battle was fought at Queenstown. During the battle, Gen. Brock was killed, by a party headed by Capt. Wool. But Gen. Sheaffe coming up with 1,000 British and Indians, while the militia on the American shore refused to cross, the republican troops on the Canada side were obliged to surrender.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. III.  
Oct. 13.  
Queens-  
town.  
Am. loss  
k. 600, w  
100. Pri  
soners  
700.

3. Gen. Smyth succeeded Gen. Van Rensselaer, and late in the season, made another abortive attempt to cross an army into Canada. Capt. King, with a party, had prepared the way, by gallantly storming a battery opposite Black Rock; but the army did not follow him, and he was made prisoner.

1812.

4. Ohio and Kentucky, had aroused at the call of Hull for assistance; and an army, on its march for Detroit, was in the southern part of Ohio, when the news met them, of the surrender of that post. This rather stimulated than repressed the ardor of the patriotic inhabitants of the west. Kentucky put on foot 7,000 volunteers, Ohio nearly half that number. Congress appointed Gen. Harrison to the command of these forces.

Volun  
teers of  
the west.

5. The Indians of the north-west had murdered twenty-one persons at the mouth of White river; and had committed other atrocities. For the defense of the Indiana and Illinois territories, a large number of mounted volunteers was collected, by Gov. Shelby of Kentucky. Under Gen. Hopkins, they attempted an expedition against the Kickapoo and Peoria towns; but being gentlemen volunteers, and feeling on an equality with their general, they, after several days march, put it to the vote of the army, whether they would proceed further; and a majority of the troops being against it, they turned about, and, to the grief of the general, went home. This affair brought the employment and paying of volunteers into disrepute.

Hopkins  
unsuc-  
cessful  
expedi-  
tion  
against  
the In-  
dian  
towns.

2. Describe the affair of Queenstown? — 3. What account can you give of Gen. Smyth's attempt? — 4. What troops had been raised in the west? Who appointed to the command? — 5. What had been done by the Indians? Describe the expedition against them, headed by Gen. Hopkins?



P'T. IV. 6. Gen. Hopkins, at the head of another party,—and  
 P'D. II. after him Cols. Russel and Campbell, made predatory  
 CH. III. incursions into the Indian towns. They put the savages  
 in fear, and protected the white inhabitants. . . Capt.  
 Oct. 18. Jones, in the American sloop of war Wasp, captured,  
 Whole crew of after a bloody engagement, a British warlike vessel,  
 Frolic the Frolic. Two hours after the battle, a British seven-  
 120, loss ty-four took Capt. Jones and his prize. . . Com. Decatur,  
 100. in the frigate United States, defeated and made prize of  
 Oct. 25. the British frigate Macedonian, Capt. Carden. . . The  
 Br. loss fortunate frigate Constitution, commanded by Com.  
 104. Bainbridge, captured, off the coast of Brazil, the British  
 Am. 12. frigate Java. Besides these public successes, the Ame-  
 Dec. 29. rican privateers took 250 British vessels, and 3,000  
 Br. loss, prisoners.  
 k. 60.  
 w. 101.

State of party feeling. 7. The warmth of party feeling had not abated. The enemies of the administration declared, that the ill-success of the war was owing to their inefficiency; while its friends attributed the failure, to the interference of the opposite party. Both were right in a degree; as the government, unused to war, had doubtless failed of making judicious and seasonable provisions. But all its difficulties were increased, by an ungenerous, and almost treasonable opposition.

Question of state rights. 8. The most alarming opposition was not, however, that arising from mere individual clamor. The states of Massachusetts and Connecticut had refused their militia, to the call of the general government. They alleged that the state governments ought to determine when the exigencies of the nation require the services of their militia. They also decided, that it was unconstitutional for the president to delegate his power to any officer, not of the militia, and who was not chosen by the respective states. It was probably owing to the disapprobation, with which the great body of the people viewed these opinions and measures of the opposition, that the result of the election of pre-

Mr. Madison's majority in-creased.

---

6. What officers made successful incursions? What naval victory occurred Oct. 18th? What on the 25th of Oct.? — 7. What was the state of party feeling? — 8. What alarming symptoms of rebellion occurred in New England? What effect had the proceedings of the opposition on the election?

sident was not only favorable to Mr. Madison, but showed a diminution of the federal, and an increase of the republican party.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IV.

9. Congress passed acts authorizing the construction of four large ships of war, for the increase of the navy on the lakes, and for increasing the bounty given to recruits, and enlarging the regular army. The previous law authorizing the employment of volunteers, as they had been found insubordinate, was repealed. To provide for the revenue, they authorized a loan of sixteen millions of dollars; and gave power to the president to issue treasury notes to the amount of five millions. Mr. Madison received his second inauguration on the 4th of March, and Elbridge Gerry was at the same time made vice-president.

1813.

Congress  
make  
laws to  
carry on  
the war.

## CHAPTER IV.

### Campaign of 1813.—Massacre of Frenchtown.

1. THE head-quarters of Gen. Harrison were, at this time, at Franklinton, in Ohio. Gen. Winchester had been detached to proceed in advance of the main army. Hearing that a party of the British were stationed at Frenchtown, he attacked and dispersed them. But on the morning of the 22d, he was surprised and assaulted by the combined force of British and Indians, under the command of Col. Proctor. Gen. Winchester was taken; and being terrified with Proctor's threat of an Indian massacre, he presumed, though a prisoner, to send a command to the troops still fighting to surrender; Proctor having promised them, in that case, protection. They laid down their arms, and the

Harrison  
divides  
his army.

1813.  
Jan. 22.  
Massa-  
cre of  
French-  
town.  
Am. loss,  
k. 500,  
pris. 500.  
Br. loss,  
k. 24, w.  
158.

9. What laws did congress make to carry on the war? Who was made president and vice-president?

CHAPTER IV.—1. Where was Gen. Harrison with the western army? Whom did he detach? What account can you give of the shocking scene Frenchtown?

P'T. IV. scenes of Fort William Henry were re-acted. Proctor  
 P'D. II. abandoned them, now unarmed and defenseless, to the  
 CH. IV. savages. Five hundred were slain. They were mostly  
 1813. volunteers from respectable families in Kentucky.

2. Gen. Harrison removed his army to Fort Meigs. Proctor here besieged him with a combined force of British and Indians. Gen. Clay, with 1100 Kentuckians coming to his assistance, a plan was laid to attack the army of Proctor with the combined forces of Harrison and Clay. A party headed by Col. Dudley, fell into an ambuscade, and were slaughtered by Tecumseh and his Indians. But Proctor was defeated, and obliged to raise the siege.

May 5.  
 Fort  
 Meigs  
 Dudley's  
 defeat.

3. The Indians, as success failed, began to desert their allies. But Tecumseh was faithful. The Five Nations now declared war against the Canadas. . . . With 500 men, Proctor attacked Fort Stephenson on the Sandusky river. Major Croghan, a youth of twenty-one, defended the fort with 160 men, and repulsed Proctor with the loss of 150.

Aug. 1.  
 Ft. Ste-  
 phenson.

4. On the 22d of February, the British attacked Ogdensburg with 500 men. The Americans, inferior in numbers, retired and abandoned their artillery and stores to the British. Two schooners, two gunboats, together with the barracks, were committed to the flames. . . . On Lake Ontario, Commodore Chauncey, had by great exertions, made ready a flotilla, to aid in the operations of the coming campaign.

Feb. 22.  
 Br. take  
 Ogdens-  
 burg.

April.  
 A flotilla  
 on Lake  
 Ontario.

5. The first important service of the flotilla, was that of transporting the army of Gen. Dearborn, from Sackett's Harbor to York, the capital of Upper Canada. Gen. Pike, by whose advice the descent was made, defeated Gen. Sheaffe at the landing, in a severe contest. In the moment of victory, this excellent officer, with 100 Americans and 40 English, was killed by

April 27.  
 York.  
 Br. loss  
 k. 90,  
 w. 200,  
 p. 800.

2. Give a further account of the military operations near Lake Erie? — 3. What was now done among the Indians? Give an account of the affair at Fort Stephenson? — 4. Of the invasion of Ogdensburg. Who commanded the American marine on Lake Ontario? What had he done? — 5. What was the first important service of the flotilla? Give an account of the battle at the landing. Of the subsequent disaster. Of the further movements of the Americans.



the blowing up of a magazine. The Americans took possession of the town. After three days they recrossed the lake to Sackett's Harbor, where they left their wounded.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IV.

1813.

6. On the 27th Gen. Dearborn re-embarked his army and proceeded to attack Fort George. After fighting for its defense, the British commander, Col. St. Vincent, spiked his guns, and abandoned the fort. The Americans took possession of Fort Erie, that having also been evacuated by the British. Col. St. Vincent had retired, with his army, to Burlington Heights, near the head of Lake Ontario. To pursue him, Gen. Dearborn detached Gens. Chandler and Winder. Col. St. Vincent, at dead of night, stole upon them and attacked the camp. In the confusion and carnage which ensued, Chandler and Winder were both made prisoners. The Americans, however, maintained their post, and forced the enemy to retire... Col. Børstler being sent against a British force at the Beaver Dams, which proved much larger than his own, surrendered his detachment.

May 27.  
Fort  
George.  
Br. loss  
k. & w.  
300.  
Am. 62.

Affair of  
Stony c.

Beaver  
Dams.  
Am. loss  
pris. 570.

7. The American fleet, now formed on Lake Erie, was commanded by Com. Perry. It consisted of the Niagara and Lawrence, each of twenty-five guns, and several smaller vessels, carrying two guns each. The enemy's fleet, of equal force, was commanded by Com. Barclay, a veteran officer. Perry, at 12 o'clock, made an attack. The flag-ship became disabled. Perry embarked in an open boat, and amidst a shower of bullets, carried the ensign of command on board another, and once more bore down upon the enemy with the remainder of his fleet. At four o'clock, the whole British squadron, consisting of six vessels, carrying in all sixty-three guns, surrendered to the Americans.

Sept. 10.  
Perry's  
victory.

Sept. 23.  
Harrison  
takes  
possession of  
Malden  
and  
Detroit

8. This success on lake Erie, opened a passage to the territory which had been surrendered by Hull; and Gen. Harrison lost no time in transferring the war

6. Give an account of the military movements at Fort Erie? Of the affair at Stony Creek? What was done at Beaver Dams? What loss in prisoners? — 7. Describe the battle on Lake Erie. — 8. What good effect immediately followed this victory?

P.T. IV. thither. On the 23d of September, he landed his troops near Fort Malden, but Proctor, despite the spirited remonstrance of Tecumseh, an abler man than himself, and now a general in the British army, had evacuated Malden, burnt the fort and store-houses, and retreated before his enemy. The Americans, on the 29th, went in pursuit, entered, and repossessed Detroit.

1813.

Oct. 5.  
Battle  
of the  
Thames.  
British  
pris. 600.  
Indians  
k. 120.  
Am. loss,  
50.

Death of  
Tecum-  
seh.

9. Proctor had retired to the Moravian village on the Thames, about eighty miles from that place. His army of 2,000, was more than half Indians. Harrison overtook him on the 5th of October. The British army, although inferior in numbers, had the advantage of choosing their ground. Gen. Harrison gained much reputation for his arrangements, especially as he changed them with judgment, as circumstances changed on the field of battle. Col. Johnson, with his mounted Kentuckians, was opposed to Tecumseh and his Indians. In the heat of the battle the chief fell, bravely fighting. His warriors fled. Proctor, dismayed, meanly deserted his army, and fled with two hundred dragoons.

10. The Indian confederacy, in which were still 3,000 warriors, had lost with Tecumseh their bond of union; and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamis, and Pottawattamies, now sent deputies to Gen. Harrison, and made treaties of alliance.

Havre de  
Grace,  
&c.  
Dis-  
graceful  
conduct  
of British  
warines.

11. In the early part of this year, the bays of Chesapeake and Delaware were declared by the British government to be in a state of blockade. To enforce this edict, fleets were sent over under Admirals Warren, Cockburn, and Beresford. Admiral Cockburn made his name odious by his disgraceful behaviour in the Chesapeake. He took possession of several small islands in the bay, and from these made descents upon the neighboring shores. Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown, Hampton and Georgetown, were successively the scenes of a warfare, of which savages

---

8. What movement was made by Proctor? By the Americans? — 9. What account can you give of the battle of the Thames? — 10. Did the death of Tecumseh produce consequences of importance? — 11. What happened in the vicinity of the Chesapeake.

would have been ashamed; and which did much to hurt the cause of the British, by incensing the Americans, more and more, against them.

P'T. IV.  
P'D II.  
CH. V.

## CHAPTER V.

Northern army.—Loss of the Chesapeake.—Creek War

1. ON Lake Ontario, Com. Chauncey, encountered a fleet of seven sail, bound for Kingston, with troops and provisions. Five of the vessels he captured. . . . The general plan of the American government was still to take Montreal. An army was at Sackett's Harbor, partly composed of the troops from Fort George, of which Gen. Wilkinson took the command. This army was embarked to proceed down the St. Lawrence; and was to be joined by the army from Plattsburg, commanded by Gen. Wade Hampton.

Oct. 5.  
Br. Fleet  
com-  
manded  
by Sir  
Jas. Yeo

2. A detachment of this army landed under Gen. Boyd, and engaged a party of the British at Williamsburg, and was defeated. Gen. Wilkinson here was informed, that Gen. Hampton would not join him; and he went into winter-quarters at French Mills. . . . Gen. Hampton, in attempting to move towards Montreal, had found some opposition from the British troops, and he returned to Plattsburg for the winter. He was soon succeeded in command, by Gen. Izard.

Wil-  
liams-  
burg.  
Am. loss,  
350.  
Br. 180.

3. Sir George Prevost, no longer fearing an attack on Montreal, sent Generals St. Vincent and Drummond to recover the forts on the Niagara. Gen. M'Clure, the American commander at Fort George, having too small a force to maintain his post, withdrew his troops, but burnt as he retreated, the British

Newark  
Buffalo,  
and  
Black  
Rock  
burned

CHAPTER V.—1. What was done by Com. Chauncey? What was still the plan of the Americans? What movements were made, and by whom?—2. What happened at Williamsburg? What was the loss? What further account can you give of Gen. Wilkinson? What of Gen. Hampton?—3. What was now done on the Niagara frontier?



P'T. IV. village of Newark. The American government dis-  
 P'D. II. owned the act; but the British retaliated, by burning  
 CH. V. the villages of Buffalo and Black Rock.

1813

Br. loss  
 40, Am 5.

Shannon  
 and  
 Chesapeake.  
 Am. loss,  
 k. 70, w.  
 63.  
 Br. half  
 the num-  
 ber.

June 1.

4. NAVAL AFFAIRS.—Another naval victory, the sixth in succession, now did honour to the sea-service. Capt. Lawrence, in the *Hornet*, defeated on the 23d of Feb., the British sloop of war *Peacock*, after an action of only fifteen minutes. . . . Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*. She was lying in the harbor of Boston, ill-fitted for sea. Her crew were in a state of dissatisfaction from not having had their pay. The British, mortified at their naval defeats, had prepared the frigate *Shannon*, with a picked crew of officers and seamen. Capt. Broke, the commander, sent a challenge to Lawrence, which he injudiciously accepted. The frigates met. In a few minutes every officer, and about half the men of the *Chesapeake*, were killed or bleeding and disabled. Lawrence mortally wounded, and delirious, continually raved, "Don't give up the ship." The British boarded her, and they, not the Americans, lowered her colours.

Aug. 14.  
 Am. loss  
 40, Br. 8.

Sept. 4.

5. Another naval disaster followed. The United States sloop of war *Argus*, commanded by Lieut. Allen, was captured, in St. George's channel, by the British sloop of war *Pelican*; Allen, mortally wounded, died in England. . . . The Americans were again successful in an encounter between the brig *Enterprize*, commanded by Lieut. Burrows, and the British brig *Boxer*. Burrows was mortally wounded.

Creeks  
 stirred  
 up by  
 Tecum-  
 seh.

6. CREEK WAR.—The Creek Indians had become in a degree civilized by the efforts of the government, and those of benevolent individuals. Tecumseh went among them, and by his feeling of the wrongs of his race, infused by his eloquence into their minds, he wrought them to a determination of war and vengeance.

Massa-  
 cre at Ft.  
 Mims. 273  
 slaugh-  
 tered.

7. Without declaring war, they committed such acts of violence, that the white families were put in fear and fled to the forts for shelter. At noon day, Fort

---

4. Give an account of Capt. Lawrence's victory? Of his defeat and death? — 5. In what other case were the Americans unsuccessful? What victory was achieved? — 6. What was the state of the Creeks? How were their minds excited?

Mims was suddenly surrounded by the Creek warriors. They mastered the garrison, set fire to the fort, and butchered helpless babes and women, as well as men in arms. Out of three hundred persons, but seventeen escaped to tell the tale.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VI.  
1813.

8. What, in such a case, could the American government do, but to defend its own population, by such means as alone have been found effectual, with this terrible foe? Gen. Jackson, probably the most efficient commander ever engaged in Indian warfare, went among them, at the head of 2,500 Tennesseans. Gen. Floyd, the governor of Georgia, headed about 1,000 Georgia militia. They laid waste the Indian villages; they fought with them bloody battles, at Talledega, at Autosse, and at Eccannachaca.

Jackson  
and  
Floyd  
make  
havoc of  
the  
Creeks

9. Finally, at the bend of the Tallapoosa, was fought the last fatal field of the Creeks; in which they lost 600 of their bravest warriors. Then, to save the residue of their wasted nation, they sued for peace; and a treaty was accordingly made with them. But while it remains with the Indian nations an allowed custom, to make war without declaring it, treaties with them are of no permanent value.

Topoke-  
ka, the  
last bat-  
tle field

## CHAPTER VI.

The Niagara Frontier.—Battles of Chippewa and Bridgewater.

1. VARIOUS proposals to treat for peace having been made since the commencement of the war, the American government sent Messrs. Adams, Gallatin, and Bayard, in the month of August, to Ghent, the place of meeting previously agreed on. They were there

Commis-  
sioners to  
treat for  
peace  
meet at  
Ghent.

7. Give an account of the massacre at Fort Mims?—8. Who went against the Creeks? At what places were they defeated? 9. Where was the final battle? What then occurred?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What persons were sent to treat for peace on each side? To what place?

**P'T. IV.** met by Lord Gambier, Henry Golbourn, and William  
**P'D. II.** Adams, commissioners on the part of Great Britain.  
**CH. VI.** On that of America, Henry Clay, and Jonathan Russell,  
 were afterwards added to the delegation.

**May 24.** 2. Congress met in extra session, and with the firm-  
**A bold** ness of the days of the revolution, taxed the people,  
**ongress.** regardless of the popular clamor, for the necessary  
 expenditures of their government. They also author-  
 ized a loan. At the regular session, congress, desirous  
 of an efficient army, gave by law, 124 dollars to each  
 recruit.

**1814.** 3. CAMPAIGN OF 1814.—Gen. Wilkinson, having  
 received orders from the secretary of war, detached  
**Feb. 21.** Gen. Brown, with 2,000 troops, to the Niagara fron-  
**Affair of** tier, and then retired to Plattsburg. The British had  
**La Colle.** fortified themselves at La Colle Mill, near the river  
 Sorel. Gen. Wilkinson advanced, and made an attack.  
 A sortie from the building ended in his repulse. The  
 general was censured by the public; and tried by a  
 court martial, but nominally acquitted.

**Feb. 21.** 4. Capt. Holmes, who was sent from Detroit, fell in  
**Capt.** unexpectedly with 300 of the enemy. With but 180  
**Holmes.** men he fought them, stood his ground, and killed 69  
 of their number.

**14,000 of** 5. After the fall of Napoleon, a formidable army of  
**Wellington's** fourteen thousand men, who had fought under the Duke  
**veteran** of Wellington, were embarked at Bordeaux for Canada;  
**troops** and, at the same time, a strong naval force, with an  
**sent** adequate number of troops, was directed against the  
**over.** maritime frontier of the United States, to maintain a  
 strict blockade, and ravage the whole coast from Maine  
 to Georgia.

**Gen.** 6. In June, Gen. Brown marched his army from  
**Brown** Sackett's Harbor to Buffalo, expecting to invade Ca-  
**takes** nada. Here were added to his army, Towson's artil-  
**Ft. Erie.** lery, and a corps of volunteers, commanded by Gen

---

2. What was done by congress in their extra session? In the  
 regular session? — 3. What was done by Gen. Wilkinson?  
 What happened at La Colle? — 4. What was done by Captain  
 Holmes? — 5. What threatening measures were now taken by  
 the British? — 6. What movements were made by Gen. Brown?  
 What addition was made to his army?



Porter, making, in the whole, about 3,500 men. On the 2d and 3d of July, they crossed the Niagara, and invested Fort Erie, where the garrison, amounting to 100 men, surrendered without resistance. A British army, of the supposed invincibles, and commanded by Gen. Riall, occupied a position at the mouth of the Chippewa.

P<sup>T</sup>. IV.  
P<sup>D</sup>. II.  
CH. VI.

1814

7. The two armies met at the battle of Chippewa, in fair and open fight. The republican soldiers, headed by the able officers that had now come forward, defeated, with inferior numbers, the veterans who had fought with Wellington. Soon after the battle, Gen. Riall fell back to Fort George, where in a few days he was joined by Gen. Drummond, when his army amounted to 5,000 men.

July 5.  
Chippewa, Br.  
loss 512.  
Am. 322

8. Gen. Brown being encamped at Chippewa, ordered Gen. Scott, with a brigade, and Towson's artillery, to make a movement on the Queenstown road, to take off the attention of the British from his stores on the American side, which, he had heard, they threatened. Instead of this, Gen. Riall was moving towards the Americans with his whole force. Gen. Scott passed the grand cataract, and then became apprized of the enemy's presence and force. Transmitting an account to Gen. Brown, he instantly marched on, and fearlessly attacked.

1814.

Gen.  
Scott's  
move-  
ment and  
bold  
attack.

9. His detachment maintained the fight for more than an hour, against a force seven times their number: and it became dark before the main army of the Americans, under Gen. Brown, came up. Gen. Ripley then perceiving how fatal to Scott's brigade was a British battery of nine pieces of artillery, said to Col. Miller, "Will you take yonder battery?" "I'll try," said Miller; and at the head of the 21st regiment, he calmly marched up to the mouth of the blazing cannon, and took them.

Br. loss  
878.

Gens.  
Ripley  
and  
Drum-  
mond  
wounded

6. What was the position and strength of the British army?  
7. What account can you give of the battle of Chippewa?  
What was now the amount of the force under Gen. Riall?  
8. Describe the commencement of the remarkable battle of Bridgewater?—9. What was done by Scott's detachment?  
When joined by the main army? What was done by Ripley and Miller?



Miller's  
bravery.

British  
loss 878.  
Am. loss  
860, 11  
officers  
were k.  
56 w.

10. The eminence on which they were planted, was the key of the British position; and Gen. Ripley following with his regiment, it was kept, notwithstanding the enemy, by the uncertain light of the waning moon, charged with the bayonet, till they were four times repulsed. About midnight, they ceased to contend. The roar of the cataract alone was heard, as they retired, and left their position and artillery to the Americans. Gens. Brown and Scott were both wounded; and the command after the battle, devolved on Gen. Ripley. He found no means of removing the artillery from the field. The British learning this, immediately re-occupied the ground, and hence, in writing to their government, they claimed the victory.

11. The American army, now reduced to 1,600, re-

10. Was Miller's taking the battery important to the success of the Americans? What happened at midnight? What was the loss on both sides?



tired to Fort Erie, and there entrenched themselves. P'T. IV.  
The enemy, to the number of 5,000, followed and be- P'D. II.  
sieged them. They made an attempt to take the fort CH. VI.  
by storm, but were repulsed by the Americans. Col. 1814.  
Drummond had partially succeeded, and was in the Aug. 15.  
act of denying mercy to the conquered, who asked for Br. loss  
quarter, when a barrel of powder beneath him became at Erie  
ignited, and he and they were blown together into the about  
air. 500.  
Am. 84.

12. Gen. Brown, observing that a portion of the British army was divided from the rest, ordered a sortie from the fort; which was one of the best conducted operations of the war. Gen. Porter here distinguished himself, as did many others. But the loss was heavy for the wasting army of the Americans, and the country became anxious for the fate of those whose valor had shown the foe, that when once inured to war, there are no better officers or soldiers, than those of the American Republic. Gen. Izard had, on this account, been sent from Plattsburg; and now, with 5,000 troops, he joined Gen. Brown. The British, after this, retired to their entrenchments behind Chippewa.

Sortie.  
Br. loss,  
killed,  
wounded  
and ta-  
ken pri-  
soners,  
1,000.  
Am. k.  
and w.  
300.

## CHAPTER VII.

Washington taken by the British.- Baltimore threatened.

1. THE British fleet in the Chesapeake was augmented by the arrival of Admiral Cochrane, who had been sent out with a large land force, commanded by Gen. Ross; in pursuance of the resolution which had been taken by the British government, "to destroy and

Aug. 17  
Coch-  
rane.  
Army  
under  
Ross.

11. What was the condition of the American army after the battle? What the strength of the British? What was done by each? What loss occurred? — 12. Describe the sortie from Fort Erie? What was the loss? What feeling had the country now respecting this army? What had the army shown? Who joined Gen. Brown? With what force?

CHAPTER VII.—1 What barbarous resolution had been taken by the British government?



P.T. IV. lay waste such towns and districts upon the coast, as  
 P.D. II. might be found assailable." It was on the 19th, that  
 CH. VII. Gen. Ross landed at Benedict with 5,000 infantry, and  
 Aug. 22. began his march to Washington, distant twenty-seven  
 Pig miles, keeping along the right bank of the Patuxent.  
 Point. At Pig Point, was stationed an American flotilla, com-  
 Barney's manded by Com. Barney. He blew up the boats, and  
 flotilla. retired with his men.

2. The enemy's approach to Washington was by  
 Aug. 24. the Bladensburg road. Here he was met by Gen.  
 Bladens- Stansbury, with the militia from Baltimore; by Com.  
 burg. Barney's brave marines, and finally, by the small army  
 Am. loss, under Gen. Winder, to which had been assigned the  
 80. defense of the capital. The British were victorious.  
 Br. 249.

3. Gen. Ross entered Washington at eight in the  
 evening. His troops burnt, not only the capitol, which  
 Aug. 25. was in an unfinished state, but its extensive library,  
 Gen. records, and other collections; appertaining not to war,  
 Ross en- but to peace and civilization. The public offices and  
 ters the the president's house were wantonly sacrificed, to-  
 capital. gether with many private dwellings. This barbarous  
 usage irritated, as it insulted the American nation, and  
 made the war popular with all parties.

4. Admiral Cochrane, having received on board his  
 fleet the elated conquerors, the combined land and  
 Sept. 11. sea forces moved on to the attack of Baltimore. As-  
 The Br. cending the Chesapeake, they appeared at the mouth  
 threaten of the Patapsco, fourteen miles from that city. Gen.  
 Balti- Ross, with his army, amounting to about 5,000, de-  
 more. barked at North Point, and commenced his march  
 towards the city.

5. Gen. Smith, commanded the defenders. He dis-  
 Sept. 12. patched 2,000 men, under Gen. Stricker, who advanced  
 Skir- to meet the enemy. A skirmish ensued, in which  
 mish. Gen. Ross was killed. Col. Brooke, having the in-  
 Death of structions of Gen. Ross, continued to move forward.  
 Ross. The Americans gave way, and Gen. Stricker retired to

---

1. What sea and land forces had been sent out? — 2. What  
 opposition did Gen. Ross meet? What was the loss in the battle  
 of Bladensburg? — 3. When did the British enter Washington?  
 What did they destroy? — 4. Where did they next go? — 5.  
 What steps were taken to defend Baltimore?

the heights, where Gen. Smith was stationed with the main army. P.T. IV.

6. Col. Brooke could not draw Gen. Smith from his entrenchments. The fleet had not been able to pass Fort McHenry. Brooke removed his troops in the night, and re-embarked at North Point, to the great joy of the inhabitants of Baltimore. P.D. II.  
CH. VII.  
Night of  
Sept. 14.  
The Br.  
with-  
draw

7. The eastern portion of the coast of Maine, was taken into quiet possession by the British. The frigate, John Adams, had been placed in the Penobscot river, near Hampden, for preservation. On the approach of the British, the militia, who were there stationed as a guard, blew up the frigate and fled. July and  
August.  
Maine.

8. A British fleet under Com. Hardy appeared before Stonington. They landed and attacked at different points. So far were they from finding that Connecticut was attached to the British cause, that no where had their predatory excursions been met, by the militia, with more spirit. After bombarding the place for three days, Com. Hardy drew off his fleet. Aug. 9.  
British  
attack  
Stonington, but  
are re-  
pulsed

9. The British army in Canada was augmented by another body of those troops, who had served under Wellington. With such an army, fourteen thousand strong, Sir George Prevost invaded by the western bank of Lake Champlain. From Champlain, he proclaimed, that his arms would only be directed against the government, and those who supported it; while no injury should be done to the peaceful and unoffending inhabitants. Sept. 3.  
Sir G.  
Prevost  
invades  
at Cham-  
plain.  
His pro-  
clama-  
tion of-  
fends the  
people.

10. The fire of genuine patriotism rekindled in the breasts of the Americans, when they heard, that an invading enemy had dared to call on the people to separate themselves from their government. The inhabitants of the northern part of New York, and the hardy sons of the Green Mountains, without distinction of party, rose in arms, and hastened towards the scene of action. They  
rise and  
oppose  
the  
British

---

6. Why did Col. Brooke withdraw? — 7. What happened in Maine? — 8. What in Connecticut? — 9. What reinforcement had Sir G. Prevost received? What was his force? How did he employ it? What proclamation made at Champlain? — 10. What effect did it produce?

P'T. IV.

P'D. II.  
CH. VII.

1814.

Condi-  
tion of  
the Am.  
force.

11. Sir George Prevost advanced upon Plattsburg. His way was obstructed by the felling of trees, and by a party, who in a skirmish, killed or wounded 120 of his men. But there was not a force at Plattsburg, which, at that time, could have resisted so formidable an army. Gen. Izard's departure had left Gen Macomb, his successor, not more than 2,000 regulars. Volunteers were, however, hourly arriving.

The na-  
val force  
on Lake  
Cham-  
plain.

12. Sir George waited, expecting that his navy would get the control of the waters of Lake Champlain. It was commanded by Com. Downie, and was composed of the *Confiance*, a frigate of thirty-nine guns, with several smaller vessels, mounting, in the whole, ninety-five guns, and having 1,000 men. The American squadron, under Com. Macdonough, which was anchored in the bay, mounted no more than eighty-six guns, and had only 820 men. It consisted of the *Saratoga* of twenty-six guns, three small vessels, and ten galleys.

Sept. 11.

Naval  
battle on  
Cham-  
plainBr. loss,  
k. 84, w.  
110, pris  
800.Am. k.  
52, w. 53

13. Com. Downie chose his position and made the attack. The fleets engaged at nine in the morning. The eager crowds upon the shore, beheld the combat under circumstances of intense and various interest. The powerful army of Prevost, was formed in order of battle, to follow up the striking of the American flag, with an assault, which the Americans, who beheld the fight, had reason to believe must be successful. But it was the British, and not the American flag which was struck. Great was the joy of the inhabitants. Sir George Prevost retreated in such haste, that he left a quantity of stores and ammunition behind. He was pursued by the Vermont volunteers under Gen. Strong, who cut off a straggling party. The whole of the British fleet remained the prize of the Americans.

Com.  
Porter  
in the  
*Pacific*.

14. Com. Porter, who sailed in the frigate *Essex*, had cruised in the *Pacific Ocean*. He had greatly

---

11. What resistance was made by the Americans? What force had Gen. Macomb? — 12. Why did Sir George suspend his attack? What naval force had the British on the Lake? What had the Americans? — 13. Describe the naval battle of Lake Champlain?



annoyed the enemy's commerce, having captured twelve armed whale ships, whose aggregate force amounted to 107 guns, and 302 men. One of these prizes was equipped,—named the Essex Junior, and given in command to Lieut. Downes.

15. To meet the Essex, the British admiralty had sent out Com. Hillyar, with the Phebe frigate, accompanied by Capt. Tucker, with the Cherub sloop of war. Com. Porter finding that this squadron was greatly his superior in force, remained in the harbor of Valparaiso. But at length the Phebe approached, when by a storm the Essex had been partially disabled. Porter, however, joined battle, and fought the most severe naval action of the whole war. He did not surrender until all his officers but one were disabled, and nearly three-quarters of his crew.

16. The sloop of war Frolic, was captured by a British frigate. The American sloop of war Peacock, fought and took the brig Epervier. The Wasp, in command of Capt. Blakeley, sailed from Portsmouth, New Hampshire. She fought the brig Rein-deer, and was conqueror after a desperate battle. Continuing her cruise, she next met, fought, and conquered the brig Avon. Three British vessels hove in sight and the Wasp left her prize. She afterwards captured fifteen merchant vessels. But the gallant ship was heard of no more; and she probably went down at sea.

17. The discontents of the opposition party, produced a convention, which met at Hartford. Delegates were appointed by the legislatures of three states, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. This assemblage, and the resolutions which they passed, were considered by the people generally, as tending to separate New England from the Union, at least in degree; and the convention was therefore very

P.T. IV

P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1814

Com.  
Hillyar  
sent to  
meet  
him.The Es-  
sex cap-  
tured.  
Am. loss,  
227.

April 21

April 26

Capt.  
War-  
rington  
takes a  
prize.The  
Wasp  
founders  
at sea.

Dec. 14.

Conven-  
tion

meet at

Hartford

---

14. Where was Com. Porter? What had he done? — 15. Who was sent to meet him? What was the consequence? What was the American loss? — 16. What naval actions occurred in April and May? Give an account of the Wasp? — 17. On what occasion did a convention meet at Hartford? Was this an affair of individuals acting in their private capacity, or one in which state governments were implicated? Why was it unpopular?

P.T. IV. unpopular. The committee by whom the resolutions  
 P.D. II. were to be transmitted, met the news of peace, on their  
 CH. VIII. way to Washington.

1814.

## CHAPTER VIII.

British invasion and defeat at New Orleans.

Pensacola used as a hostile post. 1. AFTER the treaty with the Creeks, Gen. Jackson had fixed his head-quarters at Mobile. Here he learned that three British ships had entered the harbour of Pensacola, and landed about 300 men, under Col. Nicholls, together with a large quantity of guns and ammunition, to arm the Indians; and that he had published a proclamation, endeavoring to incite the people to rise against the government.

La Fitte and the Barratarians. 2. The Barratarians were a band of pirates, so called, from their island of Barrataria. Col. Nicholls attempted to gain La Fitte, the daring chief of the band. He gave Nicholls to think that he would aid him, until he had learned from him, that the British were to make a powerful attempt upon New Orleans. La Fitte then went to Claiborne, the governor of Louisiana, and laid open the whole scheme. The pirates were promised pardon, if they would now come forward, in defense of their country. These conditions they gladly accepted; and rendered efficient service.

Nov. 7. Jackson takes Pensacola. 3. Gen. Jackson, seeing how the British were using a Spanish port, for hostile acts against the United States, went to Pensacola, and forcibly took possession of the place. The British destroyed the forts at the entrance of the harbor, and with their shipping, evacuated the bay.

4. There Gen. Jackson was informed, that Admiral

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Where was Gen. Jackson after the peace with the Creeks? What did he learn had happened at Pensacola? — 2. Give an account of the Barratarians? — 3. What course did Jackson take with respect to Pensacola?

Cochrane had been reinforced at Bermuda, and that thirteen ships of the line, with transports, and an army of ten thousand men, were advancing. Believing New Orleans to be their destination, he marched for that place, and reached it on the 1st of December.

5. The inhabitants were already preparing for invasion, particularly Gov. Claiborne, and Edward Livingston. On Gen. Jackson's arrival, all agreeing to put him at the head of affairs, he spared no pains, nor forgot any possible resource to enable the Louisianians to meet the coming shock. He had a motley mass of persons under his direction; and a few days must decide the fate of New Orleans. To direct their energies, and to keep them from favoring the enemy, which he had reason to fear some were induced to do, he took the daring responsibility of proclaiming martial law.

Gen.  
Jackson  
placed at  
the head.

6. The enemy passed into Lake Borgne. They then mastered a flotilla, which, commanded by Capt. Jones, guarded the passes into Lake Pontchartrain. Gen. Kean, at the head of 3,000 British troops, landed at the head of Lake Borgne, and took post on the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans. The next day, late in the afternoon, Gen. Jackson attacked him; but the British troops stood their ground. The Americans retired to a strong position, which was fortified with great care and skill, and in a novel and effectual manner. Bags of cotton were used in making the breast work; the river was on one side of the army, and a thick wood on the other.

Dec. 13

Dec. 22

Dec. 23.  
Whole  
Am. loss  
100, Br.  
224, w.  
un-  
known.

7. Sir Edward Packenham, the commander-in-chief of the British force, accompanied by Major Gen. Gibbs, arrived at the British encampment with the main army, and a large body of artillery. On the 28th, Sir Edward advanced with his army and artillery, and attacked

Dec. 14

4. What did he hear, and what do? — 5. What course did the inhabitants of New Orleans take? What bold measures did Gen. Jackson pursue? — 6. Describe the course of the enemy? What occurred on the 23d of Dec.? What was the loss on both sides? What can you say of the position where Gen. Jackson entrenched his army? Of his manner of fortification? — 7. What happened on the 23th?



P.T. IV. the American camp. For seven hours he continued  
 P.D. II. the assault, when he retired.  
 CH. IX.

1815. 8. On the first day of the new year, both armies  
 Jan. 1. received reinforcements. That of the British now  
 amounted to 14,000, while all that Jackson had under  
 his command were 6,000, and a part of these undisci-  
 plined.

Jan. 8. 9. On the 8th of January, the British made their  
 Battle of grand assault on the American camp, and were entirely  
 New defeated. They attacked three times with great spirit,  
 Orleans. and were three times repulsed by the well-directed fire  
 of the American marksmen. Sir Edward Packenham  
 was killed, and the two generals next in command  
 were wounded. The disparity of loss on this occa-  
 sion is utterly astonishing. While that of the enemy  
 Br. loss was 2,600, that of the Americans was but seven killed,  
 2,600, and six wounded. Completely disheartened, the Bri-  
 Am. loss, tish abandoned the expedition on the night of the 18th,  
 t. 7, w. leaving behind, their wounded and artillery.  
 6.

## CHAPTER IX.

Peace with England.—Naval combats.—War with Algiers.

Feb. 17. 1. ON the 17th of February, while the Americans  
 Peace were yet rejoicing for the victory at New Orleans, a  
 pro- special messenger arrived from Europe, bringing a  
 claimed. treaty of peace, which the commissioners had con-  
 cluded in the month of December, at Ghent. This  
 treaty, which was immediately ratified by the president  
 and senate, stipulated that all places taken during the  
 war should be restored, and the boundaries between  
 the American and British dominions revised. . . . The  
 motives for the impressment of seamen had ceased

---

8. What was the numerical force of each army? — 9. De-  
 scribe the remarkable battle of the 8th of January?

CHAPTER IX.—1. What news arrived on the 17th of February  
 1815? At what time was the treaty concluded? What were  
 some of its stipulations?

with the wars in Europe; but America had failed to compel England to relinquish what, by a perversion of language, she calls the "right of search."

P'T. IV  
P'D. II.  
CH. IX.

2. On the 6th of April, a barbarous massacre was committed by the garrison at Dartmoor prison, in England, upon the defenceless Americans who were there confined. The British government was not, however, implicated in the transaction.

1815.  
Dart-  
moor  
massacre  
k. 63.

3. The United States declared war against Algiers. The Algerines had violated the treaty of 1795, and committed depredations upon the commerce of the Republic. A squadron, under Com. Decatur, captured in the Mediterranean, an Algerine frigate; and also a brig, carrying twenty-two guns. He then sailed for Algiers. The Dey, intimidated, signed a treaty of peace, which was highly honourable and advantageous to the Americans.

War  
with  
Algier  
Captured  
June 17  
and 19.

4. At the close of the war, the regular army of the United States was reduced to 10,000 men. For the better protection of the country, in case of another war, congress appropriated a large sum for fortifying the sea-coast and inland frontiers, and for the increase of the navy. . . . An act was passed by congress, to establish a national bank, with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars. . . . In December, the Indiana territory was admitted into the Union as a state.

Army re-  
duced.

April.  
1816.  
A nation-  
al bank.

5. As early as the year 1790, manufactories for spinning cotton, and for manufacturing coarse cotton cloths, were attempted in the state of Rhode Island. They were at first on a small scale; but as the cloths found a ready market, their number and extent gradually increased. The embarrassments, to which commerce was subjected previous to the war, had increased the demand for American goods; and led the people to reflect upon the importance of rendering themselves independent of the manufactures of foreign nations.

Progress  
of manu-  
factories  
for cot-  
ton cloth

---

2. What massacre occurred? — 3. What war was declared? What squadron was sent out? What was done by Decatur? — 4. What was the number of the army? What was done to put the country in a state of defense? What act was passed in April, 1816? What state was admitted? — 5. Give some account of the progress, before the war, of manufacturing cotton cloth?

P'T. IV 6. During the war, large capitals were vested in  
 P'D. II. manufacturing establishments, from which the capital-  
 CH. IX. ists realized a handsome profit. But at its close, the  
 1816. English having made great improvements in labor-  
 saving machines, and being able to sell their goods at  
 a much lower rate than the American manufacturers  
 could afford, the country was immediately filled by  
 importations from England. The American manufac-  
 tures being in their infancy, could not stand the shock,  
 and many failed.

Manu- 7. The manufacturers then petitioned government  
 factures for protection, to enable them to withstand the com-  
 encour- petition; and in consequence of this petition, the com-  
 aged by mittee on commerce and manufactures, in 1816, re-  
 a new commended that an additional duty should be laid on  
 tariff imported goods. A new tariff, or arrangement of  
 duties, was accordingly formed, by which a small in-  
 crease of duty was laid upon some fabrics, such as  
 coarse cotton goods; but from the strength of the op-  
 position, it was not sufficient to afford the desired pro-  
 tection.

Coloni- 8. A society for colonizing free blacks was formed.  
 zation The society purchased land in Africa, where they  
 society yearly removed considerable numbers of the free blacks  
 first pro- from America. The colony thus formed is named  
 posed. Liberia. Hopes are entertained that it will become  
 the nucleus of a nation of civilized Africans; and that  
 much good will thus be done, in the way of checking  
 the slave-trade, and enabling Africa to advance in  
 civilization. . . . James Monroe was inaugurated presi-  
 1817. dent, and Daniel D. Tompkins, vice-president.  
 Mar. 4.

Indians 9. A treaty was made with the chiefs of the Wyandot,  
 cede Delaware, Shawanese, Seneca, Ottoway, Chip-  
 lands in pewa, and Pottowattamie Indians. Each of these  
 Ohio to tribes ceded to the United States, all lands to which  
 the U. S. they had any title within the limits of Ohio. The In-

---

6. How did the manufacturers succeed during the war? How after the war? — 7. What did the manufacturers then desire the government to do? What was accordingly done? — 8. What society was formed? What is the African colony called? What hopes are entertained concerning it? Who were made president and vice-president? — 9. What treaty did the government make?



dians were, if they chose, to remain on the ceded lands, subject to the laws of the state and country. . . . The territory of Mississippi was this year admitted into the Union.

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1817

## CHAPTER X.

Internal Improvements.—Seminole War.

1. THE political feuds which had since the revolution, occasioned so much animosity, were now gradually subsiding. A spirit of improvement was also spreading over the country. Facilities for travelling, and conveying merchandise and produce, were continually increasing. These improvements were, however, made by the state governments; among which, the wealthy state of New York, at whose head was the illustrious De Witt Clinton, took the lead. The great western canal, connecting Lake Erie with the waters of the Hudson; and the northern canal, bringing to the same river the waters of Lake Champlain, were fully completed.

Internal  
improvements.De Witt  
Clinton.The  
great canals of  
N. Y.

2. Congress, however, by the consent of the legislatures of Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Virginia, caused the great Cumberland road to be made; connecting, through the seat of government, the eastern with the western states, and passing over some of the highest mountains in the Union. Military roads were opened from Plattsburg to Sackett's Harbor, and from Detroit to the rapids of the Maumee. Military posts were established in the far West. One of these was at the mouth of the Yellow Stone River.

The  
Cumberland  
Road.

3. Outlaws from the Creek nation, and negroes, who had fled from their masters, had united with the Semi-

The Seminole  
war.

CHAPTER X.—1. What was at this time the condition of the country? By what authority were the improvements in roads, canals, &c., made? — 2. What is said of New York? What road was, however, made by congress? What military roads were made? What posts established?

P.T. IV. nole Indians of Florida, and massacres became so frequent, that the inhabitants were obliged to flee from their homes for security. They were incited by an Indian prophet, and by Arbuthnot and Ambrister, two English emissaries.

Dec. 1817. Lieut. Scott and 34 men killed. General Jackson makes a short campaign. 4. A detachment of forty soldiers, near the river Apalachicola, being fired upon by a body of Indians, that lay in ambush, Lieutenant Scott, who commanded, and all the party, except six, were killed. The offenders were demanded, but the chiefs refused to give them up. Gen. Jackson, with a body of Tennesseans, was ordered to the spot. He soon defeated and dispersed them. Persuaded that the Spaniards furnished the Indians with supplies, and were active in fomenting disturbances, he entered Florida, took possession of forts, St. Marks, and Pensacola, and made prisoners of Arbuthnot, Ambrister, and the prophet.

Arbuthnot and Ambrister. 5. A court-martial was ordered by Gen. Jackson, for the trial of Arbuthnot and Ambrister. They were found guilty of "exciting and stirring up the Creek Indians to war against the United States," and also, of supplying them the means to carry on the war. Gen. Jackson caused them both to be executed.

1818. Officers provided for. The Chickasaws cede lands to the U. S. 6. The indigent officers and soldiers of the revolution had already been partially provided for. A more ample provision was now made, by which every officer, who had served nine months at any period of the revolutionary war, and whose annual income did not exceed one hundred dollars, received a pension of twenty dollars a month; and every needy private soldier who had served that length of time received eight. . . . This year the Chickasaws ceded to the government of the United States, all their lands west of the Tennessee river, in the states of Kentucky and Tennessee.

7. The condition of those tribes living within the territories of the United States, now attracted the at-

3. What was the cause of the Seminole war? By whom were the Indians incited? — 4. Relate the catastrophe of Lieut. Scott and his party? Who was sent against the Indians? What did he do? — 5. What did he order? What was done in reference to Arbuthnot and Ambrister? — 6. What measure of justice did congress adopt? What tribe ceded their lands to the United States?

tention of the government, and a humane policy dictated its measures. The sum of 10,000 dollars was annually appropriated for the purpose of establishing schools among them, and to promote, in other ways, their civilization. Missionaries supported by societies went among the Indians, and success, in many instances, crowned their efforts.... Alabama territory was this year admitted into the union of the states; and the territory of Arkansas, separated from Missouri territory.

P.T.IV.

P.D. II.

CH. X.

1819

Alaba-  
ma.

8. In December, 1818, De Witt Clinton, then governor of New York, recommended in his message to the legislature of that state, some special attention to the education of females. No reason could be shown, why they, being endued with the high attributes of mind in common with the other sex, should be denied the enjoyment and added means of usefulness, attendant on mental cultivation. The legislature, therefore, passed an act, in the course of the session, which was probably the first act of any legislature, making public provision for the education of young women. It provides that academies, for their instruction in the higher branches of learning, shall be privileged to receive a share of the literature fund.

1818

De  
Witt  
Clinton  
recom-  
mends  
atten-  
tion to  
female  
educa-  
tion.

1819

Feb.  
The le-  
gisla-  
ture  
pass an  
act ac-  
cord-  
ingly.

9. Several of the states, especially among those recently admitted, have since made provision for the same object. Religious denominations and wealthy parents of daughters, have also favored it; and throughout the country female schools have sprung up. Large and handsome edifices are erected; and adequate teachers, libraries and apparatus, are provided for the use of the students.

Large  
edifices,  
appara-  
tus, &c.  
fur-  
nished.

10. On the 23d of February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, between John Quincy Adams, secretary of state, and Don Onís, the Spanish minister; by which, Spain ceded to the United States,

Feb. 23.  
Corres-  
pond-  
ence be-  
tween  
Mr.  
Adams  
and Don  
Onís.

7 What was done in respect to the Indian tribes? What state was admitted? What territory was made? — 8. What state patronized female education? Who recommended it? What act was passed? — 9. What has since been done in regard to female education? — 10. What treaty was negotiated? What territory was ceded?



P'T. IV. East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. The  
 P'D. II. United States agreed on their part, to pay to their own  
 CH. X. citizens, what Spain owed them on account of unlaw-  
 1820. ful seizures of their vessels; to an amount not ex-  
 Posses- ceeding five millions of dollars. The treaty was  
 sion ratified by the Spanish government in October 1820,  
 given. and possession of the Floridas given the following  
 1821. year.

10. What was the American government to pay for it? When was the treaty ratified? When was possession given?

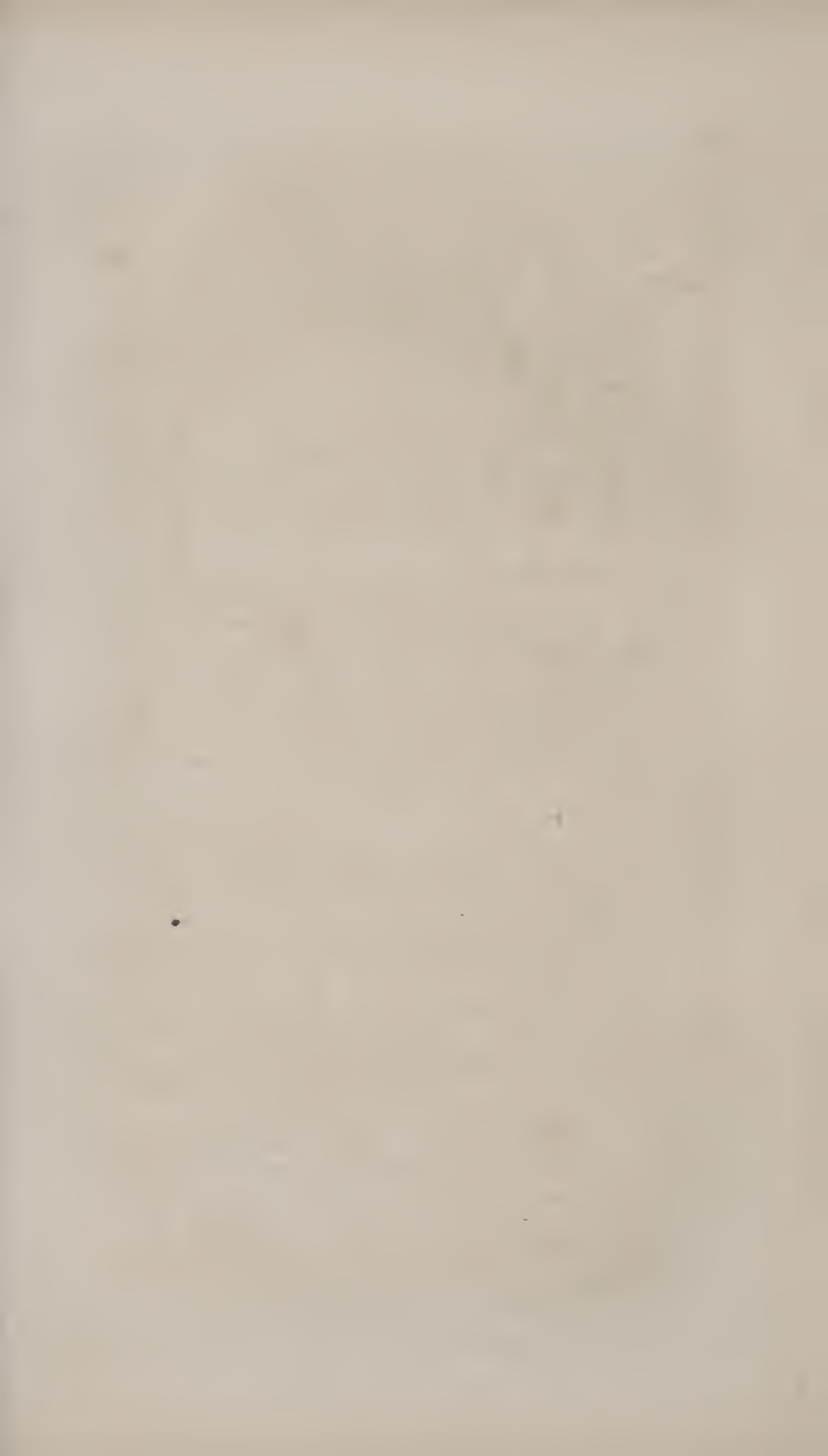
#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

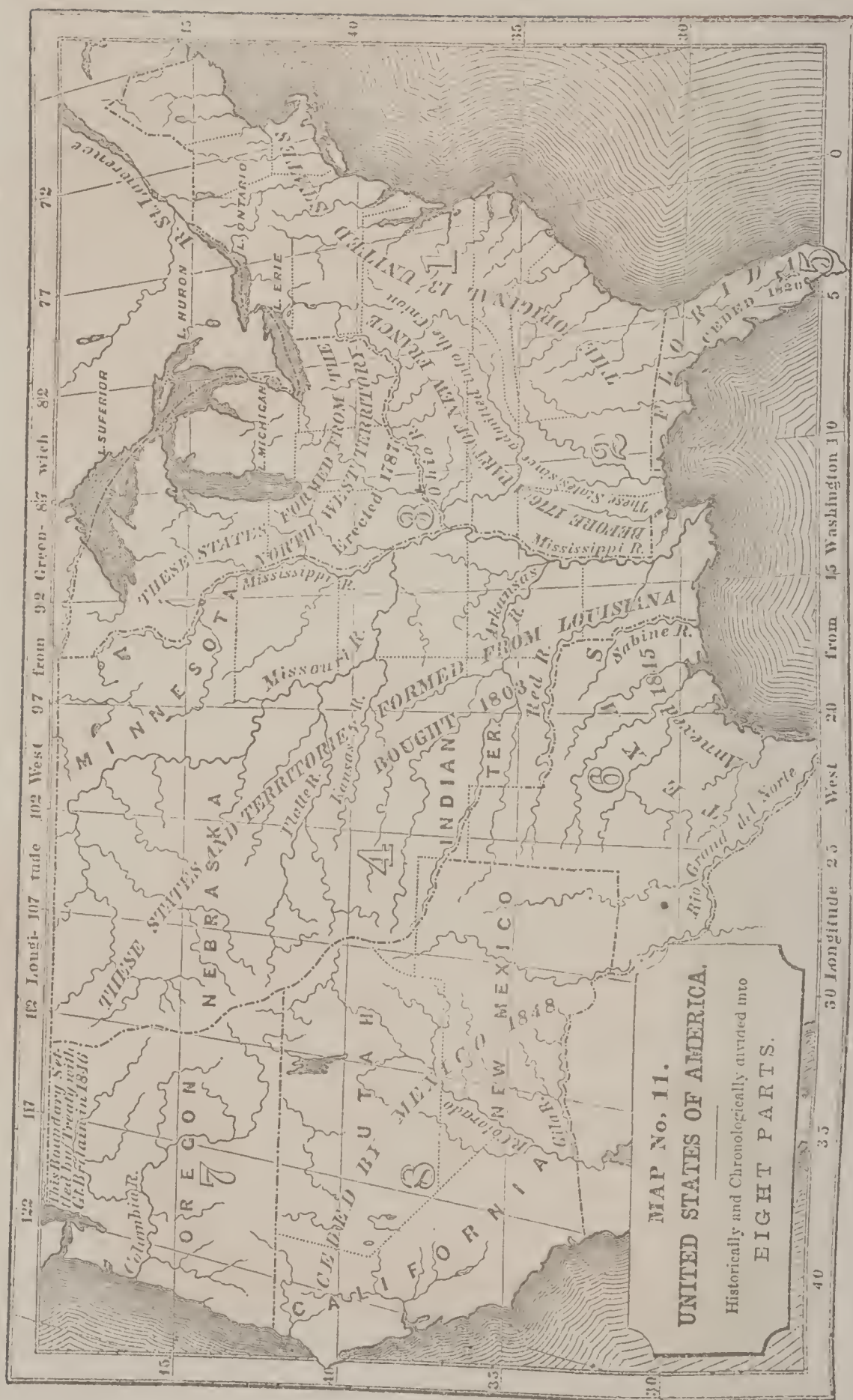
What epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

In 1803 occurred war with Tripoli, and peace was made in 1805. Point out the places of these dates. An embargo was laid by congress, in 1807. Point out the place of this year. Mr. Madison was made president in 1809. The third census was taken in 1810. What are the places of these dates?

War was declared in 1812. Point out the place of that year. Gen. Hull surrendered in August, 1812. The *Guerriere* was captured by the *Constitution*, the same year. Point out its place. Perry gained the battle of Lake Erie, September 10th, 1813. Gen. Harrison gained the battle of the Thames, October 5th, 1813. Point out the place of these events. The British were defeated at Chippewa, July 5th, and at Bridgewater, July 25th, 1814, by Gen. Scott. Point out the place of these events.

Washington was taken by the British in 1814. The battle of Lake Champlain occurred, Sept. 11, the same year. Point out the year. The battle of New Orleans occurred January 8th, 1815. Peace was proclaimed, February 17th, 1815. Point out the place of this year. A new tariff was formed in 1816. Point out the place of this date. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.









Osceola's Attack.

## PERIOD III.

FROM  
THE CESSION { 1820, } OF FLORIDA,  
TO  
THE CLOSE OF { 1848. } THE MEXICAN WAR.

### CHAPTER I.

The Missouri Question.—The Tariff.—Gen. Lafayette's Visit.

1. A QUESTION was now debated in Congress, P.T. IV.  
which agitated the whole country. It had reference P.D. III.  
to a subject, which, at this time, more threatens the CH. I.  
stability of the Union, and consequently the existence of 1820.  
this nation, than any other. This is slavery. The  
question arose on a petition presented to congress from  
the territory of Missouri, praying for authority to form  
a state government, and to be admitted into the Union. The Missouri question.  
A bill was accordingly introduced for that purpose,  
but with an amendment, prohibiting slavery within the  
new state. In this form, it passed the house of re-  
presentatives, but was arrested in the senate.

2. After much discussion, a compromise was agreed

---

CHAPTER I.—1 What question was at this period debated in congress? What was done in reference to it?

**P.T. IV.** on, and a bill passed for the admission of Missouri without any restriction, but with the inhibition of slavery throughout the territories of the United States, north of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  north latitude. Maine was also received into the Union.... Mr. Monroe, by a vote nearly unanimous, entered upon his second term of office. Mr. Tompkins was also continued in the vice-presidency.... By the fourth census the number of inhabitants in 1820 was found to be 9,625,734, of whom 1,531,436 were slaves.

**P.D. III.**  
**CH. I.**

**1821.**  
Missouri  
admitted  
without  
restriction.

Maine a  
separate  
state.

3. President Monroe appointed Gen. Jackson governor of Florida in March, but it was not until August that the reluctant Spanish officers yielded up their posts.... The Alligator, a United States' schooner was sent against the pirates in the West Indian seas, and recaptured five vessels belonging to Americans. She also took one piratical schooner; but Allen, the brave commander of the Alligator, was mortally wounded in the engagement.

Jackson  
gov. of  
Florida.  
Aug. 22.  
Enters  
on his  
duties.

**1822.**  
Allen.

**1823.**  
Repub-  
lics of  
S. A.

Slave-  
trade  
prohi-  
bited.

4. By recommendation of the president the independence of the South American Republics was acknowledged, and ministers were appointed to Mexico, Buenos Ayres, Columbia, and Chili.... Articles were entered into, by the United States and Great Britain, authorising the commissioned officers of each nation, to capture and condemn the ships of the other, which should be concerned in the slave trade.

**1824.**

The  
tariff  
question  
again  
agitated.

5. Notwithstanding the depression which succeeded the war, the manufactures of cotton, had ultimately proved successful. Domestic cottons almost supplied the country, and considerable quantities were exported to South America. Factories for printing calicoes had been erected in a few places, and in some instances the manufacture of lace had been attempted. The manufacturers and their friends, still wished the government to lay such a duty on imported cotton goods, as

---

2. What compromise was made? What other state was admitted at the same time? What was the number of inhabitants in 1820? — 3. Who was made governor of Florida? What was done in the West Indian seas? — 4. What was done in reference to the South American Republics? In regard to the slave-trade? — 5. What protection did the manufacturers still desire?

must make them so high in the market, that they could afford to undersell foreign goods of the kind. After much discussion, a bill for a new tariff passed. It afforded the desired protection to cotton goods; but the question was still agitated in favour of the manufactures of wool, iron, &c.

6. General Lafayette\* arrived in New York, in consequence of a special invitation, which congress had given him, to become the guest of America. His feelings were intense at revisiting again, in prosperity, the country, which he had sought, and made his own in adversity. Esteemed, as he was, for his virtues, and consecrated by his sufferings and constancy, no good man of any country could view him, without an awe mingled with tenderness; but to Americans there was, besides—gratitude for his services, and an associated remembrance, of those worthies, with whom he had lived.

7. Thousands assembled to meet Lafayette at New York; who manifested their joy at beholding him, by shouts, acclamations, and tears. He rode, uncovered from the battery to the City Hall, receiving and returning the affectionate gratulations of the multitude. At the City Hall, he was welcomed by an address from the mayor. He then met with a few grey-headed veterans of the revolution, his old companions in arms; and though nearly half a century had passed since they parted, his faithful memory had kept their countenances and names.

8. He travelled first east; then south and west, visiting all the principal cities, and every state in the Union. His whole progress through the United States was one continued triumph, the most illustrious of

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.  
CH. I.

1824

Aug. 11.  
Lafayette arrives.Deep  
feeling  
of all.His reception  
in N. Y.His  
tour a  
triumph

\* In the days of the revolution, The Marquis de la Fayette, was the style by which the hereditary nobleman was known. Subsequently he renounced all distinctions of this kind, and would receive no other title than that given by his military rank. His address was then General Lafayette.

5. Was a new tariff formed which met their wishes?—6. What is here said of Gen. Lafayette?—7. How was he received in New York?—8. What can you say of his travels and progress through the country?



P'T. IV any in history. The captives chained to his triumphal  
P'D. III. car, were the affections of a grateful people. His  
CH. I. glory was the prosperity and happiness of his adopted  
1825. country. Nor was it merely honor, which the grate-  
January. ful republic gave to her former defender. Congress  
voted him the sum of two hundred thousand dollars,  
and a township of land in Florida.

9. During Mr. Monroe's administration, America  
1817 to 1825. enjoyed profound peace. Sixty millions of her na-  
National prosperity and peace. tional debt was discharged. The Floridas were peace-  
ably acquired, and the western limits fixed at the Pa-  
cific ocean. The voice of party spirit had died away,  
and the period is still spoken of, as the "era of good  
feeling."

10. Mr. Monroe's second term of office having ex-  
pired, four among the principal citizens were set up as  
Four candi- dates for the presidency—John Quincy Adams,  
Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William H. Craw-  
ford. No choice being made by the electors, a presi-  
dent was to be chosen by the house of representatives,  
from the three candidates whose number of votes stood  
highest. These were Messrs Adams, Jackson, and  
Crawford. Mr. Adams was chosen.

11. On the 4th of July, 1826, died, John Adams  
1826. and Thomas Jefferson. Their death occurring on the  
July 4. same day, and that, the birth day of the nation, caused  
much public feeling. . Another anniversary witness-  
ed the death of Mr. Monroe.

12. A man by the name of William Morgan, who  
was preparing to publish a book, purporting to dis-  
close the secrets of Free-masonry, was taken, on the  
1826. 11th of September, under color of a criminal process,  
Mor- gan's ab- from Batavia, in Genesee county, New York, to  
duction Canandaigua, in Ontario county,—examined and dis-  
charged; but on the same day he was arrested for debt,  
and confined in the county jail, by the persons who

---

8. Of the gratitude of our republic on this occasion? — 9. What was now the condition of the country? — 10. What was the course of the election? — 11. What three ex-presidents died on the 4th of July? In what years? — 12. What offence had William Morgan given the Masonic Societies? Give an account of Morgan's abduction?

brought the first charge against him. They paid the debt themselves. On his leaving the prison, in the evening, he was seized, and forced into a carriage, which was rapidly driven out of the village, and he was never seen by his friends again.

13. The Legislature of New York appointed a committee of investigation, who reported that William Morgan had been put to death. The years that have elapsed since his mysterious disappearance, have confirmed their decision. The persons who were suspected of being the principal actors in the tragedy, fled from their homes and took refuge under fictitious names, in distant places; and all are said to have been cut off from the land of the living, by disaster or violence. Morgan's abduction excited a strong prejudice against Free-masonry; and a political party was formed, called the Anti-masonic.—A quarter of a century has since intervened; and the time-honored institution of Masonry has, in a great measure, recovered from the blow, which it thus received from a few of its misguided votaries.

**1826**  
Committee of investigation.

Anti-masonic party.

## CHAPTER II.

Black Hawk's war —The cholera.—Nullification.

1. THE tariff act was again amended and additional duties were laid on wool and woolens, iron, hemp and its fabrics, lead, distilled spirits, silk stuffs, window glass and cottons. The manufacturing states received the law with warm approbation, while the southern states regarded it as highly prejudicial to the interests of the cotton planter. . . . Gen. Jackson was inaugurated president, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, vice-president, of the United States.

The tariff.

**1829**  
Mar. 4.  
Jackson's inauguration

2. Though the tariff bill found but few friends in the southern states, the citizens of most of them were in favor of seeking its repeal by constitutional mea-

13. What was done in consequence of Morgan's abduction?

CHAPTER II.—1. What farther was done in reference to the tariff? In what year was President Jackson's first inauguration? Who was made vice-president?

**F.T. IV.** sures. South Carolina was the head-quarters of the opposition, but even there was a powerful party, who were styled the Friends of the Union. A small majority, however, now first called the "state rights" party, and afterwards the "nullifiers," were preparing themselves, by high excitement, for rash measures.

**P.D. III.**  
**CH. II.**  
**1832.**

April.  
Black  
Hawk's  
war.

3. The Winnebagoes, Sacs, and Foxes, inhabiting the upper Mississippi, recrossed that river under their chief, Black Hawk, and being well mounted and armed, they scattered rapidly their war parties over that defenseless country, breaking up settlements, killing whole families, and burning their dwellings. Gens. Atkinson and Scott, were charged with the defense of the frontier.

June 9.  
Cholera  
at  
Quebec.

June 26.  
At New  
York.

Progress  
of the  
cholera  
through  
the  
Union.

4. The Asiatic cholera made its appearance in Canada, on the 9th of June, among some newly arrived Irish emigrants. It proceeded rapidly along the valleys of the St. Lawrence, Champlain and Hudson, and on the 26th, several cases occurred in the city of New York. A great proportion of the inhabitants left the place in dismay, but notwithstanding the reduction of numbers, the ravages of the disease were appalling. It spread with great rapidity throughout the states of New York and Michigan, and along the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi, to the Gulph of Mexico. From New York it went south through the Atlantic states, as far as North Carolina. It apparently followed the great routes of travel, both on the land and water.

July.  
Gen.  
Scott  
and  
the  
troops  
for the  
Indian  
war.

5. Gen. Scott, hastening to the seat of the war, embarked a considerable force in steamboats, at Buffalo. The season was hot, the boats were crowded, and the cholera broke out among the troops. Language cannot depict the distress that ensued, both before and after their landing. Many died; many deserted, from dread of the disease, and perished in the woods; either from cholera or starvation. . . . Gen. Atkinson came up with Black Hawk's army, near the mouth of the upper

---

2. What party now arose in South Carolina? — 3. Give some account of Black Hawk's war? — 4. At what time did the Asiatic cholera make its appearance, and where? What course did it pursue? — 5. By what cause was Gen. Scott detained with his troops? What was done by Gen. Atkinson?



Iowa, and routed and dispersed them. Black Hawk, his son, and several warriors of note, were made prisoners.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

6 The state rights party, in South Carolina, held a convention at Columbia, from whence they issued an ordinance in the name of the people, in which they declared that congress, in laying protective duties, had exceeded its just powers; and that the several acts alluded to, should, from that time, be utterly *null and void*; and that it should be the duty of the legislature and the courts of justice of South Carolina, to adopt measures to arrest their operation, from and after the first of February, 1833.

1832.  
Nov. 19  
Nullification  
ordinance.

7. The friends of the Union in South Carolina, also held a convention at Columbia. They published a solemn protest against the ordinance. Meetings were held, and similar resolutions passed, in almost every part of the United States. . . . When the legislature of South Carolina convened, Gov. Hamilton, in his message, expressed his approval of the ordinance. He recommended that the militia should be re-organized;—that the executive should be authorized to accept of the services of 12,000 volunteers;—and that provision should be made for procuring heavy ordnance, and other munitions of war.

Nov. 24  
The  
Union-  
ists meet  
and protest.

Nov. 27.  
State authorities  
approve.

8. On the 10th of December, President Jackson published a proclamation, in which he said, "I consider, then, the power to annul a law of the United States, assumed by one state, incompatible with the existence of the Union,—contradicted expressly by the constitution,—unauthorized by its spirit,—inconsistent with every principle on which it was founded, and destructive of the great object for which it was formed."

Oct. 10  
President  
Jackson's  
proclamation.

9. In conclusion, the president plainly said, that the laws of the United States *must be executed*, that he

---

6. What convention was held? What was declared in the celebrated ordinance?—7. What did the friends of the Union in S. C.? What did the governor?—8. When did the President issue a proclamation? What view did he take of the question of annulling the laws?—9. What did he say in regard to the laws being executed?

P.T. IV. had no discretionary power on the subject; that those  
 P.D. III. who said they might *peaceably* prevent their execu-  
 CH. II. tion, deceived them; that nothing but a forcible oppo-  
 1832. sition could prevent their execution, and that *such op-  
 Shows position must be repelled*; for "disunion by armed  
 the nul- force," he said, "is treason." Finally, he appealed to  
 lifers their the patriotism of South Carolina, to retrace her steps;  
 error, and, to the country, to rally in defense of the Union.  
 and their danger.

10. This proclamation of Gen. Jackson was popular throughout the country generally, with all ranks and parties. It was not, however, immediately followed by submission on the part of South Carolina; but preparations for war went on, both on the side of the general government, and that of the opposing state.

1833. 11. Mr. Clay introduced into the senate his plan of compromise. The bill reduced the duties on certain  
 Feb. 12. articles, and limited the operation of the tariff, to the  
 Mr. 30th of September, 1842. Mr. Clay's compromise  
 Clay's bill was signed by the president, and became a law on  
 compro- the 3d of March. It gave general content to the citi-  
 mise. zens of the United States, with whom nothing, politi-  
 Tariff cally speaking, is so dear as the Union. It is, in fact,  
 bill. the life of the nation.... Gen. Jackson, having been  
 Mar. 4. re-elected president, and Martin Van Buren chosen  
 Jackson and Van vice-president, they were, on the 4th of March, inau-  
 Buren. gurated.

---

10. Was this proclamation popular? Did S. C. immediately submit? — 11. What was introduced into congress? How was it received? What may be said of the Union? At what time was Gen. Jackson's second inauguration? Who was made vice-president?

## CHAPTER III.

The aboriginal tribes of the Mississippi go to the far west.—The Florida war.

1. GEN. JACKSON, in his message, proposed that an ample district west of the Mississippi, and without the limits of any state or territory, should be set apart and guaranteed to the remaining Indian tribes; each to have distinct jurisdiction over the part designated for its use, and free from any control of the United States, other than might be necessary to preserve peace on the frontier. Congress approved the plan; and passed laws, authorizing the president to carry it into action.

P.T. IV  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.  
**1830.**  
Jackson  
proposes  
the re-  
moval of  
the In-  
dians.

2. With the Chickasaws and Choctaws, treaties were made by which they exchanged lands, and quietly emigrated to the country fixed on; which was the territory west of Arkansas. The United States paid the expense of their removal, and supplied them with food for the first year. . . . When Georgia ceded to the United States, April 2. 1802, all that tract of country lying south of Tennessee, and west of the Chatahoochee river, the government paid in hand to that state \$1,250,000, and further agreed, "at their own expense, to extinguish, for the use of Georgia, as early as the same could be *peaceably* obtained upon reasonable terms, the Indian title to the lands lying within the limits of that state."

**1831.**  
**2 & 3.**  
The  
Chicka-  
saws and  
Choctaw  
remove  
**1802.**  
Georgia  
cedes  
Alabama

3. The Cherokees, in the meantime, exercised a sort of independent dominion, within their reservations; by which a retreat was furnished for runaway slaves, and fugitives from justice—a set of vagabonds ever ready for violence. This condition of their state was viewed by the people of Georgia as intolerable; and the legislature proceeded to extend its laws and jurisprudence

Chero-  
kees an  
inde-  
pendent  
state.

CHAPTER III.—1. What did Gen. Jackson propose with regard to the remaining Indian tribes? What did congress? — 2. What tribes peaceably emigrated? What contract was made between the general government and Georgia? — 3. In what situation were the Georgians placed? What did their legislature?



P'T. IV. over the whole Indian territory. The Indians offend  
 P'D. III. ed, appealed to the general government for redress  
 CH. III. The well known policy of President Jackson was to  
 1831. remove them; and the Georgians, thus encouraged,  
 Mission- sought to make their position untenable. They put in  
 aries in prison two missionaries, whom they suspected of dis-  
 prison. suading the Indians against the removal. The pre-  
 sident would do nothing to check these irregular pro-  
 ceedings.

4. A treaty was at length obtained by the agents of  
 the general government, from a few of the chiefs, by  
 which the removal of the tribe was to take place. The  
 fairness of this treaty was denied; and the Indians were  
 averse to leaving their pleasant land, and the graves of  
 their fathers. But their removal was at length effect-  
 ed without blood-shed. The power of the United  
 States was, they knew, sufficient to enforce it; and they  
 therefore believed, that resistance would be in vain.  
 Some of the most intelligent of the opposing chiefs  
 have since become convinced, that the removal will  
 be for the ultimate advantage of the Indians.

1823. 5. The greatest difficulty was, however, found with  
 Sept. the Seminoles inhabiting East Florida. A treaty was  
 A treaty made at Fort Moultrie, with their chiefs, by which they  
 made with the reinquished a large portion of their lands, but reserved  
 Semi- a part for the residence of their people. A further treaty  
 noles. was made at Payne's Landing, in Florida, by which  
 May 9. they gave up all their reservations, and conditionally  
 1832. agreed to remove. Subsequently, some of their chiefs  
 At made this agreement absolute; but the transaction was  
 Payne's regarded by the Seminoles generally, as unfair and  
 Landing. treacherous.

1834. 6. President Jackson, in 1834, sent Gen. Wiley  
 Gen. Thompson to Florida to prepare for the emigration.  
 Thompson sent He soon found that most of the Indians were unwilling  
 to Flo- to leave their homes. On holding a conference with  
 rida.

---

3. What did the Indians? What did Gen. Jackson? What was done in reference to the missionaries? — 4. What treaty was obtained? And what was at length effected? — 5. Where was the greatest difficulty found? What treaties were made with the Seminoles? At what times? — 6. Who was sent as government agent, and what were his first measures?

them Osceola, their favourite chief, a man great in Indian talents, took a tone that displeased him. He put him in irons, and confined him to prison for a day. Osceola seemed penitent, signed the treaty to remove, and was released. But he dissembled, and concerted with the Indians a deep and cruel revenge.

7. The government ordered troops from the southern posts to repair to Fort Brooke, at Tampa Bay. The command was given to Gen. Clinch, who was at Camp King. Major Dade, with 117 men, marched from Fort Brooke to join him. About eighty miles of the toilsome journey had been accomplished, when, on the morning of the 28th, Major Dade rode in front of his troops, and cheered them with the intelligence that their march was nearly at an end. A volley was fired at the moment, from hundreds of unseen muskets. The speaker, and those he addressed, fell dead. Thirty alone remained, when the Indians drew off. They improved the respite afforded them, to construct a breastwork of trees, which they felled. While they were thus engaged, where was Osceola? It is supposed that he went the twenty miles from Dade's battle-field, to Camp King, to perform a work there.

8. On that day, Gen. Wiley Thompson, with a convivial party, was dining at a house within sight of the garrison. As they sat at table, a discharge from a hundred muskets was poured through the doors and windows. Gen. Thompson fell dead, pierced by fifteen bullets. Of the others, some were killed at the first fire; others, attempting to escape, were murdered without the house. Osceola, at the head of the Indians, had rushed in, and himself scalped the man, who had once placed fetters upon the limbs of a Seminole chief. The Indians then retreated, unmolested by the garrison.

9. In the afternoon, Osceola and his mounted party, returned triumphant from the massacre at Camp King, and attacked, with whoop and yell, the inclosure of the

---

7. Who was appointed to the command? Where was he? Who marched to join him, and with what force? What befel the party? — 8. What was done next by the savages?

PART IV  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

Osceola.

1835.

Dec. 23.  
Dade's  
march.

Dec. 28,  
Dade's  
battle  
field.

Massa-  
cre at  
Camp  
King

Death of  
Gen.  
Thomp-  
son and  
others.

The last  
scene of  
the tra-  
gedy.

P'T. IV. thirty survivors. One by one, bravely fighting, the  
 P'D. III. officers and soldiers fell. The narrator, Ransom  
 CH. III. Clarke, who was wounded, escaped death by feigning it,  
 1835. and then, almost by miracle, working his way through  
 the woods. He eventually died of his wounds; and  
 thus every one of Dade's army was killed on that  
 fatal field.

10. Gen. Clinch collected a force, and marched from  
 Dec. 31. Fort Drane to the Withlacoochee. But he followed a  
 Clinch's guide who was in league with the Seminoles. When  
 battle of the army had in part crossed the Withlacoochee, Osceola  
 the Withla- and his warriors rose from concealment, and attacked  
 coochee. the Americans. They charged, and drove the Indians  
 Am. loss the Americans. They charged, and drove the Indians  
 k. 40, w. but met a considerable loss; and returned without ef-  
 60. fecting their object.

11. Emboldened by success, the Seminoles appear-  
 ed in the neighborhood of almost every settlement in  
 Florida. Houses were burned, crops destroyed, ne-  
 1836. groes carried off, and families murdered in every direc-  
 Feb. 7. tion. Gen. Scott, now invested with the chief com-  
 Gen. mand, arrived at St. Augustine. The savages having  
 Scott ar- followed Gen. Clinch, his position at Fort Drane was  
 rives. critical. Gen. Scott sent troops to his relief, and was  
 Feb. 11. preparing a plan of offensive operations. Gen. Gaines  
 Gen. landed at Tampa Bay, four days after Scott arrived at  
 Gaines brings about  
 about 1,000  
 men from  
 N. O. St. Augustine. He brought a force from New Orleans,  
 and considered it as his right to command in the  
 peninsula.

12. Gaines marched his troops to Fort Drane; and  
 taking from there, four days provisions, he set out for  
 Feb. 20. the Withlacoochee, to seek the Seminoles. Having  
 Gen. reached that river, the Indians attacked him, and a  
 Gaines's battle ensued. The Americans kept the ground, though  
 battle of the not without considerable loss. The Indians then be-  
 Withla- sieged them in camp. Gen. Clinch approached with  
 toochee. an army. Osceola contrived to amuse Gen. Gaines

---

9. What was the fate of the thirty survivors?—10. Give  
 an account of Gen. Clinch's battle of the Withlacoochee?—  
 11. What was the conduct of the Indians? Who arrived at St.  
 Augustine? What did he do? What was done by Gen.  
 Gaines?—12. Where did he march? Describe Gen. Gaines'  
 battle of the Withlacoochee? What happened after the battle?



with a parley, until the Indian women and children were removed to the south. There, among the everglades and hammocks, the American troops vainly sought the tribe through bogs and fens,—in danger from serpents, and other venomous reptiles,—tortured by poisonous insects, and often the victims of the climate.

13. Gen. Jesup soon arrived to take the command; Gen. Scott, having been ordered to the country of the Creeks. Osceola, under protection of a flag with about seventy of his warriors, came to the American camp. Gen. Jesup believed him to be treacherous, and caused him, with his escort, to be forcibly detained, and subsequently placed in a prison at Fort Moultrie, S. C., where, a few months after, he died of a complaint in the throat.

P'T. IV.  
P'D. III.  
CH. III

1837

Oct. 21.  
Seizure  
of  
Osceola.

1838.

Jan.  
His  
death.

14. Gen. Jesup, at first supposed that the war would soon be brought to a close, but finding himself mistaken, he directed Col. Taylor to act offensively. This officer set out with a thousand resolute men, who marched four days through wet swampy grounds. On the fifth, the Indians, whom they sought, attacked them at the entrance of the Kissimmee river, into lake Okee-Chobee. The troops engaged them with coolness. The brunt of the battle fell at first on the sixth regiment. Col. Thompson their commander, mortally wounded; died, encouraging his men. The Indians were routed and dispersed, and a hundred gave themselves up to be carried to the west.

1837

Dec. 20

Dec. 25.  
Battle of  
Okee-  
Chobee.

15. Col., afterwards Gen. Worth, had the honor of bringing this contest to a close. In the whole history of the United States, no war is related, which, on the whole, is comparable with the Florida war, for danger and difficulty; and no military services are recorded which required, when all things are considered, such Spartan self-devotion.

1842

16. Early in May, the Creeks began hostilities—

---

12. To what evils have the army been subjected to in searching for these Indians? — 13. What change of officers occurred? What happened with respect to Osceola? — 14. What were the circumstances connected with the battle of Okee-Chobee? — 15. Who brought the Florida war to a close? What may be said of this war?

P.T. IV. setting fire to houses, and murdering families. They  
 P.D. III. attacked a steamboat which was ascending the Chata-  
 CH. IV. hoochee, eight miles below Columbus,—killed her  
 1836. pilot, wounded several others, and burned the boat.  
 Another steamboat was fired at the wharf of Roanoke,  
 and the passengers were consumed in the flames. The  
 May 30. barbarians then set fire to the town, and destroyed it.  
 They are The governor of Georgia raised troops, took the field  
 over- in person, and Gen. Scott arrived on the 30th of May  
 powered Their combined efforts quelled the Creeks, and peace  
 was restored early in the summer.

## CHAPTER IV.

The Bank Question.—The Revulsion.—Van Buren's Adminis-  
 tration.—Harrison's Election and Death.

1831. 1. MR. RIVES, at Paris, negotiated with the minister  
 Mr. of Louis Philippe, king of the French, a treaty by which  
 Rives' that nation agreed to give 25,000,000 francs to in-  
 treaty. demnify the United States for spoliations on American  
 commerce, made under the operation of the decrees of  
 Napoleon. The French, however, had neglected to  
 pay the money. Gen. Jackson took such prompt  
 1836. measures and so decided a tone, that in 1836 the de-  
 mand was liquidated agreeably to the treaty. . . . In Sep-  
 1837. tember, 1835, Wisconsin was made a territory, and  
 January. Arkansas, a state. Michigan was, in 1837, admitted  
 Michi- to the Union, making the twenty-sixth state; the ori-  
 gan a ginal number, thirteen, being now exactly doubled.  
 state.  
 2. Extravagance and luxury had prevailed, and na-  
 1837. tional adversity followed. The opponents of Gen. Jack-  
 son attributed the revulsion to circumstances connected

16. Give an account of the atrocious acts of the Creeks? How  
 were they brought to terms?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What treaty was negotiated by Mr. Rives?  
 When was the money paid? What territory and states were or-  
 ganized? What can you say concerning the number of states  
 at this time? — 2. What had prevailed? What followed?

with the overthrow of the national bank, caused by his hostility. In 1832, the directors of the bank applied for a renewal of its charter. After much debate, congress passed, by a considerable majority, a bill granting their petition. This bill, Gen. Jackson defeated by the presidential veto... The funds of the government had been deposited in the national bank. In 1833, the president caused them to be withdrawn. The public treasure, was by act of congress, placed in certain selected state banks, known at the time as the "pet banks." These were encouraged to discount freely, as it might accommodate the people.

3. Mr. Jackson was succeeded by Martin Van Buren, who, during the last four years, had, as vice-president, presided with great ability in the senate. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was made vice-president.

4. After the public money went into the state banks, facilities too great before, were increased, whereby men might, by pledging their credit, possess themselves of money. The good old roads of honest industry were abandoned, while fortunes were made in an hour by speculation. This unnatural state of things had its crisis in 1837.

5. Before this crisis, every one was making money. Afterwards all were losing. Many had contracted large debts; when some began to fail, others, who had depended on them, were obliged to fail also; and so the disaster went on increasing its circle, until the whole community felt it, in a greater or less degree.

6. The banks now stopped specie payments. Those where the public funds were deposited, shared the common fate, and the questions now arose, how was the government to meet its current expenses, and what next should be done with the public purse? To de-

P'T. IV.

P'D. III  
CH. IV.

1832.

The  
veto.

1833

The  
with-  
drawal.

1835.

The "pet  
banks."

1837

Mar. 4.  
Van Bu-  
ren and  
Johnson.

1835

to

1837.

Mania of  
land  
specula-  
tion.The re-  
vulsion  
causes  
great  
distress.Mr. Van  
Buren  
convenes  
a special  
session.  
Sept. 4.

2. How is this change in public prosperity accounted for by the opponents of Gen. Jackson? What happened in 1835? Where had the national funds been deposited? Who caused them to be withdrawn? Where were they then placed? — 3. Who was made president? In what year? — 4. What was the state of pecuniary affairs from 1835 to '37? — 5. How was it before the crisis? How after? — 6. How was it with the banks? What was done by the president? — 6. When did congress meet?



"T. IV. cide these questions, Mr. Van Buren issued his pro-  
 P.D. III. clamation, convening congress.

CH. IV.

1837. 7. In his message, the president recommended a  
 "Sub- mode of keeping the public money, called the "sub-  
 Treasury treasury" scheme; which was rejected by congress  
 bill." Treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and other  
 measures taken, to supply the wants of the govern-  
 ment, but the majority contended, that, as to the dis-  
 tresses of the people, the case did not call for the  
 interference of government; but for a reformation in  
 the individual extravagance which had prevailed, and  
 a return to the neglected ways of industry.

Treasury  
 notes.

1835. 8. Among the causes of pecuniary distress, was a  
 Dec. 16. dreadful fire, with which, in 1835, the city of New  
 529 York had been visited. The mercantile houses, on  
 buildings whom, with the insurance offices, there fell a loss of  
 burned. seventeen millions of dollars, did not generally fail at  
 Its effect, the time; for they were, with commendable humanity,  
 as a busi- sustained by the others. But the property was gone;  
 ness ca- and though in a measure equalized at the time, at  
 lamity length the deficit affected all.... On the 13th of Au-  
 felt in 1837. gust, the banks resumed specie payments.

1838.  
 Aug. 13.

9. A party had been gradually formed in Canada  
 who were opposed to the British government, and  
 who loudly demanded independence. Many Ameri-  
 cans on the northern frontier, regarding their cause as  
 that of liberty and human rights, assumed the name of  
 patriots, and formed secret associations, for the pur-  
 pose of aiding the insurgents across the line.

Canadians re-  
 volt.

10. In prosecuting this illegal interference in the con-  
 cerns of a foreign power, a party of adventurers took  
 possession of Navy Island, in the Niagara river, two  
 miles above the falls, and lying within the jurisdiction  
 of Upper Canada. The president of the United

Affair of  
 Navy  
 Island.

---

7. What did Mr. Van Buren recommend in his message? What was his scheme called? Did it succeed? What did Congress order? Why did they not attempt some relief to the people?—8. Give an account of the great fire in New York. When did the banks resume specie payments?—9. Give an account of Canadian affairs as connected with American.—10. What was done at Navy Island?

States, and the governor of New York both issued proclamations, enjoining a strict neutrality.

11. A small steamboat, called the *Caroline*, was however, hired to ply for unlawful purposes, between Navy Island and Schlosser. At evening, a detachment of 150 armed men from the Canada side, in five boats, with muffled oars, proceeded to Schlosser, drove the men who were on board the *Caroline* ashore, cut her loose from her fastenings to the wharf, and setting the boat on fire, let her float over the falls. A man by the name of Durfee was killed, and great excitement prevailed for a time. A Bill to establish the Independent Treasury at length passed, and although it was repealed early in Tyler's administration, it was afterward re-enacted, and became popular.

12. The census of 1840, gave as the number of inhabitants in the United States, 17,068,666.—The presidency was, by a large majority, bestowed upon William Henry Harrison, whose social and public virtues had been rendered conspicuous by the various official stations of a long and useful life. John Tyler, of Virginia, was made vice-president.

13. From the capitol, Gen. Harrison went to the presidential mansion. Thousands flocked around him with congratulations and proffers of service, whose sincerity he was not prone to doubt, for he was himself sincere. The sunshine of public favor thus fell too brightly on a head white with the frosts of age. He expired just a month from the day of his inauguration. Mr. Tyler by the constitution became president. He issued an able and patriotic address, and appointed a day of public fasting.

---

10. What proclamations were issued?—11. What were the circumstances of the burning of the *Caroline*? What important Bill did Congress pass, in June, 1840?—12. What number of inhabitants were there in 1840? How did the presidential election terminate?—13. How long did President Harrison live to enjoy his new dignity? Who was his successor?

P.T. IV

P.D. III.

CH. IV.

1837

Dec. 22.

Affair of  
the *Caro-*  
line

1840

Inde-  
pendent  
Treasury  
passed,  
June 30The  
census.

1841.

Inaugu-  
ration of  
Harrison  
and  
TylerApril 4.  
Death of  
Harrison.Tyler  
succeeds.  
he ap-  
points a  
public  
fast.

## CHAPTER V.

Mr Tyler's administration.—Mobs.—Disturbances in Rhode Island.—Anti-Rentism.—Mormonism, &c.

P'T IV.

P'D III.

CHAP. V.

1841.

National  
Bank.  
Opinions  
of the  
Whigs.

Opinions  
of the  
Demo-  
cratic  
party.

May 31.  
Congress  
convene.

1. THE Whig party were opposed to Mr. Van Buren's Independent Treasury, and in favor of a National Bank, as a place of deposit for the public revenue. They said it would be more convenient and economical to the government,—that it would facilitate business, and promote prosperity; and that the attempt to bring back a specie circulation was a dangerous experiment upon the currency. The Democratic party, on the other hand, maintained that any connection of government with banks, or with the business affairs of individuals, was foreign to its purposes, and a fruitful source of bribery and corruption. They believed, that the government should keep its own money, operating not with paper currency, but with specie.

2. The majority of the voters adopted the views of the Whigs; and chose Messrs. Harrison and Tyler, with an expectation that they would favor a National Bank. General Harrison, aware of this, issued, March 17th, his proclamation, calling an extra session of Congress to convene on the 31st of May, to consider "sundry weighty and important matters, chiefly growing out of the revenue and finances of the country." When this Congress met, Mr. Tyler was president.

3. Congress repealed the Sub-Treasury law on the 6th of August. Three days earlier, the House of Representatives had passed an act, establishing a Na-

---

CHAPTER V.—1. What were the opinions of the Whig party in regard to a National Bank? What on the other hand was maintained by the Democratic party?—2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler?



tiona Bank. Mr. Tyler, to the deep chagrin of the party which elected him, defeated the measure by the presidential veto. The mortified Whigs got up another scheme for a bank, and passed it through Congress under the name of a "Fiscal Corporation of the United States." A second time Mr. Tyler defeated them by his veto. The able cabinet selected by Harrison had all remained in office up to the period of this second veto; when all resigned, except Mr. Webster, the secretary of state. His country needed him in the office, and remaining, he found occasion to render her essential service.

PT IV  
P'D III.  
CHAP. V  
1841  
Aug. 16.  
Tyler's  
first veto.  
Sept. 9.  
His  
second.  
Cabinet  
all resign;  
except  
Mr.  
Webster.

4. In the unwarrantable stretch of credit which had existed, states over-zealous for internal improvement, had participated; and when the revulsion came, some of these found themselves unable, without direct taxation, (to which the rulers dared not promptly resort,) to meet their engagements; and the holders of their bonds, many of whom were foreigners, could not obtain the interest when due. These states were said to have repudiated their bonds, and this *repudiation* for a time cast disgrace upon the whole nation. With returning prosperity, however, these states resume payment.

Repudia-  
tion.

5. A disagreement between the United States and England had long existed in regard to the North-Eastern boundary. Much excitement prevailed between the inhabitants of Maine and New Brunswick, —regions adjoining the disputed line,—and measures were taken on each side, which threatened war. Lord Ashburton was sent from England as a special envoy to settle this dispute; and Mr. Webster, with great diplomatic ability, arranged with him the terms of a treaty, by which the important question of the North-Eastern boundary is finally and amicably settled.

1842.  
Ashbur-  
ton Trea-  
ty, (rati-  
fied by  
the Uni-  
ted States  
Senate,  
Aug. 20.)

(in Eng-  
land Oct.  
14.)

6. Serious riots occurred in the spring of 1844 in Philadelphia. They grew out of a jealousy on the

1844  
May 8.  
Riot in  
Philadel-  
phia.

3. What occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account of what was called repudiation.—5. On what subject was there a disagreement between the United States and Great Britain? How was it settled?

**P'T IV.** part of native American Protestants, that the foreign  
**P'D III.** Roman Catholic population intended to gain the con-  
**CHAP. V.** trol of the common schools, and change the established  
 34 build- order of instruction, especially in regard to the use of  
 ings burned. the Scriptures. Thirty dwelling-houses, a convent,  
 killed 14, and three churches were burned. Fourteen persons  
 wounded 40, were killed and forty wounded. These disgraceful  
 June 7. scenes were renewed on the 7th of June. The gover-  
 Second riot. nor called out 5,000 of the military. Years have pass-  
 Killed and ed, and those unhappy jealousies have subsided.  
 wounded 50.

7. Rhode Island now became the theatre of an attempt to set aside existing authorities. The "suffrage party," by whom it was made, did not, however, regard the matter in this light. They formed, though  
**1843.** by illegal assemblies, what they considered a constitu-  
 April 18. tion for the state; and then proceeded to elect under  
 Dorr's attempt. it a governor (Mr. Dorr) and members for a legislature. Their opponents, called the "law and order" party, acting under existing authorities, elected state officers, Mr. King being made governor.

8. On the 18th of May, Dorr went with an armed force, and took the state arsenal. No lives were lost, as his directions to fire on those who opposed his progress were not obeyed. Gov. King meantime put himself at the head of the military. Several persons were arrested, and Dorr fled. He afterwards appeared at Chepachet with some two or three hundred men;  
 June 25. Dorr at Chepachet.  
**1844.** but a superior government force being sent, they dispersed. Dorr afterwards returned, was tried, convicted of treason, and sentenced to the state's prison. Meantime a new constitution was by legal measures  
 Dorr sent to the state's prison.  
**1845.** adopted. In 1845, Dorr was released from prison; but he was not restored to his civil rights, on account of his refusal to take the oath of allegiance to the new constitution.  
 Is released.

9. An alarming tendency to anarchy has been ex-

---

6. Give an account of the riots in Philadelphia, remembering to state the times.—7. What occurred in Rhode Island? —8. Give an account of the illegal proceedings of Mr. Dorr, and his punishment. How and when was it remitted?—9. How and in what respect was a tendency to anarchy manifested?

perienced in the anti-rent disturbances in the state of New York. Under the Dutch government, certain settlers had received patents of considerable portions of land; of which that of Van Rensselaer was the most extensive,—comprehending the greater part of Albany and Rensselaer counties. These lands were divided into small farms, and leased in perpetuity, on low rents, to be paid in a certain quantity of wheat, a certain number of fowls, &c. In process of time, the tenants began to consider these legal conditions as anti-republican,—a relic of feudal tyranny.

P'T IV.

P'D III.

CHAP. V.

Anti-rent  
disturb-  
ances.(Rensse-  
laerwyck  
48 m.  
long 28  
broad.)

10. In the summer of 1844, the anti-rent disturbances broke out with great violence in the eastern towns of Rensselaer, and on the Livingston manor, in Columbia county. Extensive associations were formed by the anti-renters to resist the laws. They kept armed and mounted bands, disguised as Indians, scouring the country; and the traveller as he met them, issuing from some dark wood, with their hideous masks and gaudy calicoes, was required, on penalty of insult, to say, "Down with the rent."

1844.

Anti-  
renters  
disguised  
as In-  
dians.

11. These lawless rangers forcibly entered houses, took men from their homes, tarred and feathered, or otherwise maltreated them. In Rensselaer county, at noonday, a man was killed where about 50 "Indians" were present,—some of whom were afterwards arraigned, when they swore that they knew nothing of the murder. Sometimes 1,000 of these disguised anarchists were assembled in one body. Similar disturbances occurred in Delaware county. At length Steele, a deputy-sheriff, was murdered in the execution of his official duty.

(Smith  
killed in  
Grafton.)Steele  
killed in  
Dela-  
ware.

12. Meanwhile SILAS WRIGHT was chosen governor of the state. Much does his country owe him for the wisdom and firmness of the measures by which public order was restored. On the 27th of August he pro-

---

9. Give an account of the Dutch patents, with the conditions of rent. How in process of time had the tenants come to regard these conditions?—10 and 11. What happened in the summer of 1844?—12. What is here said of Silas Wright? What was done in regard to Sheriffs?



P'T. IV. claimed the county of Delaware in a state of insurrec-  
 P'D III. tion. Resolute men were made sheriffs, and com-  
 CHAP. V. petent military aid afforded them. Leading anti-  
 renters were taken, brought to trial, and imprisoned.

1846. The murderers of Steele were condemned to death,—  
 Governor Wright's but their punishment was commuted to that of per-  
 mea- petual confinement. Gov. Young, the successor of Mr.  
 sures. Wright, released from the state's prison the whole

1847. number, eighteen, who had been committed for anti-  
 (Anti- rent offences. Fresh outbreaks of these troubles fol-  
 rent out- lowed this lenity.  
 rage on  
 Peter  
 Shel-  
 don.)

13. In congress, March 3d, 1845, an act was passed  
 admitting two states into the Union,—*Iowa*, its west-  
 1845. ern boundary the river Des Moines,—and *Florida*,  
 March 3. comprising the east and west parts, as defined by the  
 Iowa and Florida. treaty of cession.

14. One of the most extraordinary impostures of  
 the age is that called "Mormonism." The leader,  
 Joseph Smith, was an obscure, uneducated man, of  
 New England origin. Under pretence of special  
 (1805. revelation, he produced the stereotype plates of the  
 Dec. 23. "Book of Mormon," by which he persuaded numbers,  
 Jo. Smith born in Sharon, Vt.) that he was the inspired founder of a new religion,  
 which was to give to Mormons the same pre-eminence  
 over all other people, as the Jews had over the Gen-  
 tiles. His laws are not fully understood, but there is  
 little room to doubt, that they give his followers  
 licence to commit every crime; especially that they  
 degrade and demoralize women.

15. Yet numbers of both sexes were found to join  
 1838. and aid this delusion—throwing their property into  
 Oct. 6. common stock. On their arrival at the Far West in  
 Mormons at Far West. Missouri, the Mormons numbered 5,000, of whom 700  
 were armed men. They were charged with various

---

12. What was done in regard to the leading anti-renters?  
 the murderers of Steele? Were they suffered to remain in  
 prison?—13. At what time were two states admitted into the  
 Union, and what states?—14. Give some account of Mormon-  
 ism, and its originator.—15. Give a further account of the  
 progress of Mormonism, to the building of the temple—to the de-  
 parture of the Mormons to California

crimes; among others, an attempt to assassinate Gov. P<sup>T</sup> IV. Boggs; and they were finally expelled the state by a P<sup>D</sup> III military force commanded by Gen. Atkinson. They CHAP. VI then purchased a large tract of land in Illinois, on the eastern bank of the Mississippi. There, on a beautiful slope, they built Nauvoo, and erected a pompous temple. But murders, robberies, and other secret crimes became frequent in their neighborhood. The surrounding people were enraged. The Mormon prophet and his brother were seized by the state officers, and confined in jail at Carthage. A hundred armed men in disguise, broke in and murdered them. The Mormons then sold their possessions at Nauvoo, and in 1846 migrated westward. They are now located on the Great Salt Lake. Their settlement, containing about 10,000 inhabitants, forms the nucleus of the new territory of Utah.

Nauvoo  
in Ill.

1846  
to '48.  
Collect  
at the  
Salt  
Lake.  
1850.  
Utah  
made a  
territory

## CHAPTER VI.

Texas.—Mexico.—Causes of Annexation and the Mexican War.

1. ON account of the discovery of La Salle, the French claimed Texas to the Rio Grande, as forming a part of Louisiana. The Spaniards of Mexico remonstrated, and sent thither an armed force, but the French had already dispersed. *The first effectual settlement in Texas was that of San Antonio de Bexar, made by the Spaniards in 1692.* But the Mexican authorities seemed not so desirous to occupy this country, as to keep it a desolate waste, that thus an impassable barrier might be maintained between them and their Anglo-American neighbors. This desire to avoid contact by means of an intervening desert, was so strongly felt by the Mexicans, even in 1847, as to

1685  
La Salle  
discov-  
ers  
Texas.

1692  
Bexar  
founded

---

CHAPTER VI.—1. On what account did the French claim Texas? How was this claim met by the Spaniards? When was the first effectual settlement made in Texas? How did the Mexicans manifest aversion to Anglo-Americans, at an early day, and again recently?

P'T IV. break off negotiations for peace, when General Scott  
P'D III. was at the gates of their capital with a victorious  
CHAP. VI. army. The aversion to the Anglo-Americans thus  
manifested, the Mexicans at first derived from their  
mother country; and it may be marked *as the first  
and predisposing cause of the late Mexican war.*

1810. 2. After Ferdinand VII., king of Spain, had, in  
Mexico 1810, fallen with the Spanish nation, under the power  
revolts. of Napoleon, the Mexicans revolted. But the people  
were not united;—and after the bloody war of eight

1818. years, called *the first revolution*, the royalists prevail-  
Royalists ed. *The second revolution* was begun in 1821,  
prevail. by the Mexican general ITURBIDE. Under him they

1821—24. threw off the Spanish yoke. But he made himself a  
monarch. The people wished for a republic; and  
Iturbide. they deposed Iturbide, banished,—and, on his return,  
(He is shot at Padillo.) condemned and executed him. In 1824, a *federal*

1824. constitution was formed under the auspices of a new  
Federal leader, SANTA ANNA; by which Mexico, like our re-  
constitu- public, was divided into states, with each, a legislature,  
tion of and over the whole a general government.  
Mexico.

3. In 1803, the United States, in purchasing Louis-  
iana of France, obtained with it the disputed claim to  
1820. Texas; but in 1820,\* they ceded it by treaty to Spain  
Texas as a part of Mexico; Florida being then granted by  
ceded to that power to the United States. Two years there-  
Spain. after

1821. after STEPHEN F. AUSTIN led a colony from the  
Anglo- United States to Texas, and made a settlement be-  
Ameri- tween the rivers Brazos and Colorado. The Spanish  
can Tex- authorities in Mexico, desirous of defence against the  
is found- destructive incursions of the fierce and hostile Co-  
ed. manches, had, contrary to their ordinary policy, made

(\* The treaty was made in 1819, but not perfect-  
ed until 1830.)  
1. Of what may this aversion be regarded as the first  
cause?—2. When did the Mexicans revolt against the Spanish  
government? Give some account of the first revolution—of  
the second—of Iturbide. What was done in 1824?—3. When  
had the United States a claim to Texas? How obtained, and  
how and when was it relinquished? When and by whom led,  
was the first American colony of Texas? Where established?  
What motives had the Mexicans in admitting these settlers, and  
what conditions did they require of them?



laws favoring American immigration; yet only *under* P'D IV.  
*the condition that the immigrants should adopt the* P'D III.  
*Catholic religion, and send their children to Spanish* CHAP. VI  
*schools.*

4. Austin's enterprise being joined by others, who like himself, sought to better their fortunes, his colony soon flourished to such an extent, that it attracted the attention of the Mexican clergy. They found that the law, which required the settlers to make oath that they were Catholics, and would establish Spanish schools, had been disregarded by them; and they felt the utmost alarm, and of course a desire that those whom they regarded as foreign heretics, should either submit to their national laws, and embrace their national religion, or be rooted out. *Here were sown the seeds of future war:* for these supposed heretics were the brothers of American citizens, and, though expatriated, they were children-born of the republic.

Mexican  
clergy  
alarmed.

5. Texas, under the constitution of 1824, was united in one state with the neighboring province of Coahuila. The Spanish Mexicans of this province outvoted and pursued an oppressive policy against the Texans. Stephen F. Austin was sent by them to the city of Mexico to petition against these grievances, and for the privilege of forming Texas into a separate state. The Mexican congress treated him with neglect. He wrote a letter to the Texans advising them at all events to proceed in forming a separate state government. The party in Texas opposed to Austin, sent back his letter to the Mexican authorities,—who made him prisoner as he was returning, sent him back to Mexico, and threw him into a dungeon.

(In 1834  
there  
were  
about  
10,000  
Americans  
in  
Texas.)

Austin  
taken  
prisoner  
(at Sal-  
tillo.)

6. Meanwhile, Santa Anna subverted the constitu-

4. How did the Mexican clergy find that these conditions had been met on the part of the settlers? How did the clergy regard them, and what appears to have been their desire respecting them? To what would such feelings naturally lead?

—5. With what Mexican province was Texas united, and how treated? For what was Austin sent to Mexico? How was he there treated, and what course did he pursue? Why was Austin thrown into a dungeon?

P'T IV. tion of 1824, and in the name of liberty, made him-  
 P'D III. self the military tyrant of the Mexicans. He sent  
 CHAP. VI. General Cos into Texas, to place the civil rulers there  
 in subjection to the military. At this time Austin  
 Texan returned, and was placed at the head of a central com-  
 Revolu- mittee of safety. Appeals were made through the  
 tion be- press to the Texan people, and arrangements set on  
 gins. foot to raise men and money. Adventurers from the  
 American states came to their aid. The object of  
 the Texans at this time, was to join a Mexican party  
 now in arms against the military usurpation of Santa  
 Anna, and thus to maintain the constitution of 1824.

Oct. 2. 7. Mexican forces had been sent to Gonzalez to de-  
 Battle of demand a field-piece. The Texans attacked and drove  
 Gonzalez. Mex- them from the ground with loss.—Santa Anna had  
 ican now caused the fortresses of Goliad, and the Alamo,  
 force or citadel of Bexar, to be strongly fortified; the latter  
 1000, being the headquarters of General Cos. The Texans  
 Texan on the 8th of October, took Goliad with valuable  
 500. munitions. On the 28th, they obtained a victory near  
 Mexican Bexar.—Texan delegates, November 22d, met in con-  
 loss 100. vention at St. Felipe, and established a provisional  
 Texan 1 government. On the 11th of December, their forces,  
 killed. under General Burleson took, after a bloody siege and  
 a violent struggle, the strong fortress of the *Alamo*  
 and the city of Bexar; General Cos and his army  
 were made prisoners, and not a Mexican in arms re-  
 mained. But Santa Anna, ever active and alert, was  
 gathering his forces; and in February, 1836, was ap-  
 proaching with 8,000 men.

1836 8. Unhappily, divisions prevailed in the Texan coun-  
 March 6. sels, while the small and insufficient garrison of the  
 Massacre Alamo was attacked by this powerful army; headed  
 of the by a man, who added to the smoothness of the  
 Alamo. tiger, his fierceness and cruelty. Travis, who com-  
 k. 150.

---

6. What in the mean time was the course of Santa Anna with respect to the constitution of 1824, and with regard to the Texans? What measures indicating resistance were taken by the Texans? What was now their object?—7. Where was the first blood shed? Give some account of the battle of *Gonzalez*. What was done by the Texans under Burleson?

manded, had only 150 men. They fought all one bloody night, until he fell with all the garrison but seven;—and they were slain, while crying for quarter!

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CHAP. VI.

9. Meantime, a Texan convention had assembled at Washington, on the Brazos, which, on the 2d of March, DECLARED INDEPENDENCE. They had desired, said the delegates, to unite with their Mexican brethren in support of the constitution of 1824, but in vain. Now appealing to the world for the necessities of their condition, they declared themselves an INDEPENDENT REPUBLIC, and committed their cause to the SUPREME ARBITER OF NATIONS.

March 2.  
Texans  
declare  
independ-  
ence.

10. Colonel Fanning commanded at Goliad. He had besought the Texan authorities to reinforce him; and he had been directed by them to abandon his post, and save his garrison by retreat.\* The Mexicans, by their superior force, overpowered him. He surrendered on condition that he and his men should be treated as prisoners of war. Santa Anna ordered their execution; and four hundred unarmed and unresisting men, unsuspecting of harm, were drawn out. One of the fated soldiers exclaimed, "They are going to shoot us; let us turn and not be shot in the back." In another instant the fire was given, and the prisoners fell dead. Fanning was shot the next day;—and his body denied a burial. These men were American-born. Fanning had been an officer in the army of the United States. American hate and sympathy kindled as the shocking massacre was told. *Annexation followed in time, and the Mexican war.*

1836  
March 27.  
Massacre  
at Goliad.  
k. 400.

11. On the 21st of April, the main Texan army, under GENERAL HOUSTON, met the Mexicans who

\* Of this fact, the writer was recently informed by General, now Senator Houston.—Fanning had marched out of the fortress, met, and contended with the Mexicans, was taken and carried back, so that the massacre was at Goliad.

8. Give some account of the massacre of the Alamo.—9. Of the Texans' declaration of Independence.—10. Of the massacre of Goliad. Who were the men massacred at Goliad, and with what feelings was their slaughter heard of in America? What followed?—11. Give some account of the battle of San Jacinto.



P'T IV. were double their number, near the San Jacinto.

P'D III. Furiously the Texans rushed to battle with the cry,

CHAP. VI. "Remember the Alamo." They fought at less than half-rifle distance, and in less than half an hour,

April 21.  
SAN JA- wholly routed the Mexicans; killing and wounding a  
CINTO. number greater than the whole Texan force. Among  
Mexican the prisoners taken after the battle, was Santa Anna  
force 1,600, himself. As supreme ruler of Mexico, he, by a treaty,  
Tex. 783. acknowledged their independence, and allowed their  
Mexican loss, 630 western boundary to be the Rio Grande. This treaty  
k., 203 w. was after his return disavowed by Mexico, and by Santa  
Tex. loss, Anna himself, it being made while he was a prisoner.  
8 k., 17 w.

12. Although the United States, England, and other powers acknowledged the independence of Texas, yet Mexico, through all her changes of rulers ever claimed the country; and occasionally sent troops to renew the war by predatory excursions.—  
1837. The Texans in 1841, sent under McLEOD a party of 300, who were mostly Americans, to take possession of Santa Fé, the capital of New Mexico, that city lying on the eastern side of the Rio Grande. These were made prisoners by the Mexicans, and treated with great cruelty.

13. General Woll, sent by Santa Anna to invade Texas, took Bexar. A Texan army, having driven him back, were full of zeal to carry the war into Mexico. A party of 300 crossed the Rio Grande, and proceeding to Mier, they attacked it; and although opposed by five times their force, they fought their way into the heart of the place, killed and wounded double their whole number, when, although they had lost only 35 men, they capitulated.\* These prisoners were treated with great severity.

1842.  
Sept. 11.  
The at-  
tack on  
Mier.

\* They were, says General Green, in his Journal of the Expedition, betrayed into the surrender by Fisher, their leader, who had lost his mind by a gunshot wound. Green says this party of 300, killed and wounded 800 of the Mexicans at Mier.

- 
11. What treaty did Santa Anna make with the Texans?  
—12. Who acknowledged the Texan independence, and who did not? Give some account of the attempt to take Santa Fé  
—13. The attempt of the Texans on Mier.

14. Texas early made application to be received P'T IV,  
P'D III,  
CHAP. VI. into the American Union. General Jackson objected, and afterwards Mr. Van Buren,—on the ground of existing peaceful relations with Mexico, and the unsettled boundary of Texas. Mr. Tyler brought forward the proposition. It was lost in congress. But the mass of the American people were in favor of Annexation. The Whig candidates for president and vice-president were Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen, who were opposed to immediate annexation; and the Democratic, were James K. Polk and George M. Dallas, who were pledged in its favor. 1844.  
Elected  
as presi-  
dent, J.  
K. Polk,  
of Tenn.  
Vice-P.,  
G. M.  
Dallas  
of Pa. The latter were elected; and on the 4th of March, 1845.  
March 4.  
Inaugu-  
rated. 1845, they were duly inaugurated.

15. On the 28th of February, after the election, and before the inauguration, congress passed the *joint resolution* to annex Texas. Additional new states, not exceeding four, may be formed from this territory *with* slavery, if south of lat.  $36\frac{1}{2}$ , but if north, *without*.—The Mexican minister at Washington, Senor Almonte, who had before announced that Mexico would declare war if Texas were annexed, now gave notice, that since America had consummated “the most unjust act recorded in history,” negotiations were at an end. 1845  
Feb. 28.  
Joint  
Resolu-  
tion an-  
nexing  
Texas.  
  
(March  
1.  
It re-  
ceives  
the Pres-  
ident's  
signa-  
ture.)

16. Mexico had been to the Americans an unjust and injurious neighbor. Such had been the undressed wrongs of person and property, to which American citizens had been subjected in Mexico, that had she not been a weaker nation and a sister re-

---

**14.** Give a history of the Annexation of Texas, to the close of the presidential election. How is it manifested by this account that the people were in favor of annexation? Are presidents of the United States elected the same year in which they are inaugurated—Mr. Polk for example?—**15.** When did congress pass the joint resolution to annex Texas? What condition was there respecting new states? What had previously been announced as the determination of Mexico in case the United States annexed Texas? What announcement was now made by the Mexican minister?—**16.** What had been the course of Mexico towards American citizens? What hindered war during Jackson's administration?

**P'T IV.** public, war would have resulted during Jackson's ad-  
**P'D III.** ministration. Mr. Van Buren recommended measures  
**CHAP. VI.** leading to war;—when the Mexicans resorted to ne-  
**1839.** gotiation. In 1839 a treaty was made, by which  
**Mexican** they agreed to pay large indemnities to American  
**treaty.** sufferers. This treaty was modified in 1843, but its  
**1843.** stipulations, the Mexican government had mostly failed  
**It is mod-** to observe.  
**ified.**

**1845.** 17. The assent of Texas, by which she became a  
**Annexa-** part of the American Union, was expressed in the  
**tion com-** ordinance of July 5, 1845. Two days thereafter, a  
**pleted.** request was dispatched to President Polk to send an  
 armed force to protect Texas against the threatened  
 invasion of Mexico. The administration judiciously  
 chose, as commander of the forces to be sent, Col.  
**(Com-** **ZACHARY TAYLOR.** On the 30th of July he was or-  
**mander** dered by the war department to move as near to the  
**at Okee** Rio Grande as prudence would dictate. Thereupon he  
**Chohee.** marched, and took post at Corpus Christi. A Mexi-  
**Soon** can force, in the mean time, had collected on the west-  
**made a** ern bank of the Rio Grande.  
**Briga-**  
**dier.)**

**1845.** 18. Although regular pacific negotiations were  
**Mr. Polk** closed, yet the American executive made overtures  
**makes** for peace through Mr. Black, the American consul at  
**overtures** Mexico. General HERRERA, one of the wisest patriots  
**for peace.** of Mexico, was now at the head of her affairs. He  
 was disposed to peace, and he gave private assurances  
 that he would receive a special commissioner to treat  
 respecting Texas; but the American government, he  
 said, must first withdraw a fleet, with which they  
 menaced Vera Cruz. This was done.

19. The ancient aversion of the Mexicans had been,  
 by the annexation, wrought into jealousy and fierce

---

**16.** What was done during Mr. Van Buren's administration  
 respecting a treaty?—**17.** When did Texas by her own ordi-  
 nance actually become a part of the American Union? What  
 was done two days thereafter? Who was chosen to command  
 the military defenders of Texas? What orders did he receive,  
 and what do?—**18.** Who was at the head of affairs in Mexico?  
 What was done by Mr. Polk (the American Executive) in re-  
 gard to peace?—**19.** How did the aversion of the Mexicans  
 now manifest itself?



revenge; and he who most vilified the Americans, **P'T IV.** and the loudest blustered for war, was most the **P'D III** popular favorite; and such was PAREDES, by whose **CHAP. VI** party, Herrera was denounced as a traitor for suspected intercourse with the foes of the nation. He was still struggling for his place, when Mr. Slidell, sent by Mr. Polk, arrived in Mexico, and demanded to be received. Herrera rejected his mission on the ground that the American government had sent him as an envoy to settle the whole difference between the two nations, and not as a commissioner to consider merely the Texan question. He had brought the American account-book; when it had been proposed by the Mexicans to settle such items only, as appeared upon their own. Herrera, even with this rejection, was not found violent enough to please the Mexicans, and they displaced him, and elevated Paredes.

Dec. 20.  
Mr. Slidell re-  
jected.

Dec. 29.  
(Revolution in  
Mexico.)

**1846**  
(Jan. 2.  
Paredes  
made presi-  
dent.)

20. On the 16th of January, 1845, the United States senate ratified a treaty with China, which had been there negotiated between Mr. Cushing, the American Envoy Extraordinary, and the Commissioner of the Chinese Emperor.

**1845**  
Jan. 16.  
Chinese  
treaty.

21. OREGON.—England and America both claimed the extensive portion of this country, north of the Columbia river, to the Russian settlements.—Columbia river and its vicinity belongs to the Americans by right of the discovery made in 1792, by Captain Grey of Boston, and by the explorations of Lewis and Clark, in the employ of the American government, made in the years 1804–5.—John Jacob Astor of New York, founded Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia, in 1811. The first house on its waters, was, however, established on Lewis river, by the Missouri Fur Company, in 1808.

**1792**  
(Captain  
Grey,  
sailing in  
the Co-  
lumbia,  
gives to  
the river  
the name  
of his  
ship.)

22. The difficulty with England became so serious

---

**19.** How was Mr. Slidell received? Who was raised to honor in Mexico?—**20.** Give an account of the Chinese treaty.—**21.** What part of Oregon was in dispute, and with whom? On what was the American claim to the Columbia river and its valley founded? What were the first settlements in Oregon?



as to threaten war. It was, however, compromised by a treaty negotiated at Washington between Mr. Packenham, the British Minister, and Mr. Buchanan, the American Secretary, — which makes the northern boundary of Oregon, the line of lat. 49 deg.; but gives to the British the whole of Vancouver's Island, and a right to the joint navigation of the Columbia river.

PT IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII.  
1846.  
June 18.  
Treaty of  
Wash-  
ington

## CHAPTER VII.

### Mexican War.—Army of Occupation.

1. GEN. TAYLOR was ordered by the secretary of war, Jan. 13, 1846, to take post at the mouth of the Rio Grande. The effect of the order was to precipitate the collision of arms, and to give to the Mexicans, the advantage of the cry of invasion. Gen. Taylor moved from Corpus Christi on the 8th of March. On the 18th he met a party of mounted Mexican marauders called rancheros, who warned him that he had passed the limits of Texas. On the 25th, the army reached Point Isabel. The Mexican authorities in leaving this place had set it on fire; but Taylor with exertion saved most of the buildings. From the nature of the coast he must make this place the depot for his stores. Leaving them here, with 450 men under Major Munroe, he advanced, and took post at the mouth of the Rio Grande opposite to Matamoras. Here batteries were soon erected by the Mexicans, pointing at his camp. This he intrenched, and immediately commenced a fort, whose guns threatened the heart of the

Effect of  
sending  
Gen. Tay-  
lor to the  
Rio  
Grande.

March 28.  
Gen.  
Taylor  
encamps  
opposite  
Matamo-  
ras.

### 22. How was the difficulty with England settled?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What order did Gen. Taylor receive? What was its effect? Give an account of Gen. Taylor's march from the mouth of the Nueces to that of the Rio Grande. What was here done by the Mexicans and the Americans?



**P'T IV.** city. Yet Gen. Taylor was strictly courteous to all. **P'D III.** He had come, in peace, he said, to protect Texas, not **CH. VII.** to invade Mexico; but if attacked, he should know **1846.** how to defend himself.

(April 10.  
Col. Cross  
rode out  
from the  
camp  
alone,  
and was  
killed by  
Mexican  
ranche-  
ros.)

2. This attack he had hourly reason to expect. Paredes had put in requisition the best troops of Mexico, headed by her ablest generals, and they were gathering towards the Rio Grande. On both sides of the river, all was warlike action;—here, mounting or relieving guards,—and there, planting artillery. Gen. Arista now arrived, and took the command at Matamoras. The Mexican government made a formal declaration of war on the 23d of May.—On the April 24. **Hostili-  
ties com-  
mence by  
Thorn-  
ton's cap-  
ture. Am-  
loss, k.  
and w. 16.** 24th Capt. Thornton with sixty-three dragoons was sent by Gen. Taylor a few miles up the river to reconnoitre. They fell into an ambuscade, and finding themselves surrounded by a far superior force, they attempted to retreat, cutting their way; but they were obliged to surrender, with the loss of 16 killed and wounded.

**Astonish-  
ment and  
anxiety.**

3. The American congress and people were astonished and agitated, when Gen. Taylor's account of this first bloodshed was received. Their army was surrounded, and in danger, from the soldiers who had committed the massacres of Goliad and the Alamo! A kind of monomania pervaded the nation. The May 11. **Presi-  
dent's ex-  
tra mes-  
sage.** President announced to congress that the Mexicans had "invaded our territory, and shed the blood of our citizens upon our own soil." Congress responded, that "war existed by the act of Mexico," and in two days passed a law authorizing 50,000 volunteers to be raised for twelve months; and appropriating to- May 13. **Act of  
congress  
to raise  
men and  
money.** wards the carrying on of the war, ten millions of dollars. Thus were the means at once provided.

4. Declared war being upon the hands of the Ex-

---

**1.** What was Gen. Taylor's course of conduct?—**2.** What was now the aspect of things in regard to war? How did hostilities actually commence? When did the Mexicans declare war?—**3.** How was news of the breaking out of the war received in America? and what was done by the President and by Congress?

ecutive, the plan for its prosecution and results appears to have been,—to take for indemnity and as a permanent acquisition, that part of the Mexican territory lying between the old United States and the Pacific; and so to carry the war into the more vital and richer parts of Mexico, that the people would be willing to receive peace, and some needful funds, though at the sacrifice of this territory, and the relinquishment of Texas to the Rio Grande.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII  
1846  
Plan of  
the Exec  
utive.

5. The American Executive, aided by the head of the war department, and by General Scott, now sketched out, in two days' time, a plan of a campaign, exceeding, in the vastness of the spaces, over which it swept by sea and land, any thing of the kind known in history. Vessels were to pass round Cape Horn to the coast of California, to aid those already there in conquering that country. An "Army of the West" was to be assembled at Fort Leavenworth to take New Mexico, and then proceed westward to the Pacific, to co-operate with the fleet. An "Army of the Centre," to be collected from different and distant parts of the Union, was to rendezvous at San Antonio de Bexar, and thence to invade Coahuila and Chihuahua.\* These armies were mostly to be created from the raw material. The existing regular force of the United States, officers and men, did not exceed nine thousand.

May 15  
and 16.

Vast plan  
of a  
cam-  
paign.

6. Gen. Taylor, whose force was called the "Army of Occupation," now received intelligence by Capt. Walker that a large Mexican force in his rear, was interposed between him and his stores at Point Isabel. Walker had there been stationed by Major Munroe to keep open the communication; and he had fought fifteen minutes with his one company of Texan rangers, (armed with revolving pistols,) with 1500 Mexican cavalry,—killed thirty and escaped; and subsequently

April 22  
Walker's  
battle.

\* Pronounced Che-waw-waw.

4. What was the general plan of the American Executive?  
5. What were the military operations now sketched out for the army and navy?—6. What intelligence was now received by Gen. Taylor? Give an account of the first battle of the war in which Mexican blood was shed.

P'T IV he had found his way with six men through the Mex-  
ican army to bring this information.

P'D III.  
CH. VII.

1846. 7. Taylor did not hesitate. Leaving his camp at  
May 1. Matamoras, with a garrison in command of the trusty  
Taylor veteran, Major Brown, he marched with the main  
at Point army, and reached Point Isabel unmolested. The  
Isabel.

May 2 to

9.  
Cannon-  
ade of  
Fort  
Brown.

7th.  
Taylor  
leaves Pt.  
Isabel.

May 2 to 9. batteries, and Major Brown opened his guns upon the  
city. The firing was anxiously heard by Taylor, and  
a messenger for aid reached him from Major Brown.  
The garrison at Point Isabel being reinforced by 500  
men, supplied by Commodore Conner from the navy,  
Gen. Taylor announced to the war department, "I  
shall march this day with the main body of the army,  
to open a communication with Major Brown, and  
throw forward supplies of ordnance and provision.  
If the enemy opposes my march, in whatever force, I  
shall fight him."

May 8.  
PALO  
ALTO.  
Mex.  
force  
3,000.  
Am.  
2,300.  
—

Mex. loss,  
k. & w.  
400.

Am. k. 4,  
w. 40.

May 9.  
Resaca  
de la  
Palma.  
Mex.  
force  
about  
6,000.  
Am.  
2,222.  
—

Mex. loss  
60.

Am. k. &  
w. mor-  
tally 44.

8. The same evening he marched. The next day  
at noon he came in full sight of the Mexican army,  
drawn up in order of battle, and extending a mile  
across his way. Taylor halted his men,—bade them  
refresh themselves at the pools—then formed his line.  
The Mexicans, although with choice of the ground,  
and more than double numbers, were forced, after five  
hours, to yield to the Americans, the victory of PALO  
ALTO. Major Ringgold was here mortally wounded.

9. At two o'clock the next day the army resumed  
its march. Having advanced about three miles, the  
Mexicans were discovered, skilfully posted, with artil-  
lery, at *Resaca de la Palma*. At four o'clock the  
Americans came up. The field was fiercely contested.  
It was here, that Capt. May, with his dragoons rode  
up to a Mexican battery, cut down the men, and took

7. What was now done by Gen. Taylor? What cannonade  
was heard by him at Point Isabel? What determination did he  
announce?—8. Give an account of the battle of Palo Alto,  
the numbers engaged, loss, &c.; see side-note. (*When here-  
after the direction is, give an account of a battle, let the side-  
notes be studied as well as the text.*)—9. Give an account of  
the battle of Resaca de la Palma.



Gen. La Vega as he was applying a match to one of the guns. The Mexicans were wholly routed. Their camp—its stores, equipage, and Gen. Arista's private papers, fell into the hands of the Americans. On arriving at the camp, Taylor and his victorious army carried joy to the wearied combatants. But the valued commander of the fort had been killed. Gen. Taylor named the place where he fought and fell, Fort Brown.

10. Great were the rejoicings and illuminations in the United States for the victories of the Rio Grande. The Mexican army now deserted Matamoras, and the civil authorities suffered the Americans to take quiet possession. Everywhere the young men of America were now ready, nay, in haste, to go forth to defend their brethren, fight the Mexicans, and push for the "Halls of the Montezumas." Gen. Taylor was embarrassed and delayed by the ill-provided numbers who came.—The towns on the lower Rio Grande were taken and occupied by the Americans. Camargo, made the depot of provisions and stores, was garrisoned with 2,000 men under Gen. Patterson.

11. The army being now 6,000 strong, its first division, under Gen. Worth, marched for the interior on the 20th of August. Gen. Taylor with the rear column soon followed. On the 5th of September, the several divisions were concentrated at Marin. Moving on, they encamped, on the 9th, at Walnut Springs, three miles from Monterey. Here, on the south and west towered the high peaks of the Sierra Madre,—while before them stood the walls of Monterey, bristling with cannon, and surrounded by fortresses;—and around them an unknown region—an invaded country, with thousands of embittered foes. Most of their troops were untried volunteers. But they had officers edu-

PT IV.  
P'D III  
CH. VII

1846  
May 18.  
Taylor  
occupies  
Mata-  
moras

June and  
July,  
Taylor  
delayed  
by the  
press of  
unfur-  
nished  
volun-  
teers.

Sept. 5.  
The ar-  
my at  
Marin.  
9th, at  
Walnut  
Springs.

9. What had occurred at the camp? What occurred at Matamoras?—10. What effect in the U. S. had the victories of the Rio Grande? What effect on Taylor's movements had the too great accession of ill-provided numbers?—11. Give an account of the movements of the army until reaching Walnut Springs. What now was its position?

**P'T IV.** cated either directly or indirectly at West Point, who,  
**P'D III.** in all the complicated acquirements belonging to mili-  
**CH. VII.** tary science, had no superiors. Especially had they  
 a commander, cool and deliberate,—judicious to plan,  
 and energetic to act.

12. He looked upon the mountains, and perceived  
 towards the southwest, that they were cleft by the  
 small stream of the San Juan, along which, was the  
 road from Saltillo to Monterey. He thought if a new  
 way could be made by which the Saltillo road should  
 be reached, the enemy's line of supplies would be cut,  
 and probably less formidable defences intervene. The  
 skill of the American engineers, under Capt. Mansfield,  
 found out such a way; and Gen. Worth being selected  
 for the important service, led a column of 650 men  
 on the 20th and 21st, by a difficult detour round to  
 the Saltillo road. But they did not gain this advan-  
 tage without loss. On the morning of the 21st they  
 successfully fought a battle, in which Col. Hay and  
 his Texan rangers were distinguished.

**1846.**  
 Sept. 20.  
 Worth's  
 party  
 leave  
 camp at  
 noon.

**21st, Bat-**  
**tle near**  
**Mon-**  
**terey. Mex**  
**loss 100.**

**Forts Fe-**  
**deration**  
**and Sol-**  
**dado cur-**  
**ried.**

**Sept. 22.**  
**3 o'clock,**  
**A. M.**  
**Bishop's**  
**Palace**  
**stormed.**

13. The Saltillo road being gained, the first obsta-  
 cles now to be overcome in approaching the city, were  
 two batteries on a hill. Up to these, in face of their  
 fire, the soldiers marched. They were taken, and  
 their guns turned on the third and principal battery,  
 —a fortified, unfinished stone building, called the  
 Bishop's Palace, situated on the steep hill, Independ-  
 ence. Night came on, and the weary and hungry  
 soldiers had to bide the pelting of a storm. At three  
 a party headed by Col. Childs, and conducted by  
 engineers Saunders and Meade, mounted the hill. A  
 vigorous sortie from the fort was repelled. The  
 Americans entered it with the flying Mexicans, and it  
 was theirs. After having taken this battery, and  
 turned it against the city, the war-worn troops, now  
 three days from the camp, their numbers thinned by  
 death, stood close upon the rear of Monterey.

---

**12.** What plan was formed for approaching Monterey in  
 rear? Who led the detachment? What happened on the  
 morning of the 21st?—**13.** Give an account of the movements  
 of Worth's party until it reached the rear of Monterey

14. Meantime, Taylor had sought to direct the attention of the enemy from this, his real point of attack, by making a feigned one in front. But so fiercely was this movement conducted by Gen. Butler, Capt. Backus, and others, that the city was entered, though with great sacrifice of life; for every street was barricaded, and guns were pointed from the walls of every house. The second day, a part of the defences were abandoned by the garrison, the Americans getting within the houses, and breaking through the walls. Gen. Quitman, who headed this party, advanced to the Plaza. On the morning of the 23d, the defences of the opposite side were assaulted and carried by the division of Gen. Worth.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VII.

1846.  
Sept. 22  
Attack  
on Mon-  
terey in  
front.

15. Gen. Taylor now passed over to Worth's quarters, where he received the Mexican commander, Gen. Ampudia. He came with a flag to propose capitulation and an armistice, on the ground that peace might shortly be expected,—Paredes being displaced, and Gen. Santa Anna now in power. General Taylor knew† that in consequence of President Polk's hope of that wily Mexican's favorable disposition, he had given an order to the fleet, which Com. Conner obeying, Santa Anna had passed unmolested on his return from Cuba.

† "San-  
ta An-  
na's  
Pass,"  
dated  
May 15  
1844.

16. Gen. Taylor had not men sufficient to guard the Mexican soldiers, if he kept them as prisoners; and his own unsupplied army needed all the provisions to be found in Monterey. Without the parade of compassion, he had its reality, and he wished to spare, especially "non-combatants." With the advice of his officers, he therefore agreed to an armistice of eight weeks, on condition of the approval of the American government. This, on correspondence, was withheld; and the war after six weeks was renewed.

1846.  
Sept. 23.  
The ar-  
mistice.

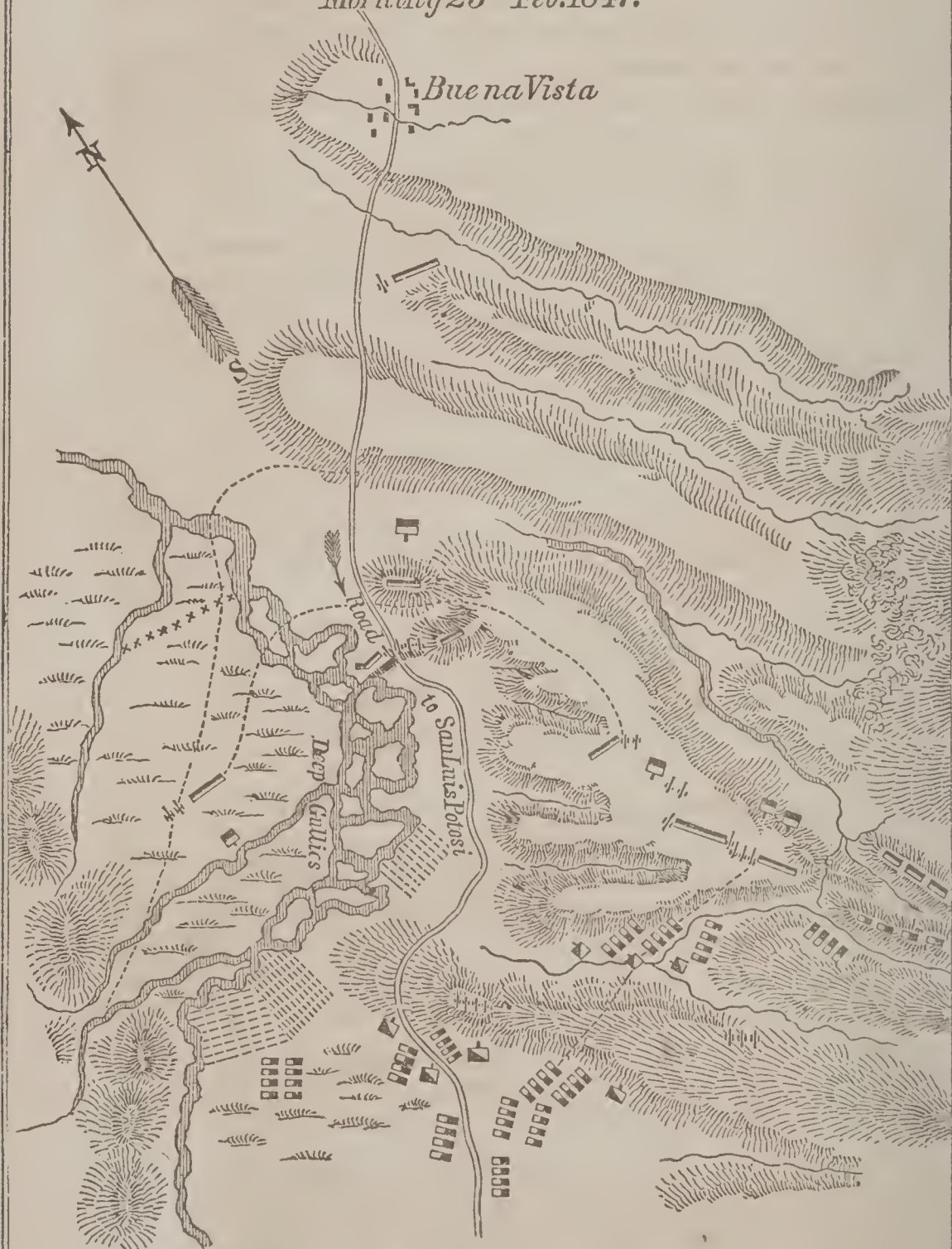
Its rejec-  
tion by  
Mr. Polk.

14. Give an account of the operations of Generals Butler, Quitman, &c., in front. When did Worth's division enter the city?—15. On what ground did Gen. Ampudia propose an armistice? What did Taylor know of Mr. Polk's course in regard to Santa Anna?—16. What farther do you learn concerning the armistice of Monterey?



# PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA

*Morning 23<sup>d</sup> Feb. 1847.*



Mexican    Infantry, Cavalry, Artillery, moving to the attack  
United States Infantry, Cavalry, Artillery, receiving the attack.

*By Lieut. Col. Mansfield, Corp. Engineers.*

# CHAPTER VIII.

Army of the Centre.—Gen. Wool's march.—Battle of Buena Vista.

1. To GEN. WOOL the administration wisely confided the principal share in mustering and preparing for the service the volunteers. His orders, dated May 29th, he received at Troy;—left immediately for Washington,—from thence moved through the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi;—meeting the enlisted volunteers at designated places of rendezvous, and inspecting and admitting them, if suitable men, into the army. These distances were accomplished, and twelve and a half regiments, (two of cavalry,) making about 12,000 men, were inspected, mustered into the service, and sent towards their destined places, by the 16th of July.

F T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VIII.

1846  
May 19.  
Gen.  
Wool's  
orders.

July 16.  
In six  
weeks  
3,000  
miles tra-  
versed,  
and  
12,000  
men mus-  
tered.

2. About 9,000 of these recruits, went to the Rio Grande to reinforce the army of Gen. Taylor. Those to form the "Army of the Centre" were by different routes to rendezvous at Bexar;—some going the far circuit of Little Rock, in Arkansas, and some by the Gulf through La Vaea. At Bexar began that drill and strict discipline of the volunteers which made Gen. Wool's corps, whether resting or moving, a camp of instruction; and which, together with his great care that every article necessary to health and efficiency should always be prepared and ready, gave to it the praise of being "a model army."

Aug. 1.  
Gen. W.  
at La  
Vaea (on  
Matagor-  
da Bay.)

Gen.  
Wool's  
discipline  
(unpopu-  
lar with  
his men  
at the  
time.)

3. Gen. Wool's destination was Chihuahua. His force, amounting to 500 regulars and 2,440 volun-

---

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of Gen. Wool's movements in mustering the volunteers.—2. How many of these went to Gen. Taylor? Where were those for the Army of the Centre to rendezvous, and by what routes? What gave to Gen. Wool's corps the credit of being a "model army?"—3. Describe the army's march.

P'T IV. tears, crossed the Rio Grande at Presidio, on a flying  
 P'D III. bridge prepared for the purpose. From this fertile  
 CH. VIII. spot they marched westward 26 miles, to Nava, over  
 a dead level,—without finding a drop of water or a  
 1846. human habitation. The troops, in crossing the Sierras  
 Gen. Wool leaves Bexar—crosses the R. G. at Presidio. of San José and Santa Rosa, encountered steep rocky  
 ascents and deep mountain gorges; and often, before  
 their 300 heavy-laden wagons could pass, roads must  
 be repaired or made. Sometimes, as the army ap-  
 peared, the ignorant people of the country, taken by  
 surprise, believed that the robber-bands of Mexico  
 were upon them. The shrieking women would run  
 from their houses, and embrace the crosses by the  
 wayside,—probably where some friend had been killed,  
 whose fate they expected to share.

4. But, by the better-informed, Gen. Wool's approach  
 was hailed with joy. He protected the quiet and the  
 weak against the lawless and the strong; and as he  
 Oct. 31. Gen. Wool at Monclova. passed on through San Fernando and Santa Rosa, to  
 Monclova, his advance was heralded as that of a  
 friend. He there peacefully unfurled the American  
 flag over the government-house of the province. At  
 Monclova, Gen. Taylor communicated to him the cap-  
 ture and armistice of Monterey. Here also he learned  
 (Troops under drill during the armistice; they are always encamped without the cities and villages.) that the projected route to Chihuahua was impractica-  
 ble. Both he and Gen. Taylor believed that it would  
 be unwise thus to withdraw his force from the seat of  
 war; since the conquest of New Leon and Coahuila,  
 already achieved, gave to the Americans the command  
 of Chihuahua.

5. On the 25th of November, Gen. Wool marched  
 upon Parras,—Gen. Taylor advising him to establish  
 Nov. 28. to Dec. 5. a post in that fertile region, and collect provisions, of  
 March from Monclova to Parras. which his army were in need, and which the country  
 about Monterey could not supply. At Parras, Gen.  
 Wool was received with all the courtesy due to a dis-  
 tinguished guest. The strictness of his discipline was

---

4. To whom did Gen. Wool afford protection? How was  
 his advance regarded by the well-informed Mexicans? What  
 did he learn at Monclova?—5. Why did he march to Parras?  
 What was the effect of his discipline?



not only improving his army, but, by imparting the new feeling of security to a people, so long the victims of anarchy, he was winning their affections, and giving them desires for a better government. Stores came in abundantly, and the necessities of the two armies were fully supplied.

6. In the mean time Gen. Taylor had proceeded to Victoria, the capital of Tamaulipas, expecting to co-operate with Gen. Patterson and a naval force in the reduction of Tampico. But that place had surrendered to Commodore Conner on the 14th of November. Gen. Butler was left in command at Monterey. Saltillo, the capital of Coahuila, of which the Americans had taken peaceable possession on the 17th, was garrisoned, and commanded by Gen. Worth.

7. The changeful Mexicans having now displaced Paredes, and given full power to Santa Anna, he had concentrated a force of 22,000 at San Luis Potosi. Gen. Worth, 60 miles in advance of Monterey, and 200 from Taylor at Victoria, now received the startling intelligence, that this army was immediately to be brought down upon him;—he having but 900 men. He sent a rapid express, entreating Wool to hasten to his aid with his whole force. In two hours Gen. Wool was in motion with his entire column, and his long train of wagons. Only fourteen of his soldiers were unable, on account of ill-health, to move. Such was the gratitude of the protected people, that the ladies of Parras came forward and voluntarily took these sick soldiers to their houses. In four days the army marched 120 miles, to Agua Nueva, twenty-one miles in advance of Saltillo.

8. Gen. Taylor, while at Victoria, learned that the city of Mexico was to be approached by Vera Cruz;

---

6. Give an account of the arrangements detailed in paragraph 6th.—7. What do you now learn of Santa Anna? What alarmed Gen. Worth, and what express did he send? What was done by Gen. Wool? What remarkable proof of gratitude did he receive from the ladies of Parras? What position was taken by Gen. Wool?—8. What disagreeable intelligence was received by Taylor?

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. VIII.

1846.  
Nov. 14.  
Tampico  
taken.  
without  
blood-  
shed,  
by the  
courage  
and con-  
duct of  
Mrs.  
Chase,  
wife to  
the Am.  
consul.)

Dec. 17.  
An ex-  
press  
from  
Gen.  
Worth,—  
Gen.  
Wool  
leaves  
Parras;  
his rapid  
move-  
ment.

P'T IV. and that Gen. Scott, appointed to conduct this in-  
 P'D III. vasion, would, as his senior, supersede him in the  
 CH. VIII. Mexican command. It was from Taylor's army that  
 Scott su- ordered from Gen. Taylor most of his efficient troops,  
 persedes Taylor. leaving him,—till more could be sent by government,  
 "to stand on the defensive." Taylor, whatever might  
 have been his feelings, promptly obeyed the order;  
 and dispatched to Vera Cruz the greater part of his  
 regular troops, and volunteers. This order reached  
 the forces of Gen. Wool also. But with the remains  
 of their force, these two generals met, and bore back  
 the shock, of the most formidable army which Mexico  
 had ever sent to the field.

9. Gen. Taylor now learned that Santa Anna, by  
 decided demonstrations, was threatening him. Leav-  
 ing a small garrison at Monterey, he advanced south  
 with about 300 men to the camp of Wool at Agua  
 Nueva. Their whole force, officers and men, was  
 4,690, and Santa Anna was approaching with more  
 than four times that number, besides 3,000 regular  
 cavalry under Gen. Minon, and 1,000 under Gen. Ur-  
 rea, sent in advance, to turn the American position,  
 destroy their stores, and cut off their retreat.

10. The army remained encamped at Agua Nueva  
 until the afternoon of the 21st of February. Santa  
 Anna was approaching. The camp at Agua Nueva  
 was then broken up, and Santa Anna, believing that  
 his foes were flying in dismay, eagerly pursued, till he  
 was drawn to the mountain-gorge of Angostura, pre-  
 viously chosen by the American generals, as the place  
 for the battle. Gen. Wool was left by Taylor the  
 active commander at Buena Vista; while he, anxious  
 for his stores menaced by Minon, went to Saltillo.

11. On the morning of the 22d, Gen. Wool drew

---

8. What was his conduct? Was Gen. Wool affected by the government order? What did the two generals effect with the remainder of their force?—9. What was now the position and force of the Mexican and American armies?—10. What occurred on the afternoon of the 21st of February?—11. What on the morning of the 22d?

up the army for battle. The gorge was the key of the position. Here was placed Capt. Washington's battery. THIS WAS THE BIRTHDAY OF THE GREAT WASHINGTON, and the battle-cry was to be, "The memory of Washington!" From their positions the troops looked out through the gorge to the south, and beheld, issuing from clouds of dust, the long array of the Mexican host,—glittering with burnished arms, and gorgeous with many-colored draperies. As they come nearer, their delicious music charms for a moment even the stern ear of war! But the shouts of the Americans rise louder,—as Gen. Taylor, whom they regard as invincible, appears upon the field.

12. About noon the Mexicans pushed forward a party to the heights on the east, or American left. At three o'clock began the battle. Volunteer riflemen, under Col. Marshall, met the advanced Mexicans. They made no impression upon the American lines, while they suffered loss. Night came. The Americans remained under arms.—Two hours after midnight the Mexicans commenced the second day's attack.

13. No language can depict the perilous condition of the comparatively few Americans who fought, and finally won the long and bloody battle of Buena Vista. Some of the volunteers fled in the early part of the day, and in endeavoring to rally them, Capt. Lincoln, aid to Gen. Wool, lost his valuable life. Once the Mexicans had turned the American left, and in that quarter were gaining the field, when they were met and repelled by Col. Jefferson Davis, with the unerring rifles of the Mississippi volunteers. Repeatedly the battle had been lost, but for the flying-artillery, which changed rapidly from point to point as it was needed. Twice Lieut. O'Brien checked masses of the enemy with his small battery, remaining in their way so long that he could only save himself, leaving part of his

R IV.

D III.

A. VIII

- 817

Feb. 22.

BUENA

VISTA.

Mexican

army ap

pears.

3 o'clock

P. M.

battle

begins.

Mexican

loss, k.

and w.

more

than 300

Am. w.

4, k. 9.

Col. Da-

vis and

the Mis-

sissippi-

ans.

O'Brien

Wash-

ington.

12. What were the military operations of the afternoon of that day?—13. Relate some of the earlier incidents of the battle of Buena Vista.



P'T IV guns. Washington, though repeatedly attacked, con-  
P'D III. stantly maintained his position.

CH. VIII. 14. Once Mexican cavalry found their way to the  
Camp rear of the Americans, and attacked their camp; but  
attacked. they were repelled. Col. Yell here lost his life. Then  
came a moment, in which several thousand Mexicans  
Santa were in danger, when Santa Anna relieved them, and  
Anna's base changed his batteries for a final assault, by the vile  
trifling with a trick of sending a flag, as if for surrender. This last  
flag of truce. assault was furiously made on the American centre,  
commanded by Taylor in person. For a few moments  
Last the volunteers were in danger of being overwhelmed  
assault of the by numbers. Colonels Hardin, Clay, and McKee,  
Mexi- cans. were killed. The batteries of Bragg and Sherman  
cans. arrived, and by almost superhuman exertion, they  
saved the day.

Battle- 15. Santa Anna was obliged to draw back his  
field of much diminished forces. The second night came on.  
of BUENA Officers and men were on the alert, and horses in  
VISTA. harness. The field was strewn with the lifeless vic-  
tims of war. The American surgeons and their assist-  
ants administered to the wounded, whether friend or  
foe; and Mexican women were there, to soothe the  
dying, or wail the dead.

Feb. 23-4. 16. The Americans were prepared to renew the  
Santa contest. Outposts had made astonishing marches,  
Anna and had reached the camp. Gen. Marshall, with his  
retreats, mounted Kentuckians, and Capt. Prentiss with his  
Am. loss, artillery, had travelled from the Pass of Rinconada,  
k. 254, —35 miles of bad road,—in one day.—With the  
w. 450. earliest dawn of the morning Gen. Wool, abroad to  
Mex. loss, reconnoitre, discovered that the enemy were in full re-  
k. & w. treat. Hastening with the news to the tent of Tay-  
2500, lor, they embraced and wept,—while the glad shouts  
missing of victory, rang over the battle-field.  
4000.

17. Santa Anna had promised his army, before the  
battle, the lives and property of their foes, and he

---

14. Of the later.—15. What was the position of things  
when night came on?—16. What preparation had the Amer-  
icans made to renew the contest? What was discovered at  
dawn of day?

had sent, besides regular troops, hordes of rancheros, to fill the mountain passes, so that not an American should escape with his life. By a body of these troops a wagon-train was attacked at Ramas and 45 wagoners killed. On the day of the battle, Gen. Minon, with 1800 cavalry, was driven from Saltillo by Capt. Webster and those under his command. Cols. Morgan and Irvin, defeated a party at Agua Frio on the 26th of February; and Major Giddings was victorious at Ceralvo on the 7th of March.

18. The victory of Buena Vista, without which the guerilla warfare would have borne a different aspect, left the Americans after these affairs in quiet possession of the northern provinces of Mexico proper. Active operations being here at an end, Gen. Taylor, after a few months, returned to receive high honors from his country;—and Gen. Wool was left at Monterey to govern and protect the conquered region

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.  
CH. VIII.

1817

Santa  
Anna's  
prepara-  
tions to  
cut off  
the whole  
Am. ar-  
my.Feb. 23.  
Agua  
Frio.Mex. loss  
k. & w.  
60.

Am. 6.

March 7.

Ceralvo.

Mex.

force

1,600.

Am. 260.

—

Mex. loss

k. &amp; w.

45.

Am 17.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Army of the West.—Conquest of New Mexico and California.

1. A FLEET was already on the coast of California, when the war commenced. Commodore Sloat, the commander, was advised by the navy department, that war with Mexico might occur, in which case he was, without further notice, to employ his fleet for hostile purposes. Having been led to believe that war existed, Com. Sloat took Monterey on the 7th of July, 1846. On the 9th, Francisco, north of Monte-

1846

July 7.  
Monte-  
rey, in  
Califor-  
nia, ta-  
ken by  
Com  
Sloat

17. What had Santa Anna promised and prepared to do? What occurred at Ramas? At Saltillo? At Agua Frio? At Ceralvo?—18. What is here said of Gen. Taylor? Of Gen. Wool?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Of what was Com. Sloat advised? What places in California were taken on the 7th and 9th of July, 1846?

P.T.IV. rey, was taken by a part of the squadron, acting under  
 P.D.III. the orders of Com. Montgomery. On the 15th, ar-  
 CH. IX. rived a frigate under Com. Stockton. On the 17th,  
 1846. Com. Sloat dispatched a party to the mission of St.  
 15th, John, to recover cannon and other munitions which  
 Arrival of Com. Stockton at Monterey. the enemy had there deposited.

2. At this place the American flag had already  
 June and July. been planted by Col. Fremont,—who, with 63 men,  
 Fremont and the American Californians had been sent out in 1845 by the government with  
 the ostensible object of making peaceful explorations. Fremont being threatened with destruction by De  
 drive out the Spanish government. Castro, the Spanish commandant, went and aroused the  
 American settlers in the neighborhood of Sonoma,  
 and on the river Sacramento. They added to his  
 force, and he swept out the Mexican authorities from  
 around the Bay of San Francisco and north. The  
 American Californians, July 5th, declared their inde-  
 pendence, and placed Fremont at their head. A few  
 days after, news came that war existed between the  
 United States and Mexico ; when the Californian colors  
 were joyfully pulled down, and the American hoisted.

3. Gen. Castro went south to Los Angeles, the seat  
 of civil government. Stockton and Fremont, with their  
 combined land and naval forces, followed. The Mexicans  
 withdrawing, they took peaceable possession ; and Com.  
 Stockton assumed, by proclamation, the style of gover-  
 nor. He and Fremont then going north, a Mexican  
 force under Gen. Flores retook Los Angeles, and the  
 southern towns ; driving out the American garrisons.  
 Fremont increased his Californian battalion to 428,  
 with which in December and January he assisted in  
 the final conquest of California.

4. ARMY OF THE WEST.—Immediately after the  
 opening of the war, orders were issued by the Exec-  
 utive for organizing an “Army of the West,” to be  
 commanded by Gen. Kearny ;—for the object of ta-  
 king,—and placing under American laws, New Mexico  
 Army of the West—  
 1st reg. 856.  
 Inf. 145,  
 Lt. Art. 250,  
 Drag. 407.  
 16 pieces  
 of ord.)

2. Give some account of Col. Fremont and his military op-  
 erations in California.—3. What happened at *Ciudad de los*  
*Angelos*?—4. What was the object of the Army of the West



and California. This army began, June 5th, to appear at the rendezvous, which was Fort Leavenworth. Here the volunteers chose their own officers. The men elected by them had entered their ranks as privates. Doniphan was chosen colonel of the first Missouri regiment. All were for twenty days instructed by such of their officers as had been West-Point students; and thus the military arts and sciences infused into this celebrated school, by COL. SYLVANUS THAYER and his associates and successors, were rapidly transfused into the capable volunteers of the West.

PT IV.  
P'D II.  
CH. IX.  
1846  
June 18.  
Doni-  
phan  
chosen.

5. Gen. Kearny, having sent forward his baggage, and taken in convoy the annual train of merchants' wagons, now numbering 414, (going to trade at Santa Fé and Chihuahua,) set out with his army on the last of June. They moved southwesterly across the river Platte,—the branches of the Kansas,—along the Arkansas to Bent's Fort; thence south and southwesterly to Santa Fé.

June 26-  
29.  
Army  
march.  
30th,  
Reach  
the  
Kansas.  
July 12,  
the Ar-  
kansas.

6. A great portion of the region moved over was prairie;—one wide, wild, unmeasured level, or gently undulating field;—sometimes green, as far as the eye could reach, with tall, rank grass,—and sometimes gay with unnumbered flowers,—perhaps blushing, far round with the varieties of the prairie rose,—or tinged orange with the wild lily; and sometimes showing the pale green and delicate white and red of the moccasin flower, the “belle of the prairie.” Along the Arkansas the troops found great herds of buffalo; and cheerily joined the hunt, and enjoyed the feast.

Prairie  
scenery

7. But they had many hardships. The ground was often so soft and spongy, that the wagons sunk; and the strength of the men must be added to that of the horses to drag them forth. Again chasms must be filled, and torrents bridged; and sometimes the vol-

From  
June to  
Aug. 12.

---

4. What occurred with respect to election of officers and discipline, and where?—5. What is said of a wagon-train which Gen. Kearny was to convoy? What course was taken by the army in their march to Santa Fé?—6. Describe the prairie scenery, and the chief pleasure of the army?—7. What disagreeable scenes had they to encounter?

**P<sup>T</sup> IV.** unteers must lie down at night in places infested with  
**P<sup>D</sup> III.** serpents, horned frogs, lizards, and musquitoes. Often  
**CH. IX.** they made long marches without water, and some-  
**1846.** times with scarcely any food.

**Aug. 18.** 8. Gen. Kearny peacefully entered the city of Santa  
**Gen.** Fé, containing 6,000 inhabitants. He occupied the  
**Kearny** governor's palace, and planted above it, August 18th,  
**enters** the standard eagle of Republican America. Thus had  
**Santa Fé.** the army in fifty days accomplished this desert march

**He estab-** of 900 miles. The day after his entrance, Gen. Kear-  
**lishes** ny proclaimed himself governor of New Mexico.  
**civil gov-** "You are now," said he, "American citizens;—you  
**ernment.** no longer owe allegiance to the Mexican government."

The principal men then took the oath required; swear-  
 ing allegiance to the laws and government of the  
**His do-** United States. These measures gave rise to much  
**ings** discussion in the American capitol when they became  
**question-** known; the question being, whether the administra-  
**ed in con** tion had or had not transcended its constitutional  
**gress.** powers, in thus annexing, without any action of con-  
 gress, a territory to the American Union.

9. Gen. Kearny having now taken possession of  
 New Mexico, and organized a government,—of which  
 he made Charles Bent the chief executive,—it next  
 became his duty to proceed to California. He ap-  
 pointed Col. Doniphan to succeed him in the province;  
 with orders, however, that on the arrival of volunteers  
 under Col. Price, Doniphan should leave him in com-  
**Sept. 25.** mand, proceed with his regiment and some additional  
**Kearny** forces to Chihuahua, and there report to Gen. Wool.  
**leaves**  
**Santa Fé.**

10. Proceeding down the Rio Grande, Kearny was  
 met by an express from Col. Fremont,—by which he  
 learned that California was already conquered. Se-  
**Kearny's** lecting 100 men as his escort, he ordered the return  
**march.** of his main force to Santa Fé. Crossing the Rio  
 Grande in latitude 33°, he reached the river Gila,

---

**8.** What were some of the circumstances of Gen. Kearny's taking Santa Fé and establishing government?—**9.** What was Gen. Kearny next to do? Whom did he leave to succeed him? What orders did he give?—**10.** What information met Gen. Kearny and what was his course of action?

at the copper mines, on the 20th of October; and following its course, he arrived at its mouth on the 22d of November, in lat. 32°. From this point he kept along, or near the Colorado, forty miles;—thence westerly sixty miles, through an arid desert.

11. On the 2d of December, Gen. Kearny reached Wamas village, the frontier settlement of California. He was met on the 5th by Capt. Gillespie, sent to him with thirty-six men, by Com. Stockton, acting governor of California. A corps of the enemy were near. The next morning the general mounted his little party on the jaded beasts, which they had ridden from Santa Fé, 1050 miles, and at day-dawn went forth to *San Pascual*,—where he engaged 160 mounted Californians. The Americans were victorious;—but these more northern troops sold victory at a dearer rate, than the southern Mexicans. Kearny was twice wounded. Captains Johnson and Moore and Lieut. Hammond were killed;—indeed, more than half the officers were either killed or wounded, with 19 of the men. When the surgeon appeared, the commander directed, “first dress the wounds of the soldiers;” and then fell,—fainting with exhaustion. Happily his wounds were not dangerous. He reached San Diego on the 12th of December.

12. On the 29th of that month, Com. Stockton and Gen. Kearny, at the head of 500 marines with the land forces, marched to the vicinity of Ciudad los Angeles, to quell the revolt of the inhabitants,—met and defeated them at *San Gabriel*, on the 8th of Jan., and the next day took peaceable possession of Los Angeles. The Californians, still in force, knowing that Fremont approached, passed the city, marched twelve miles north, and surrendered to him, on an honorable capitulation. This proved the final pacification of California.

13. The following day, the American parties met at Los Angeles. Who should be governor? Stockton said it should be Fremont. General Kearny claimed

PT IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. IX.  
1846  
Nov. 22.  
Kearny  
at the  
mouth of  
the Gila.

Dec. 6.  
Battle of  
SAN  
PASCAL.  
Mex.  
force 130

1847  
Jan. 8  
Battle -  
SAN GA  
BRIEL  
Am. los  
20, Mex  
ican 70  
Jan. 13.  
CONEN  
GA. Th  
Califor-  
nians  
capitu-  
late to  
Fremont  
Jan. 14.  
The  
three at  
Angeles.

10. Describe the route of Gen. Kearny.—11. The battle of *San Pascual*.



P.T. IV. the office on account of his superior rank, and the Pre-  
 P.D. III. sident's authority. But Kearny's written order, Fre-  
 CH. X. mont refused to obey, until further directed, from  
 1847. Washington. Kearny left him in the gubernatorial  
 Jan. 17. mansion; and marched forth, with the poor remains  
 Fremont refuses of his party, to San Diego. Here he was reinforced  
 to obey. 19 to 23. by the Mormons' battalion under Col. Cooke. Leaving  
 Kear- ny's them, he sailed to Monterey; where in conjunction  
 march to S. Diego. with Com. Shubrick, he made a proclamation as gov-  
 Feb. 8. ernor;—annexing California to the United States.  
 At Mon- 14. Fremont conceived, at length, that the President  
 terey. would not sustain his course, rode on horseback, 400  
 March 1. miles in three days and ten hours, to make his submis-  
 Procla- sion to Kearny, at Monterey. Col. Mason arrived,  
 mation. with orders to supersede Kearny and permit Fremont  
 Mar. 21 to 23. to join his regiment, or pursue his explorations. He  
 Fre- mont's was forced, instead, to accompany Kearny in his over-  
 horse- land journey by the South Pass;—arrested by him at  
 back journey. Fort Leavenworth, tried at Washington by a court-  
 Aug. 22. martial, and finally sentenced to lose his commission.  
 His ar- 1848. The President offered its restoration, but Fremont  
 rest. would not accept it at his hands.  
 1848. His sen- tence.

## CHAPTER X.

### Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua.—Revolt in New Mexico

1. THREE days after Gen. Kearny's departure from  
 1846. Santa Fé, Col. Price arrived with his recruits. Col.  
 Sept. 23. Doniphan was awaiting this event to commence his  
 Colonel Price ar- march upon Chihuahua. But on the 11th of Octo-  
 rives at Santa Fé. ber he received an order from Kearny, dated "near  
 Oct. 11. La Joya," to march with his regiment against the Na-  
 Doni- vajo Indians,—their chiefs not having come to Santa  
 phan or- Fé to hold a peace-council with those of other Indian  
 dered nations, as they had been invited, and as they had  
 against the Na- promised to do;—but instead of this, they had made  
 vages.

war on "the inhabitants of New Mexico, under the protection of the United States."

P'T IV.

P'D III.

CH. I.

2. Winter was approaching, and the abodes of the powerful Navajoes, the "mountain-lords" of unknown regions, extended far to the west. The more thoroughly to scour their country, Col. Doniphan divided his regiment into three parties,—one under Major Gilpin, to take a northern route; one under Col. Jackson, a southern, while Doniphan himself was to take a central range. All were to meet at Ojo Oso, or the Bear Springs,—bringing in the chiefs, there to hold a council. Notwithstanding incredible hardships, this was done; and on the 22d of Nov. a treaty of peace and amity was made in form.

Nov. 11.  
(Major  
Gilpin  
marches  
about 750  
miles  
among  
the  
Indians.)

Nov. 22.  
A treaty  
made  
with the  
Nava-  
joes.

Dec. 14-  
19.  
Doni-  
phan's  
army  
move  
from  
Val-  
verde.

3. From Valverde, Col. Doniphan moved his army in three divisions; with baggage-wagons and merchant-trains in convoy. He now crossed a dreary desert of ninety miles, called the "Journey of the Dead," where there was neither water, food, nor fuel. At Doñanna the army found refreshment.

4. At Bracito, on the Del Norte, they encountered a Mexican force, commanded by Gen. Ponce de Leon, who sent an officer with a *black flag*, demanding of Doniphan to appear before him. On refusal, he said in haughty defiance, "We neither ask quarter, nor give it." The Mexicans advanced, firing three rounds. The Missourians, falling on their faces, were supposed to be dead, but suddenly rising, they delivered a fire so fatal that the foe fled in confusion, leaving about 200 killed and wounded.

Dec. 22.  
At Do-  
ñanna 60  
m. from  
El Paso.

Dec. 25.  
BRACI-  
TO, Mex.  
force  
1,200.  
Mex. loss  
50, w.  
150. Am  
force en-  
gaged  
500, w  
7, k. 0

5. In the delightful valley of El Paso del Norte, the troops were fully recruited. Their march from El Paso was forth into unknown hostile regions. And now they had learned that Gen. Wool was not at Chi-

---

CHAPTER X.—1. What was Gen. Kearny's order to Col. Doniphan?—2. What divisions of his force were made by Col. D.? For what object? With what result?—3. Describe the army's march from Valverde to Donanna.—4. What occurred at BRACITO?—5. Describe the march from El Paso to Laguna de los Patos.

**P'T IV.** huahua. But fearlessly they pressed on. They en-  
**P'D III.** countered as they went from the Del Norte a desert  
**CH. I.** of sixty-five miles in extent, in which the whole army  
 were in danger of perishing from thirst. Many ani-  
**1847.** mals, and some men gave out, and lay down to die.  
 (El Paso noted for Many officers and soldiers threw all aside, and were  
 delicious running with their last strength to reach a lake ten  
 wines.) miles distant. But that Providence which so often  
 saved our armies during this war, relieved their suffer-  
**Feb. 8.** ings by a shower so copious, that the torrent-streams  
 Army leave came dashing from the rocks, to refresh and save  
**El Paso.** them. Having at length reached the lake, (Laguna  
 16th. Great de los Patos,) they remained to recruit, one day only,  
 distress from and on the 18th resumed their march.

6. Col. Doniphan, as he approached Chihuahua,  
**Feb. 28.** learned that an army of 4,000 men had been raised to  
 SACRA- oppose him by Don Angel Trias, governor of the  
 MENTO. province. He met this formidable force strongly  
**M. force** posted, and fortified with heavy ordnance, at the  
**4,120.** *Pass of Sacramento*, eighteen miles from the capital,  
**Am. 924.** and his little army of about a thousand brave men here  
 M. loss. defeated quadruple numbers of their enemies,—fight-  
 k. 300. ing on ground of their own selection.  
 w. 300.  
**Am. loss,**  
**k. 1, w.**  
**18.**

7. Having completely routed the army, the city  
 and province of Chihuahua were at the mercy of the  
 conqueror. Captains Reid and Weightman, both dis-  
**March 2.** tinguished in the battle, were sent the following day  
 Doni- to take military possession of the capital. Col. Doni-  
 phan en- phan having collected the trophies of his victory, en-  
 ters Chi- tered the succeeding day, March 2d, with the main  
 huahua. army; and planted the colors of his country over a  
 city containing 40,000 inhabitants, and having in its  
 vicinity some of the richest mines in Mexico. In this  
 salubrious climate, his soldiers enjoyed six weeks of  
 the opening spring; then marched by Parras to Sal-  
**May 22.** tillo, where at length they met Gen. Wool. Their  
 At Sal- term of service expired on the last of May. By Ca-  
 tillo.

---

6. Give some account of the battle of Sacramento.—7. Of the entrance of Col. Doniphan into Chihuahua. Of his army's return.



margo and the Rio Grande, they arrived at New Or. PT IV.  
eans on the 15th of June; having marched 5,000 P'D III.  
miles since they left the Mississippi. CH X.

8. In the mean time the New Mexicans had secretly  
conspired against the American authority. On the 1847  
19th of January, at *Fernando de Taos*, were cruelly Jan. 19.  
murdered Gov. Charles Bent, Sheriff Lee, and four Massacre  
other persons. Massacres occurred at other places. of Gov.  
Col. Price, the military commander of Santa Fé, re- Bent and  
ceived the startling intelligence on the 20th; when he 18 others.  
learned that a force, hourly increasing, approached  
him. On the 23d he marched with 350 men,—met  
the foe on the 24th, near the small town of *Canada*,  
attacked and defeated him; and again on the 29th, at  
the mountain-gorge called the *Pass of Embudo*. Victories  
of Col.  
Price.  
Jan. 24.  
CANADA

9. The Americans next had a march over the Taos Jan. 23.  
mountain, through snows two feet in depth, with a de- EMBUDO  
gree of cold so intense, that many froze their limbs. M. force  
At Puebla de Taos they met the enemy, stormed about  
his fortifications, and drove him from his position. 1,500;  
The valuable lives of Captain Burguin and other Am. 479  
officers, were here lost. Fifteen Mexicans were exe-  
cuted as conspirators. Peace was now restored, but  
a fear of secret conspiracy remained. Feb. 5.  
PUEBLA  
DE TAOS  
M. loss  
k. 200  
w. 120

## CHAPTER XI.

Scott's Invasion.—Vera Cruz.—Cerro Gordo.

1. SINCE Mexico refused to treat for peace, the  
American Executive determined to strike at her capital  
through Vera Cruz. Gen. Scott, the first officer in  
the American army, was properly selected to conduct

8. What occurred in New Mexico on the 19th of June 1847?  
What were the two first victories of Col. Price?—9. What the  
third and most important? How many were executed? Was  
confidence restored as well as peace?

**P<sup>R</sup>T IV.** this perilous enterprise. He was, on the 18th of No-  
**P<sup>R</sup>D III.** vember, notified by Secretary Marcy of his appoint-  
**CH. XI.** ment, and directed to draw his force chiefly from  
**1846.** Gen. Taylor. Santa Anna was lying with 22,000  
**Nov. 18.** men at San Luis Potosi. It would have seemed  
**Scott's** probable that he would have turned towards Vera  
**orders.** Cruz, and uniting with forces in that vicinity, oppose,  
 as he might have done, with an army of more than  
**1847.** 30,000, the landing of Gen. Scott;—rather than to  
**Feb. 22** march against Gen. Taylor. But (as Scott learned  
**and 23.** after landing) Santa Anna chose the latter, and was  
**Battle of** defeated at Buena Vista.  
**Buena**  
**Vista.**

2. The rendezvous of the several corps, which  
 were to compose the invading army, was the island  
 of Lobos, 125 miles from Vera Cruz. Necessary de-  
 lays, however, occurred; and it was not until the 7th  
**March 7.** of March, that Gen. Scott embarked with his troops  
**Scott em-** on board the transporting squadron, which was com-  
**barks his** manded by Com. Conner. Reaching Vera Cruz on  
**army.** the 9th, he, with admirable order, debarked his whole  
 army on the west side of the island of Sacrificios.  
**9th,—** Having vainly summoned the garrison to surrender,  
**lands at** Scott, with the aid of his able engineers, of whom  
**Sacrifi-** Col. Totten was chief, planted his batteries; and com-  
**cios.** menced, on the night of the 18th, a tremendous bom-  
**18th, be-** bardment of the city. The fleet lent its aid, although  
**gins the** exposed to the fire of the castle.  
**cannon-**  
**ade.**

3. On the night of the 27th, Vera Cruz, with the  
 strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa,—the principal com-  
 mercial port and the strongest fortress in Mexico, were  
**March** surrendered, with 5,000 prisoners, (dismissed on pa-  
**26-7.** role,) and 500 pieces of artillery. Two meritorious  
**The city** American officers, Captains Alburis and Vinton, with  
**surren-** ten privates, were killed. Capt. Swift, one of the  
**dors** brightest ornaments of the service, who had organized

---

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what was Gen. Scott notified, and  
 what directed to do? What is here stated concerning Santa  
 Anna's position and movements?—2. Give some account of the  
 embarkation and landing of Scott's army. Of the attack on  
 Vera Cruz.—3. Of the surrender. Of the loss of officers and  
 men.

a company of sappers and miners,—too eager in duty for his impaired health, fainted at the head of his corps, from over-exertion; and died in the hospital. The discipline of Gen. Scott's army was strict, and no invasion of private rights was permitted.

P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. XI.  
(Captain Hunter, with valor, but disrespect to his superior, took Alvarado.)

4. Com. Perry succeeded Conner in command of the Gulf squadron. Alvarado on the south was captured, and Tuspan on the north. The American government about this time adopted the policy of drawing a revenue from the conquered;—lest by too much lenity, in paying for all needed supplies, the war should become a pecuniary advantage to the Mexicans, and thus peace be deferred. American revenue officers were appointed, and impost duties collected in the captured ports.

5. On the 8th of April, Gen. Scott, leaving a garrison in Vera Cruz, sent forward the advance of his army under Gen. Twiggs, on the road to Jalapa. At the base of the grand eastern chain of the Cordilleras, the other divisions of the army came up, and the commander established a camp at Plan del Rio. There lay before him an arduous and difficult ascent through a mountain-gorge. Across this way, and on the heights which commanded it, bristled the artillery of the invaded foe, 12,000 strong, commanded by Santa Anna, who declared that he would die fighting rather than "the American hosts should proudly tread the imperial capital of Azteca."

April 8.  
Army leaves Vera Cruz.

6. Gen. Scott found that the Mexican position was so commanded by the batteries of the lofty height of Cerro Gordo that approach in front was impracticable. But, aided by the skill of his engineers, Lee and Beauregard, he turned to the left, causing to be made a new road, by which,—ascending along difficult slopes, and over deep chasms, his army might reach the rear

April 18.  
CERRO GORDO.  
M. force 12,000.  
Am. 8,500.  
—  
M. loss, k. and w. about 1,100.  
prisoners 3,000.  
Am. k. and w. 430.

4. What places were captured by the navy? What was done in reference to collecting a revenue?—5. To what point did Gen. Scott move, and what was his position in regard to the Mexican army?—6. What great advantage was here gained by the American skill in engineering, and the sagacious foresight of the commander?



**P'T IV.** of the enemy's camp. After three days of secret labor, the road was made. On the 17th of April, the **P'D III.** commander published a general order for the next day,—showing how the battle was to be gained,—how the flying were to be pursued,—and how the greatest advantage was to be reaped from the victory. All was done as he commanded.

**CH. XI.**  
Storming  
of the  
enemy's  
camp.

7. About noon the steep ascent was won. The heights of Cerro Gordo were stormed by Twiggs' brigade,—and the enemy's camp, by a party led by Col. Harney, Gen. Shields,—(severely wounded,) and by Col. Riley. At two o'clock, P. M., the enemy were put to flight,—more than a thousand having fallen. Santa Anna and a part of his army had fled, and the eager pursuit had commenced. Scott, in his orders before the battle, had directed that the pursuers should each take two days' subsistence, and that wagons with stores should immediately follow, so that they need not return.

**1847.**  
April 22.  
Worth  
takes the  
town and  
castle of  
Perote.

8. On the 19th, the pursuing squadrons entered and took possession of Jalapa. On the 22d, having now attained the summit of the eastern Cordilleras, General Worth displayed the American banner from the unresisting castle of Perote, the strongest fortress in Mexico, next to San Juan d'Ulloa. Thus by vigorously following up this remarkable victory, the enemy were unable to recover in time to make a stand in this, their strongest inland post; and thus, other battles were saved.

(54 pieces  
of cannon  
and mortar  
were  
taken at  
Perote.)

9. Three thousand prisoners were taken at Cerro Gordo, among whom were four generals. General Scott dismissed them all upon parole, having neither food to sustain, nor men to guard them. Santa Anna's equipage and papers were secured. From Perote the army passed onwards, through that great table-valley between the grand chains of the Cordil-

---

**6.** What was his general order?—**7.** Give a sketch of the battle of Cerro Gordo. The pursuit of the flying. **8.** Of the places now occupied by the Americans.—**9.** What was taken at Cerro Gordo? What is here related of Puebla?

leras, called "Terras Frias," or the cold country. P'T IV  
P'D III.  
CH. XII.  
On the morning of the 15th of May, the advance un-  
der Worth entered Puebla, the second city of Mexico, containing 80,000 inhabitants. Eagerly did the Mex- 1847  
ican men and women look out from their balconies, and from the roofs of their houses, to see these mighty conquerors. War-worn, and habited in the sober hue of the American army, the Mexicans accustomed to a gaudy uniform, looked upon them with disappointment; and could find no reason but one for their success. "Their leaders," said they, "are gray-headed men."

## CHAPTER XII.

State of the Army.—Its March.—Contreras.—Churubusco.

1. THE American Executive about this time, sent Nicholas P. Trist, as an agent to make the experiment, whether Mexico would now treat for peace. But the olive-branch was again rejected. The interruption of the army's activity caused by this unavailing effort for peace, was opportune. Its numbers were lessened by sickness; for the climate though pleasant, proved so unhealthy, that hundreds were in hospitals, and many died. The time for which large numbers of the volunteers were enlisted, expired; and many had deserted. Congress had, however, passed a law, February 11th, 1847, authorizing ten new regiments; and these being raised, reinforcements were sent by the way of Vera Cruz; and although not in sufficient numbers to admit of leaving such garrisons behind as would keep open his line of supplies, yet General Scott determined to move forward.

(700 died  
at Perote.  
1800 were  
at one  
time in  
hospital  
at Pueb  
la, and  
1700 de-  
serted in  
little  
more  
than 3  
weeks.)

CHAPTER XII.—1. What experiment was now made by the American Executive? What was now the condition of the army?

**P<sup>T</sup> IV.** 2. On the 7th of August he marched from Puebla with 10,728 men, leaving more than 3,000 in hospitals, and as a garrison under Col. Childs. Keeping the several columns into which he had divided the army, within supporting distance, and himself accompanying the van, General Scott moved forth with his little army;—like a second Cortez, to encounter the unknown numbers which would be brought against him, at the coming death-struggle of an infuriated nation.

**P<sup>D</sup> III.**  
**CH. XII.**  
Aug. 7.  
Scott's  
march  
from  
Puebla  
through  
the Ter-  
cas Frias.

3. The march of the Americans was now through a beautiful and cultivated region, whose abundant waters flowed pure and cool. Soon they began to ascend the gradual slope of the great Cordilleras of Anahuac, central between the east and western oceans. On the third day, their toilsome march wound up through steep acclivities. At length they reached the summit; and three miles beyond Rio Frio, burst upon their gaze, all the glories of the grand valley of Mexico. Spreading far round and beneath, were its mingled lakes, plains, cities, and cloud-capped mountains. The giant peak of Popocatepetl was far to their left; before them lay the lake Tezcuco; and beyond it, the domes and towers of the city of the Montezumas.

Aug. 10.  
First  
view of  
the grand  
Valley.

4. On the 11th, the advance commanded by Gen. Twiggs, rested at Ayotla, north of lake Chalco, and fifteen miles from the capital. The remaining corps were soon concentrated at small distances; some on the lake's eastern border. The ground-plot of the city had formerly been an island. What was once the lake on which it stood, was now an oozy marsh. Long straight causeways, easily raked by artillery, led through this marsh to the several gates, from the great roads by which the city was approached; and much the longest was that connected with the road

Aug. 11.  
Advance  
at  
Ayotla.

---

2. In what manner did General Scott with his army go forth from Puebla?—3. Describe the march of the army and the appearance of the country.—4. Where did the army rest, and what was their position in regard to the Mexican capital?



from Vera Cruz. But before reaching the causeways **P'T IV.**  
was an exterior system of strong defences. **P'D III.**

5. By the Vera Cruz road, on which the army **CH. XII**  
were, the city could not be approached, without first  
encountering the strongest of the exterior fortifica-  
tions, that of El Penon. "No doubt," says General  
Scott, "it might have been carried, but at a great  
and disproportionate loss, and I was anxious to spare  
the lives of this gallant army for a general battle,  
which I knew we had to win before capturing the  
city, or obtaining the great object of the campaign—  
a just and honorable peace."

6. The commander then moved his troops 27 miles ;  
they making a new road, directed by the engineers,  
over such sharp volcanic rocks and deep chasms, as  
the foe had not dreamed could be passed ; when,—  
having turned the lakes Chalco and Jochamileho,  
they encamped at St. Augustine, on the Acapulco  
road, eight miles south of Mexico. From the camp,  
looking towards the city, the defences on this road,  
were the fortress of Antonia ; and, a mile and a half  
further north, the strongly fortified hill of Churu-  
busco. These could be approached in front only by  
a dangerous causeway. By making a detour to the  
west, where lay yet other dangers, they might be  
reached from the left.

August  
15-18.  
Army  
marches  
from  
Ayotla to  
St. Au-  
gustine.

7. Two movements, ordered by the commander,  
were simultaneously made. Worth with Harney's  
cavalry went to menace Antonia in front ; while to **18-19.**  
the left, General Pillow's division, consisting of the **A road**  
brigades of Pierce and Cadwallader, conducted by **made to**  
the engineers, Lee, Beauregard, and others, made a **Con-**  
road through craggy rocks of ancient lava ; whose **terras**  
crevices shot up the thorn-armed maguey, and whose  
deep chasms were filled with water. To cover and  
support the working party, was sent General Twiggs'

---

5. Why did Gen. Scott not approach the city by the Vera Cruz  
road?—6. To what position did he remove his army, and by  
what means? What was now his position in regard to the  
Mexican city and army?—7. What movements were next or-  
dered and effected?

P'T IV. division, made up of the brigades of Generals Riley  
P'D III. and Percifer Smith.

CH. XII. 8. In the afternoon of the second day, after accomplishing nearly three miles of this difficult road, the troops found themselves within cannon-range of the enemy's fortified camp at *Contreras*, commanded by General Valencia, with 6,000 men, surmounted by 22 heavy guns, and communicating by a good road with Mexico, and also with the main camp of Santa Anna, which was lying two miles nearer. Upon this road the American soldiers saw the Mexicans hurrying on to the scene of action.

19th.  
The  
troops  
within  
range of  
the guns  
of Con-  
treras.

9. Fighting now begins, in which the divisions of generals Twiggs and Pillow, especially Riley's brigade, are engaged. They advance, though suffering from the enemy's fire. About sunset, the commander, now on the field with fresh troops, gives to Col. Morgan of the regular infantry, an order, which, aided by General Shields of the volunteers, he executes; taking the village of Ansalda, which lay on the road from the fortified camp, to that of Santa Anna. The enemy's line of reinforcements was now cut.

Village  
of Ansal-  
da taken.

10. Night,—cold, dark, and rainy—closed in. Comfortless was the condition of the troops, remaining without food or sleep, upon the ground. The officers at Ansalda, in their perilous position,—separated as they were from their commander by the almost impassable lava-field; whose crags, on account of the rain-flood, were interspersed by torrents,—now found resources in their own genius, courage, and union.

(† Of  
seven of-  
ficers sent  
by Scott  
after sun-  
down to  
carry or-  
ders, not  
one suc-  
ceeded in  
reaching  
An-  
salda.)

11. General Percifer Smith proposed to set out at midnight, surprise and storm the camp at Contreras. From that moment, dark forebodings passed from the army, and each officer and man, as by spontaneous

---

8. What was now the position of the party sent to the left —9. What was now done, and what advantage gained by the Americans?—10. What was the night of the 19th of August, and the condition of the troops? Where did they find resources?

movement, fell into his proper place. Gen. Shields extending his 600 men into a long line, and keeping up fires, was interposed between the storming party and the camp of Santa Anna, with his 12,000 reserve. One messenger alone—Lee, the engineer—found his dark and watery way over the lava-rocks, and carried to the gratified commander the tidings of the gallant attitude of his troops,—and also, a request of General Smith, for co-operation. General Scott, complied, by sending with the messenger the force under Twiggs, to Contreras at five in the morning, to aid the storming party approaching the enemy's rear, by making a diversion in their front.

P<sup>r</sup>T IV.  
P<sup>r</sup>D III.  
CH. XII.  
Morning  
of the  
20th of  
August

12. A little past midnight, General Smith sets forward, conducted by engineer Smith,—Col. Riley leading the van. The rain continues to fall in torrents, and their progress is slow. So profound is the darkness, that the men must touch each other as they move, lest they divide, and some be lost. At sunrise, they storm the intrenchments, and precipitate themselves upon the surprised Mexicans. Dismay and carnage prevail for seventeen minutes; when the camp is carried. Eighty-eight officers and 3,000 men are made prisoners. Thirty-three pieces of artillery are captured; among which are found two of those so honorably lost by O'Brien at Buena Vista. They are received with shouts of joy by the victors of Contreras; in which the commander, now present, heartily participates.

CON-  
TRERAS  
Mexican  
force,  
7,000;  
12,000  
more in  
sight.  
Ameri-  
can force  
engaged  
4,500.  
—  
Mex. loss,  
k. 700,  
prisoners,  
813, 83  
officers,  
generals  
Am. k.  
& w 66.

13. General Scott next directed a grand movement upon Churubusco, to which the victory already achieved, opened the way. Moving northeasterly by the road through St. Angel, he keeps the centre of the extended field, while General Worth on his extreme right, is driving the now terrified garrison from Antonia. General Shields, who at Contreras, had kept for hours the whole army of Santa Anna in check,

Antonia  
taken.

---

**11.** What part had Gen. Shields? What was done by Lee?—**12.** Describe the approach to Contreras, and the storming of the camp.



P'T IV. was in command of the extreme left; still charged  
 P'D III. with the dangerous duty of keeping off the grand  
 CH. XIII. Mexican army from the immediate object of attack.  
 In the centre, General Twiggs presses forward to  
 Churubusco, and entering it from the west, attacks  
 one of its two strong defences, the fortified church of  
 August 19 & 20. San Pablo. In the mean time, Worth, joined by  
 CHURUBUSCO. Pillow and Cadwallader, comes in from Antonia, and  
 furiously carrying the stronger fortress, called *Pont  
 du Tête*, or Bridge's Head, he turns its guns upon  
 the citadel-church, which now surrenders.

14. Meantime, Shields, Pierce, and others, are fight-  
 ing a bloody battle with Santa Anna, with fearful  
 Entire Am. force 4,052. odds against them. Scott sent successive regiments  
 to their aid. Churubusco was now taken,—the brave  
 old General Rincon, its commander, having surrender-  
 ed. Santa Anna abandoned the field. Worth and  
 Shields pursued. Col. Harney with his dragoons  
 dashed by them, and one of his officers, Captain  
 Kearny, not hearing the call to return, followed the  
 flying Mexicans to the very gate of the capital, in  
 which the army of Santa Anna was now enclosed.

## CHAPTER XIII.

Armistice.—Molinos del Rey.—Chapultepec.—Mexico.

1. THE commander, following up his victory, might  
 Generous proceed- ings of Scott. now have entered Mexico. But he was not sent to  
 conquer the country, but to “conquer a peace,” and  
 he believed that the reduction of the capital would  
 delay, rather than accelerate this result. He did not  
 wish to drive the government away from the city dis-

13. Describe the approach to Churubusco, and the assault  
 —14. Give a sketch of the closing scene of the victories of  
 this great day.

CHAPTER XIII.—1. What were the reasons why General  
 Scott now forbore to enter Mexico

honored. "The army," says Scott in his dispatches, P'T IV.  
 "are willing to leave to this republic something on P'D III.  
 which to rest her pride,—and they cheerfully sacrifice CH. III.  
 to patriotism the eclat that would have followed an  
 entrance, sword in hand, into a great capital."

2. Tacubaya now became the headquarters of the Aug. 21.  
 American army. The general-in-chief occupied the  
 archbishop's palace, with its beautiful gardens. Here  
 he negotiated with Mexican commissioners an armis- 24th.  
 tice, as a step preparatory to a final peace. But the Armistice con-  
 Mexicans would not agree to the terms proposed; cluded.  
 and they violating the armistice by strengthening their Violated  
 defences, General Scott declared it at an end. The by the  
 Mexicans then called on the provinces to come to Mexi-  
 their aid in mass; and by fire—or poison,—by any cans.  
 weapon, in any manner, to injure and destroy the  
 invader.

3. From Tacubaya, Mexico was full in view—north-  
 east, and distant three miles. North—bearing a little  
 east—distant a mile—rose, in beautiful prospect, the  
 fortified hill of Chapultepec; its porphyritic rocks Scott's  
 abruptly descending on its southern and eastern position  
 sides,—while to the west, the hill fell gradually, with in respect  
 a gentle, wooded slope, till it met the fortified build- to Mexico  
 ing of stone, called *El Molinos del Rey*, or the King's and its  
 Mills. A quarter of a mile west of the fortified mills defences.  
 stood another stone fortress called Casa Mata. These  
 were the obstacles which now barred the way of the  
 Americans to the capital; and they constituted the  
 supporting points of the Mexican army, ranged behind  
 them, headed by Santa Anna, and amounting to four-  
 teen thousand.

4. The generals, Scott and Worth, went forth in  
 person to reconnoitre, and they sent out their skilful  
 engineers. Scott then gave the order for an assault  
 on Molinos del Rey, committing its execution to

2. What efforts were now made for peace, and how did they  
 result? What call was made upon all Mexican citizens?—

3. What was the position of the city, regarded from the Ameri-  
 can headquarters?—4. Give an account of the battle of Molinos  
 del Rey?

**P'T IV. Worth** A terrible battle was fought, —and an important but melancholy victory was won. The commanders had been deceived as to the enemy's strength, which was five times that of the assailing party. In the heat of the action, Major Wright, assisted by Mason of the engineers, fell upon the enemy's centre, and took his main field-battery; when so furiously did he charge to regain it, that of fourteen American officers, eleven fell. Among the number were Wright and Mason. One brigade lost its three senior officers, — Col. M'Intosh and Major Waite wounded, and Col. Martin Scott killed. Casa Mata was blown up, and El Molinos dismantled.

**P'D III.**  
**CH. XIII.**  
**1847.**  
Sept. 8.  
**MOLINOS**  
FEL  
REV.  
Mexican  
force  
14,000.  
Am.  
3,200.  
—  
Mex. loss  
severe,  
but un-  
known.  
Pris. 800,  
52 offi-  
cers.  
Am. loss,  
k. 116, w.  
665, in-  
cluding  
49 offi-  
cers.

(† See  
Prescott's  
Conquest  
of Mex-  
ico.)

5. It was at the beautiful hill of Chapultepec, where once arose the veritable "Halls of the Montezumas." Here was now the military school of Mexico, and the last exterior defence of the successors of Cortez, to that capital which he had so iniquitously taken, shedding seas of blood, because "the Spaniards had a disease of the heart, which nothing could assuage but gold."† The God of battles, who had so signally made the American armies the means of chastising the Spanish Mexicans, for national cruelties early begun, and long continued, again led them to victory.

Sept. 11.  
Four bat-  
teries  
erected.

13th.  
**CHAPUL-  
TEPEC.**

6. On the night of the 11th of September, General Scott caused to be erected, from the cannon taken in former victories, four heavy batteries, bearing on Chapultepec. Before night, on the 12th, the out-works of that fortress, skilfully assailed by a cannonade directed by the American engineers, began to give way. On the 13th was the battle. The officers and men, were all promptly in the places assigned them, by eight o'clock in the morning.

The for-  
tress  
stormed.

7. The roar of the American cannon ceases for a moment. It is the signal for the assault. In an instant the assailants are in rapid motion. General Quitman hastens from the south, General Percifer Smith from the southeast, and General Pillow, with

---

5. Where were the "Halls of the Montezumas?"—6. Re-  
sults to the operations previous to the assault on Chapultepec.



Col. Clark, from the wooded slope on the west. The batteries throw shells into the fort over the heads of their friends, as they begin the furious attack. The garrison, though they fight with desperation, are overpowered. Some yield, and others attempt to retreat.

8. Meantime the supporting force under Santa Anna, in the rear of Chapultepec, is attacked and defeated by Gen. Worth. Directed by the commander, he pursues the enemy as he flies to the city, pressing forward to enter, by a circuitous route, the San Cosme gate on the northwest. Gen. Quitman, in the meantime, follows the flying foe to the city, by a route direct from Chapultepec; he being instructed to make a feint of storming the southwestern or Belen gate, near to the formidable citadel within,—in order to make a diversion from the real point of attack at San Cosme.

9. Gen. Scott meantime advanced with Worth into the suburb of San Cosme, where opposing batteries were taken; but he returned at night to Chapultepec, to look with a father's care to the condition of all,—the living, the wounded, and the dead. Worth, as instructed, remained in the suburb until morning. But Gen. Quitman, accompanied by Shields and Smith, rested that night within the city; having changed the feint which the commander ordered, into a real attack, by which they entered (though with considerable loss) the Belen gate. They had not yet passed the formidable citadel.

10. At four o'clock on the morning of the 14th, Gen. Scott having returned to San Cosme, the Mexican authorities sent him a deputation, desiring of him terms of capitulation; their army having fled a little after midnight. Gen. Scott replied, that the Americans would come under no terms, but such as were self-imposed, and demanded by honor,—by the

1847.

Sept. 13.

Battles of

Mexico.

M. force

more

than

20,000.

Am.

7,180.

M. loss,

the

whole

army,

except

about

6,000, k.,

w., or

deserted.

Am. loss,

Sept.

12-14,

k. 130—

10 offi-

cers; w.

703—68

officers.

Sept. 14.

Mexico

TAKEN.

(The

Am.

colors

were

hoisted

at 7

A. M.)

7. Describe the assault—the defeat and flight of the enemy.

—8. The pursuit by Worth—by Quitman?—9. What was now the conduct of Gen. Scott? The position of Worth? of Quitman?—10. What negotiations now took place?

P<sup>R</sup>T IV. spirit of the age, and the dignity of the American  
 P<sup>R</sup>D III. character. Worth and Quitman, as directed, moved  
 CH. XIII. cautiously forward,—Worth to the Alameda, and  
 Quitman to the Grand Plaza, where the victorious  
 army reared above the National Palace of Mexico, the  
 1847. stars and stripes of the Republic of America.

10 A. M. 11. Three hours before noon, Gen. Scott made his  
 entrance. Gen. Scott's entrance. he approached the grand plaza—his towering figure  
 conspicuous as his fame—loudly and warmly was he  
 cheered, by shouts which arose from the hearts of his  
 companions in arms... The troops for twenty-four hours  
 now suffered from the anarchy of Mexico, more than  
 her prowess had been able to inflict. Two thousand  
 Convicts kill and destroy. convicts, let loose from the prisons, attacked them  
 from the house-tops; at the same time, entering  
 houses and committing robberies. The Mexicans as-  
 sisting, these felons were quelled by the morning of  
 the 15th.

12. Gen. Scott gave to his army, on the day of  
 their entrance into Mexico, memorable orders con-  
 cerning their discipline and behavior. After directing  
 that companies and regiments be kept together, he  
 says, "Let there be no disorders, no straggling, no  
 drunkenness. Marauders shall be punished by courts  
 martial. All the rules so honorably observed by this  
 glorious army in Puebla, must be observed here. The  
 honor of the army, the honor of our country, call for  
 the best behavior from all. The valiant must, to win  
 the approbation of God and their country, be sober,  
 orderly, and merciful.—His noble brethren in arms,  
 will not be deaf to this hasty appeal from their com-  
 mander and friend."

Scott en-  
 joins  
 order,  
 sobriety,  
 and  
 mercy.

13. On the 16th, he called on the army to return  
 public and private thanks to God for victory. On the  
 19th, for the better preservation of order, and suppres-

10. How did the two parties enter the city?—11. What is  
 said of Gen. Scott's entrance? How did the troops now suf-  
 fer?—12. What were now the orders of Gen. Scott?—13.  
 What was done on the 16th of September? on the 19th?

sion of crime, he proclaimed martial law. Thus protected by the American army, the citizens of Mexico were more secure from violence, and from fear of robbery and murder, than they had ever been under their own flag.

## CHAPTER XIV.

**Puebla.—Huamantla.—Atlixco.—Treaty of Peace.—Conclusion.**

1. NOTHING was now asked of Mexico, conquered as she was, but to negotiate a treaty of peace, in which America stood ready to be generous. To bring forward a Mexican government, with whom peace could be made, became, at this period, the difficult task of the well-meaning of both nations.

2. Santa Anna, after leaving Mexico on the night of the 13th of September, was not heard of for some days. In the mean time, Col. Childs, commander at Puebla, whose effective force amounted to only 247 men, and having 1,800 sick in the hospitals, had been closely besieged by the enemy, since the same date. On the 22d, the besiegers were encouraged by the appearance of Santa Anna, with some thousands of the remnant of his army. Col. Childs and his gallant band, though worn with watching, and wasted by fatigue, still refused the summons to surrender, and bravely continued their defence. But Santa Anna had heard of the approach of 3,000 recruits under General Lane,† on their march from Vera Cruz to reinforce Gen. Scott; and he left Puebla on the 30th, to go to Pinal, where they were daily expected. Gen. Lane, on his part, heard of the Mexican army,

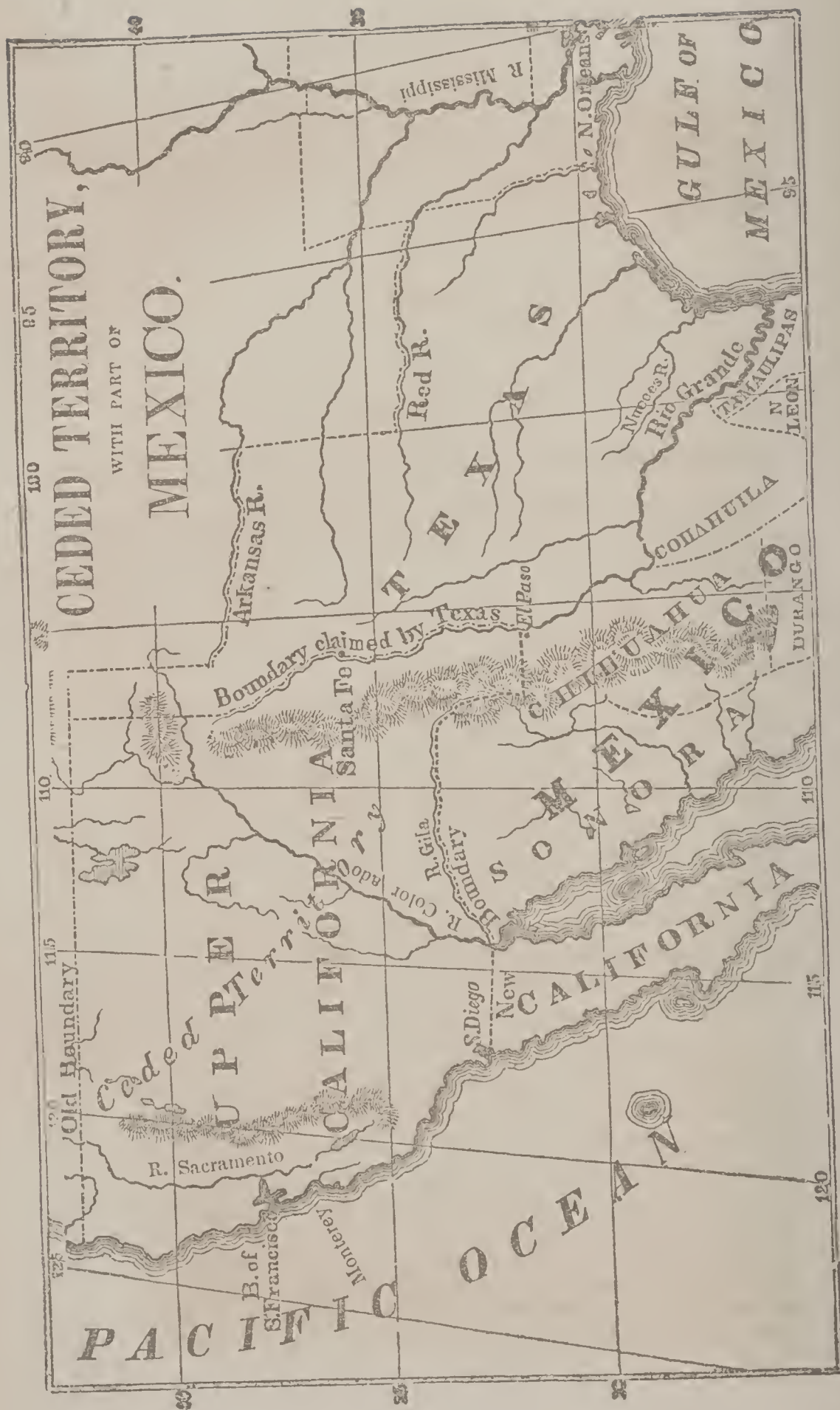
1847  
Sept. 23.  
Santa  
Anna at  
Puebla.

(† "A  
part left  
Vera  
Cruz,  
Oct. 1, a  
part un-  
der Maj.  
Lally left  
earlier.)

Oct. 9.  
Hua-  
mantla.  
M. loss.  
156.  
Am. k.  
'8, w. 1

CHAPTER XIV.—1. What was now the desire and the difficult task of the well-meaning of both nations?—2. What was the condition of the American troops at Puebla? What were Santa Anna's movements?





and turning from his direct course, he encountered it **P'T IV.**  
 at *Huamantla* ; fought, and defeated it. **P'D III.**

3. General Lane arrived, October 12th, at Puebla, **CH. XIV.**  
 and relieved Col. Childs from a distressing siege of **1847**  
 forty days. Lane again turned from his course to  
 seek the enemy; and at *Atlixco*, ten leagues from **Oct. 18.**  
 Perote, he defeated a strong guerilla force under the **Atlixco.**  
 well-known chief, General Rea. By these guerilla **Mex. loss,**  
 parties, of which *Atlixco* had been the headquarters, **k. 219, w**  
 many Americans, found as stragglers, or in small **300.**  
 parties, had been killed. Major Lally, in marching **Am. k. 1.**  
 his command of 1,000 men from Vera Cruz to Jalapa, **w. 1.**  
 had lost 100 men, having been waylaid by them, with **(† Aug.**  
 Rea at their head, four times.† In every instance, **10. At**  
 however, he defeated them with loss. **Paso**  
**Ovejas.**  
**12th, at**  
**Puente**  
**del Rey.**  
**15th, at**  
**Cerro**  
**Gordo.**  
**19th, at**  
**Las**  
**Animas.)**

4. Santa Anna, now abandoned by his troops, re-  
 signed his offices on the 18th of October, and soon  
 became a fugitive. The supreme power passed into  
 the hands of Señor Peña y Peña, by virtue of his of-  
 fice as president of the Supreme Court. He forth-  
 with sent his circulars, calling on the several states in  
 pathetic language, to send deputies to Queretaro, to  
 treat for peace. A Congress there assembled on the  
 11th of November, which appointed four commis-  
 sioners, to arrange with Mr. Trist the plan of a treaty.  
 Meantime, that gentleman had lost the confidence  
 of the American Executive, and his powers had been  
 revoked. Nevertheless, with General Scott's appro-  
 bation, he presumed in this emergency, to act.

5. On the 2d of February, the treaty was signed by  
 Mr. Trist and the Mexican commissioners at the city  
 of *Guadalupe Hidalgo*, and twenty days afterwards it  
 was submitted by the President of the United States  
 to the senate. That body adopted it with alterations.

**Nov. 11**  
**Mexican**  
**congress**  
**appoint**  
**commis-**  
**sioners.**

**1848.**  
**Feb. 2.**  
**The**  
**Treaty of**  
**Guada-**  
**lupe is**  
**signed.**  
**22d. Laid**  
**before**  
**the Sen-**  
**ate of the**  
**U. S.**

2. By whom and with what result was fought the battle of  
 Huamantla?—3. Describe the further movements of General  
 Lane—of Major Lally.—4. What change in the supreme  
 power now occurred in Mexico? How was a congress called?  
 When and where did it assemble, and what do?—5. When  
 and where was the treaty of peace signed? What action was  
 taken upon the treaty in the United States?

P'T IV. President Polk then appointed two gentlemen, Mr. Sevier of the senate, and Mr. Clifford, attorney-general, CH. XIV. to proceed with the modified treaty to Queretaro. There, on laying it before the Mexican congress, the president eloquently urged its acceptance, and it was 1848. ratified by a large majority.

Feb. 23. 6. On the 21st of February, the beloved and venerated patriot, John Quincy Adams, who, since his Death of Ex-president J. Q. Adams. presidency, had served his country in the national legislature, fell from his seat during the debates of the house of representatives, struck by a fatal paralysis. Congress in both its branches suspended public action; and its members were waiting as around the couch of a dying father. He expired, in Christian hope and resignation, on the 23d; saying, "This is the last of earth."

Mar. 16. 7. In March, General Sterling Price moved with a force from New Mexico to Chihuahua; and from that city, sixty miles on the road to Durango; where he conquered, at *Santa Cruz de Rozales*, a Mexican army, making prisoners the commanding general, Angel Frias, and forty-two other officers.—Peace was declared to the American army in Mexico, on the 29th of May, by General Butler, who was, by order of the government, left in command of the army by General Scott; he being about to return to the United States.

8. The treaty stipulated that all Mexico should be evacuated by the American armies within three months. Prisoners on each side were to be released; and Mexican captives, made by Indians within the limits of the United States, were to be restored. These limits, as they affect Mexico, are to begin at the mouth of the Rio Grande—thence to proceed along the deepest channel of that river to the southern boundary of New Mexico. From thence to the

---

5. What commissioners were appointed?—6. What occurred on the 21st of February?—7. Give some account of the battle of Santa Cruz de Rozales. When and by whom was peace proclaimed in the city of Mexico?—8. Mention some of the stipulations of the treaty. Describe the boundary between the United States and Mexico.



Pacific, they are to follow the river Gila, and the southern boundary of Upper California. P'T IV.  
P'D III.

9. Citizens of New Mexico and Upper California, are allowed a year to make their election—whether they will continue Mexican citizens, and remove their property, (in which case they are to receive every facility,) or whether they will remain, and become citizens of the United States.—In consideration of territory gained, the American government is to pay to Mexico fifteen millions of dollars; and also to assume her debts to American citizens, to the amount of three millions and a half more. Three millions were paid to Mexico in hand; congress having the preceding winter placed that sum with the president, in anticipation of such an event;—the remaining twelve millions to be paid in instalments. CH. XIV.  
1848  
Citizens  
allowed a  
choice.  
Money  
paid for  
territory.

10. The territory of *Wisconsin* was admitted into the American Union as a state, on the 29th of May, 1848.—The Mexican treaty was brought home by Mr. Sevier; Mr. Clifford remaining in Mexico as American envoy. President Polk made his proclamation of peace between the two republics, on the 4th of July, 1848;—the first day of our seventy-third national year. July 4.  
Peace  
pro-  
claimed.

11. The American armies have evacuated Mexico. Distinguished generals, and other officers, have been received by their country with the honors due to those who have so well sustained the national character,—not only for courage, activity, endurance, discipline, and military science,—but for the nobler virtues of humanity. The remains of other officers, who died in the service of their country, have been brought home to be honored, in death; and to find their last repose among their friends. And the soldiers too—they who fought so bravely for their native land,—

---

9. What was stipulated respecting Mexican citizens in the ceded territory? What money was paid, and what yet remains to be paid by the United States as a consideration for the territory acquired?—10. What new state was added to the Union, and when? When did President Polk proclaim peace?—11. Concerning the return of the army what is said of the officers?

**P'T IV.** they have returned. Regiments that went forth full  
**P'D III.** and fresh, have returned,—smitten and scathed.

**CH. XIV.** 12. Many is the desolate hearth, to which the son,  
**1848.** the husband, the father, shall return no more. No  
Fate of  
the com-  
mon sol-  
dier. kindred eye shall weep at his grave. He is buried  
with the undistinguishable dead, who fell in the for-  
eign battle-field, or died in the hospital. Thirty thou-  
sand American lives, it is calculated, have been sacri-  
ficed in this war; and about seventy-five millions of  
money expended. And we know that the sacrifice of  
Mexican life and property, has been still greater.  
The number of Mexican soldiers, who fell in battle,  
greatly exceeded that of the American;—and who  
can tell how many of their women and children were  
killed in the bombardment of their cities?

13. Let the value of money be estimated by the  
good it may be made to do, and we shall then see the  
magnitude of the evils which, in a pecuniary way,  
war inflicts. Ireland was visited with famine in the  
**1847.** winter of 1846-7 from the failure of crops, especially  
(† March  
28, Sailed  
from Bos-  
ton, the  
sloop-of-  
war  
James-  
town,  
Captain  
Forbes.  
She an-  
chored at  
Cork,  
April 22.) that of the potato. The benevolent among us were  
moved with compassion, and contributed money and  
food to her relief. The government in one instance  
sent a public ship to carry provisions thus contributed.†  
The very heart of affectionate Ireland overflowed with  
gratitude; and England and Scotland, themselves suf-  
ferers in a less degree from the same cause, felt, and  
praised our liberality. Thus, we blessed others, and  
were ourselves blessed in return;—and the money  
which it cost us, was about half a million of dollars;  
whereas, we paid three hundred millions,\* to kill and  
distress the Mexicans.

(\* This  
is accor-  
ding to  
the esti-  
mate of  
the Sec.  
of the  
Interior;  
and in-  
cludes  
soldiers'  
bounty-  
lands,  
widows'  
pen-  
sions,  
&c.) 14. The time to act for the prevention of war, as  
of incendiarism, is when none is raging; and those to  
move first in the cause of peace, should be nations

---

**12.** What of the soldiers?—**13.** How may the value of  
money be estimated? What was the condition of Ireland and  
what the relief contributed by this country? How is the ex-  
pense of this good deed and that of the Mexican war contrast-  
ed?—**14.** What is the time and what the nations and persons  
to act for universal peace?

and men, of undoubted courage and ability in war. P'T IV.  
P'D III.  
CH. XIV  
1848  
The Mexican contest has placed our Republic, for the present time, eminently in that position. No country has at any period shown braver soldiers, or better officers. Our government, from respect to the moral feeling of the nation, which wishes no territory gained by force, pays to conquered Mexico the full price of the lands acquired from her; yet is it none the less true, that these territories were won by the valor of our armies, and without conquest would not have been ours. They extend from ocean to ocean the full breadth of the grand platform on which stands the American nation; and the 300,000 immigrants, which Number  
of emi-  
grants. come yearly to her shores, will soon people her waste places.

15. Could this great errand of "PEACE ON EARTH" be accomplished, and that by the instrumentality of this nation, then, with peculiar emphasis, might PROGRESS be made the watchword of the NINETEENTH CENTURY, and of the REPUBLIC OF AMERICA. Peace  
essentia  
to pro-  
gress.

14. What considerations show that the Mexican war has placed the American nation in a suitable position to act for peace?—15. What is the concluding remark?

#### EXERCISES ON THE CHRONOGRAPHER.

What event or epoch marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer.

The Missouri question was discussed in congress in 1820, and Missouri was admitted into the Union in 1821. Locate these dates. The tariff question was again agitated, and a bill for a new tariff passed in 1824. Lafayette arrived in the United States in 1824. Point out the place of this year.

John Quincy Adams was made president in 1825. Point out the place of this date. The tariff was amended in 1828. General Jackson was inaugurated in 1829. Point out the places of these dates. Black Hawk's war began in 1832. The nullification ordinance was approved by the governor of South Carolina in 1832. Mr. Clay's compromise bill passed in 1833. Point out the places of these events.

The Chickasaws and Choctaws emigrated in 1833; the Cherokees in 1838. Point out the places of these dates. Dade's battle occurred in 1835. Point to the place of that date. Mr. Van Buren was made president in 1837. Point out the place of that date. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point to its place on the chronographer.

#### *Questions on the Historical and Chronological Map.*

(SEE NEXT PAGE.)

Where is the 1st of the eight Historical Divisions geographically situated? What states are these, and when did they become states of an independent Republic? Where is the 21 division situated, and of what states is it composed? The 3d? The 4th? The 5th? The 6th? The 7th? The 8th?







First discovery of Gold in California.

## PERIOD IV.

FROM

THE TREATY

{ 1848 }

OF GUADALUPE HIDALGO

TO

THE PRESENT TIME.

{ 1851. }

(TO BE CONTINUED.)

### CHAPTER I.

*Oregon.*—American California.—Capt. Wilkes' Exploring Expedition.—Capt. Fremont's Explorations.

1. OREGON.—In the valley of the Wallah-wallah, the worthy Presbyterian missionary, Dr. Whitman, with his wife and twelve others, were barbarously murdered by the Cayuse Indians. The people petitioned congress for protection and a territorial government. The northern members desired that slavery should be prohibited; the southern, that it should be recognized. The day before the session closed, the territorial bill was passed, with a clause forbidding slavery; this having been consented to, by some southern members, and sanctioned by the president, on the ground that Oregon lies wholly north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ ; that being the line of the Missouri compromise.

P'T IV.

P'D IV.

CH. I.

1847.

Nov. 2.

Murder of

Dr

Whitman

and

family.

1848.

Aug. 13.

Oregon

a terri-

tory.

CHAPTER I.—1. What occurred in Oregon? What petition followed? How was the petition met in Congress? What was



P'T IV. 2. AMERICAN CALIFORNIA was called by the Mex.  
 P'D IV. cans *New* or *Upper California*, in distinction from the  
 CH. I. peninsula, which was named *Old* or *Lower California*.  
 1579. It was discovered in 1579 by Sir Francis Drake. He  
 Sir Francis Drake discovered New California.  
 called the country *New Albion*, and took possession of it for his sovereign, Elizabeth of England. But the English lost the right imparted by discovery, as they sent out no colonies.

3. The Spanish under Cortez had discovered Old California. About 1603, Philip III. of Spain sent  
 1603. *Sebastiar Viscaino*, who discovered and took possession of the harbors of *San Diego* and *Monterey*. He gave a glowing description of the beauty and fertility of the country. Attempts of the Spaniards to colonize it proved ineffectual, on account of the hostility of the natives, whom the emigrants provoked by ill usage. The Spaniards, however, frequented the coast, on account of its valuable pearl fishery.

1769. 4. The first permanent settlement in New California was a Franciscan mission at San Diego. The Spanish king had given to the priests leave to settle in the country, for the purpose of converting the natives to Christianity. They selected the most fertile lands, and founded twenty-one missions, each occupying about fifteen miles square. The buildings were all contained in an inclosure made of *adobe*, or sun-dried brick. To the principal missions was attached a presidio, where was a quadrangular fort of adobe. In this was stationed a company of soldiers, to protect the missions from the natives, and to aid in bringing their feeble and disorderly tribes into subjection to the priests.

5. The order of things was not favorable to the increase of population. The missions were made up of

---

the final result of the petition?—2. What was American California called by the Mexicans, and why? When discovered? and by whom? Did it remain under the English?—3. Give an account of the Spanish discoveries. Of the results of their first attempts to colonize.—4. Where was the first permanent settlement? By whom made? For what object? How many missions were there? Describe them.—5. Which were the



monks and nuns; and to these were added the soldiers of the presidios, not allowed by the priests to bring their wives into the country. A few individuals, however, disregarding the prohibition of the priests, had taken with them their families; and a small number of towns had thus sprung up; the largest of which were Ciudad de Los Angeles, San Diego, and San Francisco, neither of which contained, in 1840, a thousand inhabitants.

6. This country, during the Spanish rule, constituted a part of the viceroyalty of Mexico, or New Spain. When Mexico became a federal republic, not finding California sufficiently populous to form a state, she established over it a territorial government, of which Los Angeles and Monterey were the seats.

7. A few years since, the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific was unknown; except in some parts of Oregon, which had been laid open by the discoveries of Capt. Grey, and by the explorations of Lewis and Clarke, already mentioned.

8. The American government, in 1838, sent out a naval *Exploring Expedition*, under Captain Charles Wilkes, who was directed to make surveys of the coasts of Oregon and California, with special reference to the bay of San Francisco. He pronounced the harbor of San Francisco to be "one of the finest, if not the very best in the world." The town, then called *Yerba Buena*, "consisted of one large frame building, occupied by the Hudson Bay Company; the store of an American merchant, a billiard-room, and a bar; a cabin of a ship, occupied as a dwelling;—besides outhouses, few and far between."

9. The most prominent man in the region was Capt. Sutter, a Swiss by birth; but emigrating from Mis-

largest of the small towns of Spanish settlers?—6. What changes occurred in California with respect to government?—7. What are the first discoveries mentioned, and what the previous state of the country west of the Rocky Mountains?—8. Give an account of the naval exploring expedition. What said Captain Wilkes of the bay of San Francisco? What is his description of the town?—9. Who was the most prominent man

P'TIV.

P'DIV.

CH. I.

The priests supreme.

1810.

(The entire population of California is estimated at

22,000; of which 5000 are whites.)

1816.

Los Angeles contains 1000 inhabitants.

1792.

Grey's discovery of the mouth of the Columbia.

1803-

1805.

Lewis and Clarke sent by President Jefferson.

1811.

Aug. 14.

Capt.

Wilkes enters the

bay of

San Fran-

cisco

(San

Francisco

contained

in 1846,

1500 in-

habitants;

1848,

15,000;

1850,

47,000;

1851,

25,000.

Last ac-

counts

show a

diminu-

tion.)

**PT IV.** soursi. Having obtained from Mexico a grant of land  
**P'D IV.** thirty leagues square, he located his residence within  
**CH. I.** it, and built a fort at the confluence of the American  
**1836.** river with the Sacramento, near the place since called  
 In the "revolution," 25 American hunters turn the scale.  
 Sacramento City. Capt. Wilkes reported well of the soil and productiveness of the country. He related a recent military contest, in which the scale was turned by the valor of twenty-five American hunters.

**1842.** 10. In 1842, Lieut. Fremont being ordered on an exploring tour, left, June 10, with a party of about 20, the mouth of the Kansas,—travelled along its fertile valley—struck off upon the sterile banks of the Platte—followed its South Fork to St. Vrain's Fort;—thence northerly to Fort Laramie, on the North Fork of the same stream. Following up, from this point, the North Fork, and then its affluent, the Sweet Water river, he was conducted, by a gentle ascent, to that wonderful gateway in the Rocky Mountains, the *South Pass*.  
 June 10. Fremont's tour of exploration.  
 (He found no mountain road on the line of travel.)  
 (Kit Carson was his guide.)

**1843.** 11. The next year, Fremont, now captain, crossed the Rocky Mountains further south, examined, and laid open, by his report, the region of the *Salt Lake*; having reached that remarkable expanse of brine, by following its beautiful affluent, the Bear river. After having explored Oregon, he turned south, and began his long homeward route, by traversing, in winter, the terrible and dangerous snows of the Sierra Nevada. From this seemingly interminable way, the lost and famished wanderers emerged upon the waters of the Sacramento; and they followed to Sutter's Fort its affluent, the American Fork, ignorant of the golden treasures beneath their feet,—soon to set in motion a rapidly increasing population from every corner of the world.  
 March 17. Leaves mouth of the Kansas.  
 Sept. 6. At the Salt Lake.  
 19th. At Fort Hall.  
 Nov. 4. At the Dalles.  
 Dec. 10. At Hamath Lake.  
**1844.** Jan. 10. At Pyramid Lake.

12. After their wants had been kindly supplied by Capt. Sutter, the party travelled south, and beheld

---

in the country? What is said of his location?—**10.** What is the date of Fremont's first exploring tour? Describe his route. (*Learn it by your map.*)—**11.** Describe his second tour from the Rocky Mountains to Sutter's Fort, observing the dates.—**12.** From Sutter's Fort homewards.

and enjoyed the vernal beauties of the flowery valley of the San Joaquin. Then, turning the southern extremity of the Sierra Nevada, they passed the arid wastes of the great Desert Basin. They had discovered and named, on their way, new rivers and mountain passes; and they had laid open regions which had heretofore, except to the hunter and the savage, been but the hidden recesses of nature. They had explored California, and made known an overland route.

P'T IV  
P'D IV.  
CH. II.  
**1844.**  
(Fremont discovers also many new objects of importance in natural science, for which he receives honors from England and Germany.)

## CHAPTER II.

Train of Events by which California became a part of the American Republic.—The Macnamara Project.—Discovery of Gold.

1. WE have already seen that Mr. Polk came into the presidency with a war upon his hands. He doubtless intended so to conduct it, that it should redound to the honor and advantage of his country; being early determined to obtain California and New Mexico. But a project was on foot to place California beyond the reach of the American government, and under the protection of the British. This was, in part, to be effected through the agency of Macnamara, an Irish priest, who, before the beginning of the war, visited the city of Mexico, and obtained grants of some of the best ports and most fertile lands of California. Capt. Fremont was sent overland, early in the spring of 1845, to California, ostensibly for scientific exploration, with 63 men, composed of the famous and noble hunter and guide, Kit Carson, and others like him, ready, with sinews of steel, to do or to dare;—furnished with artillery, and armed with Colt's six-

**1844**  
Mr. Polk's position on coming to the Presidency.

**1844 to 1846.**  
A project to prevent the American occupation of California.

CHAPTER II - - 1. What was Mr. Polk's position when he came into the presidency? What his intentions? What danger was there, that he might be defeated in his intention to obtain California? Whom did he send thither? By what route? When?



P'T IV

P'D IV.

CH. II.

(For particulars, see the author's unabridged American history.)

(The first railroad for general travelling was made between Manchester and Liverpool, 1825. First telegraph, 1841. It was invented by S. B. F. Morse, in 1836.)

shooting revolvers. If Mr. Polk's object was to counterwork the British plot, his measures and agents were well chosen, and his plans completely successful.\*

2. But while we attribute much to the worldly wisdom of the president, and to the ability of his agents ; we yet trace a higher wisdom, and a mightier power, in the agency which brought about the sudden upspringing of a great commercial state on the Pacific, possessing the elements of a pure Christianity, and a free government ; and in union with that nation which the needy and oppressed of other lands have, for the last half century, made their common asylum ;—and all this occurring as soon in time, as the invention of locomotion by steam, and the magnetic telegraph, could enable the central national will, as by a system of political muscles and nerves, instantaneously to send its mandates forth to every part of the body politic, and rapidly to receive in return whatever it may require.

1848.

(Feb. 2. The treaty with Mexico signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo.)

3. When, in 1848, the Mexican treaty added to the American Republic vast tracts, of which the Californian portion had a frame-work of society adverse to our own, many patriots looked with apprehension for the result ; knowing, that, ordinarily, the full river keeps the course first taken by the rivulet. Would enough of our citizens go thither to turn this course—to fuse this portion into the common mass ? Providence presented a material to draw them thither, so quickly, and in such ample numbers, that they at once

---

\* Whether or not, in performing this service, he undertook and executed more than the constitution of the republic allows to the sole executive power, and thus left dangerous precedents, it belongs to the jurist to decide.

---

By whom accompanied ? If Mr. Polk intended to defeat the plans of the British, what was his success ?—2. Should we, in the great events which concern California, attribute every thing to human agents ? In what wonderful combination of events do we trace a higher wisdom and a mightier power ?—3. What cause of apprehension had the American patriot ? What queries would naturally arise in his mind ? How were these an-

constituted the principal stream of Californian society, into which all minor currents, not excepting the original, were merged; and GOLD, the curse of other lands, was a blessing to this.

4. In February, 1848, a private discovery of gold was made on the grounds of Capt. Sutter, by a Mr. Marshall, then in his employ, twenty-five miles up the American Fork of the Sacramento. It was soon found in other localities. Rumors of Californian gold reached the Atlantic States, which were converted to certainty by the president's message of December, 1849, accompanied by a letter from Gov. Mason, who had been in person to visit the gold "diggings." As he passed along, he found houses deserted, and fields of wheat going to ruin; their owners having left them to dig for gold. Such had been the quantities found, that every convenience of life bore an enormous price. Capt. Sutter paid his blacksmith \$10 per day; and he received \$500 per month for the rent of a two-story house within his fort. Gov. Mason followed up the American river to the saw-mill, in whose race-way the golden scales were first discovered. He visited other "placers," and saw multitudes engaged in the beds of streams, and in dry ravines, where water-courses had once existed. In a little gutter, two men had found the value of \$17,000. The ordinary yield, for a day's work, was two ounces.

5. Such were the facts reported from unquestionable sources; and California at once became the one luminous point, to which all eyes were directed. There was a rush for the land of gold,—not only from the United States, but from Europe, Asia, South America, and the isles of the sea.

P'T IV.

P'D IV.

CH. II.

(The Mint, on assaying the California gold, found it remarkably pure.)

(From Dec., 1849, to Jan., 1850, 99 vessels from the U. States, 52 from N. York; 29 from New England.) From Oct., 1849, to Oct., 1850, one year, arrived at San Francisco, 48,615 immigrants by sea, and 33,000 by land

answered by a great Providential event?—4. When was gold discovered? Where? By whom? When first made known to the Atlantic States? What did Gov. Mason observe and relate?—5. What was the consequence of the spread of these and similar facts?

## CHAPTER III.

Taylor's Inauguration.—Close of the 30th Congress.—California.—Unexampled Wealth and Increase.—Establishment of Civil Government.—Exemplary Political Demeanor.—Difficulty with Texas.

P'T IV. 1. MINNESOTA, adjacent to the head waters of the  
P'D IV. Mississippi, was erected into a territory on the 3d of  
CH. III. March, 1849.

1849. 2. At the election in 1848, Gen. ZACHARY TAYLOR,  
March 3. the hero of the Rio Grande, was chosen president;  
Minne- and Millard Fillmore, of New York, vice-president.  
sota Ter- Their inauguration occurred on the 4th of March,  
ritory. 1849, when, by the constitution, the 30th Congress  
March 4. was dissolved.—The increase of labor devolving on  
Inaugura- the several departments of the government, in con-  
tion of sequence of the growth of the nation, caused con-  
Taylor gress to authorize a separate bureau, called "*The De-*  
and Fill- *partment of the Interior.*" Thomas Ewing, of Ohio,  
more. was appointed by the president its first secretary,  
and John M. Clayton, of Delaware, was made secre-  
tary of state.

New de-  
partment.

1848 3. With such exactness were the different parties  
to balanced, in regard to the slavery question, that in the  
1850. congress of 1848-9, all that could be obtained for  
(1850. California was a law, by which her revenue was to  
The cen- be collected and placed in the coffers of the republic.  
sus esti- Happily, the exemplary political conduct of California,  
mate of under these trying circumstances, relieved the anxious  
the popu- forebodings of American patriots, that she might take  
lation of  
California  
is  
200,000.)

---

CHAPTER III.—1. What do we here learn of Minnesota?  
—2. What offices were filled by election? What persons  
elected? When? When inaugurated? What Congress was,  
the day preceding, dissolved? What new department was  
created? Who was the first incumbent? Who President  
Taylor's Secretary of State?—3. What was the estimated  
population of California in 1850? (See side note.) What  
was the only action of the Congress of 1848-9 respecting  
California? What did American patriots fear? What did



Oregon for an ally, and set up for herself. To prevent any such disaster, Gen. Taylor gave the Californians the timely assurance, that "whatever can be done to afford the people of the Territories the benefits of civil government, and the protection that is due them, will be anxiously considered and attempted by the executive." He suggested to them the expediency of forming a state government for themselves, thereafter to be submitted to congress.

4. These counsels tended to keep the leading politicians of California true to the Union. Indeed, they loved their native land, and confided in her ultimate justice. But while waiting for future protection, the exciting present was upon them. THERE, were the gathered and the gathering thousands, attracted from every land by the sovereign power of gold; and government, in addition to that exercised by Gen. Mason, the military commandant, the citizens found it necessary to exercise among themselves. At first it was informal; and he who was found guilty of high crimes, was put to death, with little ceremony or delay. Gen. Riley, the hero of Contreras, who succeeded Gen. Mason as military governor, issued his proclamation August 1st, 1849, establishing a species of judiciary, at the head of which was placed Peter H. Burnet. Subsequently, he issued another proclamation, inviting the citizens to choose delegates to form a constitution for a state government. Delegates were consequently chosen; who met at Monterey, September 1st, 1849, and there formed a constitution, which was accepted by the people. Slavery had, in the mean time, been decided against, by a special convention holden at San Francisco, and it was accordingly excluded by the constitution.

5. The first legislature convened at San José, De-

P'T IV.

P'D IV.  
CH. III.

1849.

April 3.

(See Sec.

Clayton's

letter to

T. B.

King,

who was

sent to

Califor-

nia by

the Presi-

dent.)

1848.

(Aug. 7.

Mason,

now a

brevet

Brig-

dier-Gen-

eral,

learning

the exist-

ence of

the treaty

assumes

civil

power.)

1849.

April 13.

Riley suc-

ceeds

Mason.

Aug. 1.

A sort of

Judiciary

estab-

lished.

Sept. 1.

At Mon-

terey,

delegates

meet to

form a

State

govern-

ment.

General Taylor suggest by a letter of his Secretary to his agent, Thomas Butler King?—4. What were the necessities of the Californians in regard to civil government? Who was General Riley? What was done by him? What was done in consequence of his proclamation? How was the slavery question disposed of?—5. Where did the first Legislature of

- P'T IV. cember 20th, 1849. Peter H. Burnet, who was elected  
 P'D IV. chief magistrate, addressed to the senate and assem-  
 CH. III. bly a message of extraordinary interest. "How  
 1849. rapid," he exclaims—"how astonishing have been the  
 Dec. 21. changes in California! Twenty months ago, inhabited  
 At San by a sparse population—a pastoral people, deriving a  
 José, first mere subsistence from their flocks and herds, and a  
 Legisla- scanty cultivation of the soil;—now,—the inexhaust-  
 ture meet. ible gold mines discovered,—our ports are filled with  
 Gov. Bur- shipping from every clime; our beautiful bays and  
 net's elo- placid rivers are navigated by steam; and commercial  
 quent cities have sprung up as if by enchantment. . . .  
 address. Now we are here assembled for the sublime task of  
 An exam- organizing a new state. But should our constitution  
 ple for conflict with the constitution of our common country,  
 older states. that must prevail. That great instrument, which now  
 (Gov. governs more than twenty millions of people, and links  
 Burnet had the wisdom and bold- in one common destiny thirty states, demands our  
 ness to recom- purest affections, and our first and highest duty.  
 mend to the peo- . . . We would leave our people to suffer on,  
 ple direct rather than in- rather than violate one single principle of that great  
 taxation debt- fundamental law of the land." Gov. Burnet believed,  
 rather than in- however, that there would be no such violation, and  
 debted- the members accordingly proceeded to legislative  
 ness.) action.
- (Edward 6. The choice of senators to congress fell upon  
 Gilbert and G. H. John C. Fremont and William M. Gwin. The con-  
 Wright stitution of California, and her petition for admittance  
 first repre- into the Union, were carried by them to Washington,  
 senta- and by the president transmitted to congress, with a  
 tives.) commendatory message. The clause prohibiting sla-  
 1850. very was, in congress, as a torch applied to explosives;  
 Feb. 13. some southern members declaring that its adoption by  
 President Taylor sends to congress the con-  
 stitution of Cali- stitution would be the cause of immediate secession.
7. Other subjects of appalling difficulty pressed upon

---

California meet? Who was chosen governor? What was there in his speech concerning rapid changes? For what, did he say, the Legislature had assembled? Should their constitution conflict with that of the United States—what then! —6. What senators were the first chosen? What did they carry to Washington? What effect was produced in Congress

congress;—all, however, implicated in the one absorbing topic of slavery. Texas claimed that her territory extended to the Rio Grande; but the New-Mexicans in and around Santa Fé, east of the Rio Grande, had never submitted, and were utterly averse to her rule. In January, 1849, her legislature passed laws, dividing the disputed region into counties. To organize in these counties a Texan government, Gov. Bell, the executive, sent an agent, Major Neighbours, to Santa Fé, who warned Col. Monroe, the United States military commandant, against all “interference.” Colonel Monroe, finding the New Mexicans enraged, and being instructed from Washington, called a convention, which framed a state constitution; and, while Texas was making preparations to seize this territory by force, the petition of New Mexico to be admitted into the Union was introduced into congress.

8. While New Mexico was petitioning congress for a government, another remarkable people were at their doors with the same request. These were the enterprising Mormons, who had found a resting-place on the borders of the Salt Lake,—where, collecting their scattered bands, and sending out their leaders to return with proselytes, they had now a flourishing settlement, numbering some thousands.†—Another exciting subject was a bill introduced by Senator Butler, of South Carolina, for a new law, to enable the masters of fugitive slaves to recover them from other states.

P'T IV.

P'D IV.

CH. III.

1849.

Jan.  
Texas  
makes  
laws to  
assert her  
power  
over New  
Mexico.

1850.

April 18.

Major  
Neigh-  
bours at  
Santa Fé,  
Texas  
and U.  
States  
govern-  
ments in-  
terfere.

1850.

Jan. 16.  
Senator  
Foote in-  
troduces  
a bill for  
the gov-  
ernment  
of Deseret  
—i. e.  
Utah.

(† 1850.  
Census  
estimate,  
25,000.)

---

by the clause prohibiting slavery!—7. What other difficult subject is next mentioned as pressing upon Congress? What measures did Texas take in 1849? What was done on the part of New Mexico?—8. What here is said of the Mormons?



## CHAPTER IV.

Congressional Eloquence of the First Session of the Thirty-first Congress.

P<sup>T</sup> IV.P<sup>D</sup> IV.

CH. IV.

1849

-50.

'One Congress each  
two years.  
There  
have been  
61 from  
the adop-  
tion of the  
federal  
constitu-  
tion.)

1850.

Jan. 17.

Mr. Dick-  
inson's  
speech.

1. THE first session of the thirty-first congress was the longest, the most stormy, and the most important in its results, of any since the organization of the government; and in it, by the strife and power of words, were settled more important issues than those on any battle-field since the Revolution. The senate took the lead. Never had that body presented more able statesmen, or more powerful orators.

2. The two first northern senators who broke in upon the sullen gloom of uncharitableness and discontent, with which the southern members met the northern, were DICKINSON of New York, and PHELPS of Vermont. The former, in the course of his speech, solemnly assured his southern brethren that the north, as a body, regarded the guaranties of the constitution as sacred. "Sir," said he, "take a small number out of the northern and also out of the southern sections of the Union, or silence their clamor, and this accursed agitation would be settled in less than a week. . . . The constitution throws its broad ægis over the whole of this mighty republic. Its people bow before it with more than eastern devotion. They will adhere to this Union; and although the northern people are opposed to the institution of slavery, the great mass of them have no intention or disposition to trench upon constitutional rights. And this they will prove to the south, should the occasion arise, even though they should sell their lives in her defence."

3. In the speech of Senator Phelps, 23d January, logical argument was complacently mingled with

---

CHAPTER IV.—1. Why was this called the 31st Congress? (See side note.) What is said of the first session of this Congress?—2. Give some account of the speech of Senator Dickinson?—3. Of that of Senator Phelps?—4. What occurred on the

an original vein of wit. Without taking serious ground against the southern threat of secession, he showed that the time had not yet come. The supreme judiciary of the United States were the proper court to try constitutional questions; and unless the south, before proceeding to action, appealed to that tribunal, she would put herself in the wrong. In so important a matter, she should not be in too much haste, but take the proper steps, and bide her time. As to what had been offensively said at the north, this was a land of free speech; and what was to be done with people who believed themselves charged with a mission, not only to amend the constitution framed by the wisdom of our fathers, but also to assist the Almighty in the correction of sundry mistakes which they had discovered in his works? The brows of the southern members unbent, and they cordially greeted the orator when the speech was ended; and an observer remarked, "He has thrown the first bucket of water which has reached the fire."

4. On the 25th of January, Mr. CLAY offered his memorable plan of compromise. On the 5th of February, amidst such a crowd of both sexes as the senate-chamber had never before witnessed, he came forward to speak in their defence. He was now venerable in years, but his intellect retained its soundness, and his heart its deep well-spring of patriotic feeling. His voice, his eye, his grace of action and gift of words, which made him regarded as the first orator who speaks the English tongue, were yet preserved, that he might succor, and perhaps save, his country, in this her hour of peril. In the preamble of his eight resolutions, he stated the reason of their introduction to be, that it was "for the peace, harmony, and concord of the Union to settle, and adjust amicably, all exciting questions of controversy between them arising out of the institution of slavery, upon a fair, equitable, and just basis." The compromise was

PT IV.

FD IV.

CH. IV.

1850.

Jan. 23.

Speech of

Mr.

Phelps.

Jan. 25.

Mr.

Clay's

eight

comprom.

mise resolutions

25th of January, 1850? On the 5th of February? What is said of Mr. Clay's powers as an orator? What was the object

**P<sup>T</sup> IV.** substantially the same as that which passed after months of debate, and is hereafter to be explained.

**P<sup>D</sup> IV.**

**CH. IV.**

**Feb. 5.**

**Mr.**

**Clay's**

**great**

**speech.**

**Mr.**  
**Clay's**  
**view of**  
**the dan-**  
**gerous**  
**position**  
**of the**  
**country**

**Of the**  
**conse-**  
**quences**  
**of dis-**  
**union.**

**March 7.**  
**Mr. Web-**  
**ster's**  
**great**  
**speech.**

**(Its gen-**  
**eral sub-**  
**ject to re-**  
**commend**  
**the com-**  
**promise.)**

5. "Never before," said Mr. Clay, "have I risen with feelings of such deep solicitude. I have witnessed many periods of great anxiety, of peril, and of danger to the country; but never before have I risen to address an assembly, so oppressed, so appalled, so anxious." He attributed the danger of the country to the unprincipled selfishness of party men. At the moment when the White House was on fire, instead of uniting to extinguish the flames, they were contending about who should be its next occupant! While a dreadful crevasse menaced inundation, they were contesting the profits of the estate, which was threatened with total submersion! . . . All now is uproar, confusion, and menace to this Union. . . . He denounced secession. None had a right to secede. . . . Within the Union he took his stand, and there he meant to stand and die,—fighting, if necessary; but no power on earth should force him out of the Union. He dwelt on the ruin which would spring from the dissolution of the Union. War would be inevitable; and such a war,—so furious, so bloody, so implacable, so exterminating, could not be found upon the pages of history. He entreated members to pause on the brink of the precipice, before they took the fearful leap, into the yawning abyss. But if that direful event, the dissolution of the Union, were to happen, he implored of heaven that he might not survive to behold it.

6. To similar effect was the eloquence of Daniel Webster. "Mr. President," he said, "I hear with pain, and anguish, and distress, the word secession falling from the lips of the eminent and patriotic. Secession! Peaceable secession! The dismemberment of this vast country without convulsion! The

---

of his eight resolutions?—5. Recite the two introductory sentences of Mr. Clay's speech. To what did he attribute the danger of the country? By what striking metaphors did he show the wicked selfishness of party men? What did he say of secession,—of leaving the Union? Recite the author's account of the close of the speech.—6. Recite the sketch given of the re-



breaking up of the fountains of the great deep, without ruffling the surface! . . . Peaceable secession! What would be the result? What would become of the army, the navy, and the public lands? Where is the line to be drawn? What states are to be associated? What is to remain American? Where am I to be? Where is the flag to remain? Is the eagle still to tower? or is he to cower, to shrink, and fall to the ground?"

P'T IV.

P'D IV.

CH. V.

Mr. Webster on secession.

## CHAPTER V.

The Committee of Thirteen.—The "Omnibus Bill."—Death of Taylor and Inauguration of Fillmore.—Separate Passage of the Compromise Measures.—The Cuban Expedition.—Liberia

1. IN the tempest, it is the lightning, not the thunder, which kills; but as, peal by peal, the dangerous element explodes, the atmosphere becomes cleared. Thus the impassioned eloquence and fiery declamation of the capitol, gave wholesome vent to dangerous feeling; and inspired a healthier tone of public sentiment; which, beginning at Washington, spread throughout the Union.

1850

Better tone of public sentiment.

2. Mr. Clay had ably defended his plan of compromise. Senator Bell, of Kentucky, introduced and advocated another. Senator Foote, of Mississippi, made a motion, which was finally carried, for the appointment of a committee of the senate, to be composed of six members from the north, six from the south, and a thirteenth to be chosen by the first twelve; to whom should be referred the different plans for compromise;—with directions, however, that the committee report,

April 12. Committee of Thirteen appointed

marks of Mr. Webster on secession, made in his great speech of March 7th, 1850.

CHAPTER V. —1. What beneficial effects were produced by the stern eloquence of the Capitol?—2. What motion was

P<sup>T</sup> IV. according to their own judgment, a plan of settlement  
P<sup>D</sup> IV. for the different branches of the slavery question.

CH. V. 3. Of this honored committee, Mr. Clay was chair-  
1850. man, by choice of the Senate; and he made their re-  
May 8. port to that body, the 8th of May. Four months of jar-  
Mr. Clay reports the "Om-  
nibus Bill,"  
providing for the  
settlement of the  
several points in-  
troduced by his  
compromise reso-  
lutions.  
June 2. In the mean time the Nashville convention, which, had it  
Nash- assembled in January, might have led to civil war  
ville Con- and national destruction,\* met harmlessly on the  
vention. 2d of June; partaking of the country's calmer mood

1850. and renewed devotion to the Union. Judge Sharkie,  
June 3. its projector, was made president of the convention.  
Judge In his initiatory address, he said, that its members  
Sharkie's address. had met, "because the constitution, which gave  
equal rights to the South, had been violated; and that  
was a shock which the government could not stand."  
They had assembled to devise a remedy, and thus to  
preserve the Union. It was a slander of enemies,  
that they had met to dissolve the Union. For his  
part, he hoped that "the Union would be the last thing  
to perish amidst the wreck of matter."

4. In May, 1850, a military force under the Cuban

\* "The Southern members conferred together, spoke to-  
gether, and, at one time, would have been prepared to sink or  
swim in a common peril."—*See Senator Butler's Speech at the  
Charleston Convention, May, 1851.*

---

made and carried by Senator Foote?—3. What is said of the  
Committee of Thirteen? Of their report? Of the debate  
which ensued? Of the Nashville Convention? Who was made  
President of the Convention? In his address what did he  
say?—4. Give some account of the attempt made upon

general, Lopez, sailed with munitions of war from New Orleans, pretended emigrants in vessels clearing for Chagres. They made their rendezvous in the Island of Contoy, on the coast of Yucatan. On the night of the 18th May, Gen. Lopez with 609 men, approached the coast of Cuba in the steamship Creole. He landed at the little town of Cárdenas, of which he took possession, after having burnt the governor's house in order to force the garrison to surrender; after which, the governor, together with three of his officers and twenty-seven soldiers were made prisoners. The soldiers joined Lopez's ranks.

P'T IX.  
P'D IV.  
CH. V.  
1850.

Expedi-  
tion from  
the U.  
S. against  
Cuba.

May 18.  
The inva-  
ders land  
at Car-  
denas

5. On the evening of the 19th Gen. Lopez, having changed his plan, re-embarked to effect another landing on the western part of Cuba; a bloody skirmish occurring on his way to the ship. The men compelled the officers to carry them to Key West, the nearest port on the American coast. Just as they entered, the Spanish war-steamer Pizarro overtook them. The commander asked of the American authorities the restoration of the invaders, which not obtaining, he returned to Havana and represented the facts to his government. Gen. Taylor, who had issued a special proclamation against any such armament, sent a strong naval force to Cuba, which arrived too late to prevent the invasion. Lopez not having embarked

May 22.  
Arrival at  
Key  
West.

6. Pending the debates on the compromise measures, the nation was called to deep and sincere mourning for the loss of her beloved chief magistrate. Gen. Taylor expired at the presidential mansion on the 9th of July, and MILLARD FILLMORE, of New York, immediately succeeded him in the presidency; happily well fitted by moral, intellectual, and physical

July 9.  
Death of  
the presi-  
dent.

Inaugura-  
tion of Mr  
Fillmore

---

Cuba, in May, 1850. At what town on the island did the invaders land? What did they do there?—5. Relate what occurred on the retreat of the invading force. What is said of the commander of the Pizarro? What was done by General Taylor? Who were the Contoy prisoners? What was the fate of a few men left at Cardenas?—6. What melancholy event occurred July 9? What is said of Mr. Fillmore? What change oc-



P'T IV. soundness, for the exalted and difficult place. Mr.  
 P'D IV. KING of Alabama, was chosen president of the senate.  
 CH. V. The cabinet of Gen. Taylor resigned. Mr. Fillmore  
 appointed able successors,—Mr. Webster filling the  
 department of state. He soon negotiated with the  
 government of Cuba the release of the Contoy  
 prisoners.

1850.

Sept. 7.  
 The com-  
 promise  
 measures.

Utah  
 erected  
 into a ter-  
 ritory,  
 (esti-  
 mated  
 popula-  
 tion,  
 25,000.)

New  
 Mexico  
 made a  
 territory,  
 (esti-  
 mated  
 popula-  
 tion,  
 61,504.)

(A fugi-  
 tive-slave  
 law was  
 passed in  
 1793; but  
 being  
 found, or  
 made dif-  
 ficult of  
 execu-  
 tion, it  
 had be-  
 come ob-  
 solete.)

7. In the early part of September, the measures re-  
 ported by the committee of thirteen passed—sepa-  
 rately; but they had been considered together, and  
 were agreed to, as mutual concessions and compro-  
 mises for the sake of union. By them, 1st, California,  
 with her constitution excluding slavery, and her boun-  
 daries extending from Oregon to the Mexican posses-  
 sions, was admitted into the Union as a state. 2d,  
 The Great Basin east of California, containing the  
 Mormon settlement near the Salt Lake, was erected,  
 without mention of slavery, into a territory, by the  
 Indian appellation of Utah. 3d, New Mexico, with  
 a boundary which satisfied her inhabitants, was also  
 erected, without mention of slavery, into a terri-  
 tory; Congress giving Texas, for the relinquishment  
 of her claims, ten millions of dollars;—Texas to pay  
 with the money former debts, for which the United  
 States were bound,—not legally, but in honor. 4th,  
 A law was passed, abolishing—not slavery, but the  
 slave-trade, in the District of Columbia; and 5th, the  
 fugitive-slave law was passed; whose object is, the  
 more effectually to secure the prompt delivery of per-  
 sons bound to service or labor in one state, and escap-  
 ing into another.

8. The compromise measures proved the quieting  
 of the fearful storm. Those who passed them, did,  
 like the framers of the constitution, agree to appre-  
 hended evils to prevent disunion, and thus preserve

---

curred in the cabinet?—7. What is said of the compromise  
 measures? What is, in your author's order of arrangement, the  
 first of the compromise measures? What the second? The  
 third, including the agreement with Texas? What is the  
 fourth? What the fifth of the compromise measures?—  
 8. Why was the passage of the compromise measures highly

the country in its vital point. Some condemned, but the nation at large approved; and no rallying cry so touched the heart of the people, as "The Union, the whole Union!" "Our Country, one and entire!"

P<sup>R</sup>T IV  
P<sup>R</sup>D IV  
CH. V.

1850

9. The remains of the great agitation appeared at the north by opposition to the fugitive-slave law, which, however, was upheld, by the national and state judiciaries; and at the south by a convention of delegates, from the anti-union party, held April, 1851, in Charleston, S. C., where, notwithstanding the counsels of Senator Butler and others, the majority, recommended separate secession. But the mingled tide of national prosperity and returning confidence sets against sectional discontent and animosity. The network of railroads, which more and more intersects the country, promotes the intercourse of trade and civility, and thus tends to harmonize its different parts. Charleston will soon be connected by railroad with the interior of Tennessee, and thus a competitor for the trade of the great valley of the Mississippi.

Remains  
of the  
great agi-  
tation at  
the  
South.

10. The restoration of confidence between good and patriotic citizens of the north and the south, will be full of prosperity and happiness to both. The colored race, as they were the first to suffer by the loss of such confidence, so they will be the first to benefit by its return. Already we hear more and more of efforts at the south to improve them, as intellectual, moral, and religious beings. They are, by the generality of planters, allowed a degree of independence in the disposal of time and the holding of property, and so many personal comforts, that their condition, except in name, is preferable to that of a

Condi-  
tion  
of the  
Slaves  
contrast-  
ed.

important to the nation?—9. By what did the remains of the great agitation appear at the North? By whom was the fugitive-slave law upheld? By what did the remains of the great agitation appear at the South? What was recommended by the delegates of the anti-union party in S. C.? Who gave wiser counsel? What tide sets against sectional discontent and animosity? What promotes intercourse, and thus tends to harmonize? What new prospects has Charleston?—10. What will be the consequences of the restoration of confidence between good and patriotic citizens at the North and the South? What is said of the condition of the colored race at the the South?

P'T IV. large proportion of the peasantry of Europe ; much  
 P'D IV. more, to that of the wild tribes of Africa. The south-  
 CH. V. ern planters furnish the article of cotton, to the manu-  
 facturers of Europe, as well as America ; which gives  
 great value to slave labor.

1849. 11. TREATIES.—In 1849, a treaty was negotiated  
 Jan. 27. at Rio Janeiro by Mr. Tod, the American minister,  
 Treaty with the Viscount Olinda, on the part of the Brazilian  
 Brazil. emperor, the latter agreeing to pay a specified sum to  
 the Americans for spoliations. . . . A temporary

Aug. 29. treaty was negotiated at Washington, by the Austrian  
 Treaty with minister, Mr. Hulseman, and Secretary Buchanan, by  
 Austria. which certain privileges were granted to the subjects  
 of each contracting power, residing in the other's

1850. country. During the revolt of Hungary, Gen. Taylor  
 Austria sent by Mr. Mann a message of inquiry to Kossuth,  
 takes of- the patriotic leader of the revolted Hungarians. Of  
 fence. this the Austrian government, by Mr. Hulseman, in a  
 Mr. Web- letter to Mr. Clayton, complained, with threats. After  
 ster re- Gen. Taylor's death, Mr. Webster made an able and  
 plies to popular reply, showing that the act of the president  
 Mr. was not an interference in the affairs of Austria ; but  
 Hulse- only a natural manifestation of the sympathy, which  
 man. this nation must be expected to feel, for those whose  
 struggles for freedom are similar to our own.

1850. 12. On the 16th of December, the National Assem-  
 Dec. 16. bly of the Republic of Switzerland, in open session at  
 America Berne, ratified, with extraordinary tokens of high  
 honored satisfaction, a treaty of amity and commerce, which  
 by Swit- had been previously negotiated between the two re-  
 zerland. publics of America and Switzerland. . . . Of

Sand- all the triumphs of Christianity in our day, there is  
 wich none more signal than the conversion and civilization  
 Islands of the Sandwich Islands. They are a feeble power,  
 Dec. 20. but England and America have with policy and justice  
 French ships of made treaties with their king ; acknowledging his in-  
 war make arbitrary demands.

---

—11. What were the circumstances of the formation of the treaty with Brazil ? With Austria ? What occurred to offend the Austrian government ? To what letter did Mr. Webster reply, and what did he show ?—12. What occurred on the 16th of December, 1850 ? What is said of the Sandwich Islands ?—



dependence, which has been threatened by serious aggressions on the part of France.

P'T IV.

P'D IV.

CH. V.

13. LIBERIA, in Africa, now comprises 520 miles of Atlantic coast. It has been colonized by American-born Africans, of whom eight thousand have been carried over by the Colonization Society. These have extended their influence far inland and over 200,000 native inhabitants. They have now established a republican government, their officers being all men of color,—of whom the worthy President Roberts is chief. Different Protestant denominations in the United States have supplied them with some of the most devoted of missionaries of both sexes; several of whom have died martyrs to a climate, which, though salubrious to the black, is often fatal to the white. A regular Christian ministry, Sunday and week-day schools are established; and the slave-trade throughout the whole coast from Gallinas to Cape Palmas is broken up. The enterprise is fast growing in favor, not only as a safety-valve for drawing off our surplus colored population, but as a means of changing the present degradation of Africa into Christian civilization.

For these facts, see address of Hon. J. R. Ingersoll, Pres. of the A. Col. Society of Pa.

(Forty African nations have made treaties with Liberia, abjuring the slave-trade.)

14. The census of 1850 shows the population of the United States to be 23,267,498; of whom 3,197,589 are slaves. Our great and growing republic now occupies a position on which the proudest nations of Europe have no occasion to look down; while the lesser republics of our own continent, look up to the oldest and most powerful of its nations, for precedent, if not for protection. To be a disinterested friend to these,—to lead them forward in a career, not only of liberty united with security,—but of national virtue,—this is the only headship of nations, which the sagacious American patriot covets for his country.

1850.

(Population. Ratio of increase during the last ten years 38½ per cent.)

13. Of Liberia? Of its government? Of the missionaries? Of the condition of the people in regard to a ministry and schools? to the slave-trade? How is the enterprise of colonization now regarded?—14. What was the population of the United States in 1850? What is the present position of the Republic? What kind of headship of nations does the American patriot covet for his country? How does this compare

**P'T IV.** And it is a leadership compared with which, conquest  
**P'D IV.** by war is but an antiquated vulgarity : the one bring-  
**CH. V.** ing security as well as honor ; the other tending, as  
 with ancient Rome, to decay and dissolution.

Emigra-  
 tion from  
 Europe.

15. There is a great and increasing emigration from Europe to America. In 1850, the number exceeded 300,000, and the ratio is rapidly increasing. Some are of the bone and sinew of Europe, attracted hither by our republican institutions ; while another portion is sent to our shores from jails and poor-houses ; and as we have reason to believe, for the purpose of hastening on that ruin by anarchy, which European foes to freedom predict and desire. Crime

**1849.** accordingly increases ; but within the last few years, the determination on the part of native Americans to resist anarchy, by inflicting the penalties of crime, in-  
**May 15.**  
**Astor-**  
**place**  
**riot.**

**1850.** creases also. In New York, a riot at the Astor-place theatre, was promptly put down by the legal action of the military ; several of the rioters losing their lives upon the spot. In Boston, John White Webster, a professor of Harvard College, expiated upon the gal-  
**(March**  
**23.**  
**Professor**  
**Webster**  
**convicted**  
**of the**  
**murder of**  
**Dr. Park-**  
**man.**

16. We would not by any remarks of ours arouse a spirit of war. We hope none will again occur between Britain and America. They ought rather to stand together in the great moral contest for human rights against absolutism,—temporal and spiritual. If there has gone out from Britain political wrong against us, it is only from that portion, who sympathize with the doctrines of the Holy Alliance. But let us beware. Let America encourage her native talent, and never again form her opinion of her own interior concerns, either from a foreign press, foreign fanatics, or foreign emissaries. Let her rise above

It is com-  
 parative-  
 ly but a  
 small por-  
 tion of  
 Britain  
 who de-  
 sire polit-  
 ical disas-  
 ter to  
 America.

---

with conquest by war?—**15.** What is said of the emigration from Europe ? What happens in consequence of our being thronged with an unsound population ? What determination seems prevailing among native Americans ? What two examples are given?—**16.** Should Britain and America cultivate a spirit of war or a spirit of peace ? Should America look to foreigners for opinions concerning her own interior concerns ?

their frowns, and their flatteries ; and looking to God, study, for her guide, HIS WISDOM in the constitution of man, AND HIS PROVIDENCE in the history of our race. SINCE OUR ENEMIES SEEK TO DIVIDE US, LET US THE MORE SEEK UNION. If they operate to drive us into anarchy by overwhelming us with an unsound population, let our people the more UPHOLD EDUCATION, LAW AND ORDER. And while the crafty politicians of Europe are bewildering themselves in their own mazes, let the rulers of America, as did Washington, KEEP THE NATIONAL CONSCIENCE CLEAR IN DISCERNMENT, AND SUPREME IN ACTION. Then will God turn to foolishness the counsels of our enemies, and more and more make us his own exalted and favored people.

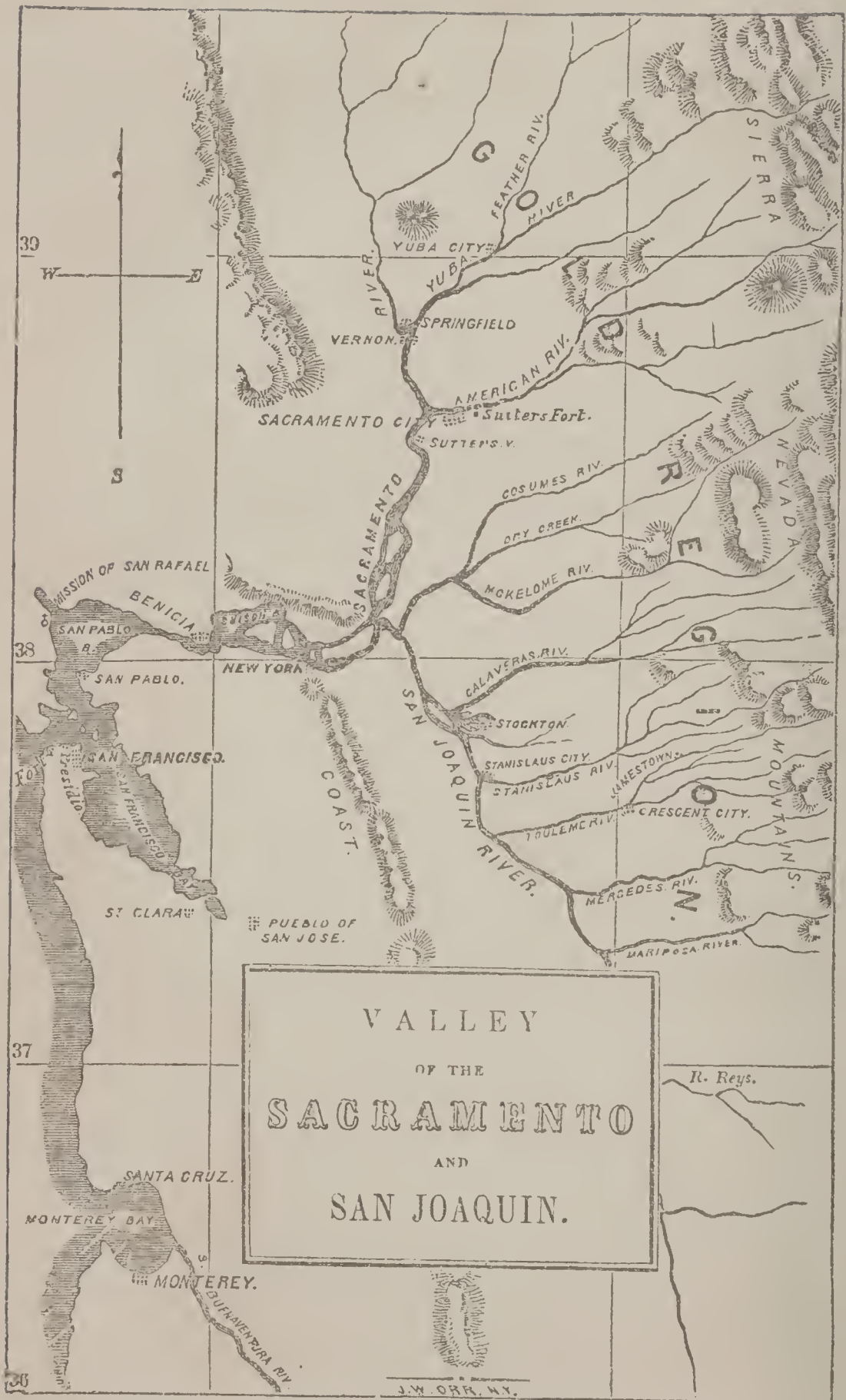
P'DIV.  
PT IV.  
CH. V.

Let us  
live not to  
other na-  
tions, but  
to our  
country  
and our  
God

---

To whom should this nation look, and what study ? What if enemies seek to divide us ? What if they seek to drive us into anarchy ? What should be done by the rulers of the American Republic ?





THE  
CONSTITUTION  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

*Framed during the year 1787, by a convention of delegates, who met at Philadelphia, from the states of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia.*

---

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America. Preamble

ARTICLE I.

SECT. I.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives. Legislative powers.

SECT. II.—1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members, chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature. Its composition

2. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen. Eligibility of representatives

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to servitude for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number Manner and ratio of representation and taxes

of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative: and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

**Vacancies.** 4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies

**Speaker. Impeachments.** 5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker, and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

**Senators, two from each state.** SECT. III.—1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years: and each senator shall have one vote.

**Arrangement for a choice of one-third every second year.** 2. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

**Eligibility to office.** 3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

**Presiding officer.** 4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

**Power of trial in impeachments and** 6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath, or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

**penalty.** 7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

**Sections.** SECT. IV.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each



state by the legislature thereof; but the congress may, at any time by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day. Meeting of congress.

SECT. V.—1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide. Their organization.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member. Rules.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journals.

4. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting. and adjournment.

SECT. VI.—1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place. Compensation and privileges.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person, holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuation in office. Plurality of offices.

SECT. VII.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills. Origin of bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other their course in becoming laws.

house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary, (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him; or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECT. VIII.—The congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads.

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land or water.

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

13. To provide and maintain a navy.

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the

militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by congress.

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district, (not exceeding ten miles square,) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings:—and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department, or office thereof.

SECT. IX.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

Personal  
taxes

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Right of  
trial.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex-post facto law, shall be passed.

Attainder

4. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, herein before directed to be taken.

Capita-  
tion.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels, bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Commer-  
cial  
revenue.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Treasury.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Interdic-  
tion of  
titles

SECT. X.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

Conserva-  
tion of  
powers  
vested in  
the Union



2. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports and exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay

Further  
defined.

## ARTICLE II.

SECT. I.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

The chief  
magis-  
trate.

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The man-  
ner of his  
election

3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president: and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them by ballot, the vice-president.

by the  
people;

by the  
house of  
represent-  
atives,

ad of the  
vice-presi-  
dent.

4 The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes: which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president, neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Require-  
ment for  
office.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

Proviso in  
case of  
death or  
removal

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Compensation, and

3. Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath, or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Oath of  
office.

SECT. II.—1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

His duties

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

and powers in making treaties,

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

filling vacancies, and

SECT. III.—He shall, from time to time, give to the congress

information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

**Removal from office.** SECT. IV.—The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

**The judiciary, and method of investiture.** SECT. I.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

**Their powers.** SECT. II.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

**Rules of procedure.** 2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trials shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may, by law, have directed.

**Nature of treason and** SECT. III.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.



2. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted. how provided.

## ARTICLE IV.

SECT. I.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof. Guaranty of state rights,

SECT. II.—1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states. and equalization.

2. A person, charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having the jurisdiction of the crime. State requisition

3. No person, held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law, or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due. and surrender

SECT. III.—1. New states may be admitted by the congress into this Union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the congress. New states.

2. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory, or other property, belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state. and public lands.

SECT. IV.—The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive, (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence. Protection of form of government.

## ARTICLE V.

The congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be pre- Amendments of the constitution,

posed by the congress: Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall, in any manner, affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrages in the senate

## ARTICLE VI.

1 All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this constitution; and no religious test shall ever be required, as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution, between the states so ratifying the same.

*Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names*

The Constitution, although formed in 1787, was not adopted until 1788, and did not commence its operations until 1789. The number of delegates chosen to this convention was sixty-five, of whom ten did not attend, and sixteen refused to sign the Constitution. The following thirty-nine signed the Constitution:—

*New Hampshire.*—John Langdon, Nicholas Gelman.

*Massachusetts.*—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

*Connecticut.*—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

*New York.*—Alexander Hamilton.

*New Jersey.*—William Livingston, David Brearley, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.

*Pennsylvania.*—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert

Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimmons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.

*Delaware.*—George Read, Gunning Bedford, jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.

*Maryland.*—James M'Henry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.

*Virginia.*—John Blair, James Madison, jr.

*North Carolina.*—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.

*South Carolina.*—John Rutledge, Charles C. Pinkney, Charles Pinkney, Pierce Butler.

*Georgia.*—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS

*To the Constitution of the United States, ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.*

ART. I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the rights of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Religious  
toleration  
  
Rights of  
the press,  
petition.

ART. II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

The  
militia

ART. III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ART. IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Search  
warrant  
and  
seizures

ART. V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process

Present  
ment of  
grand  
juries.

Judicial  
safe-  
guards



of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

**ART. VI.**—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

**ART. VII.**—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact, tried by jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

**ART. VIII.**—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**ART. IX.**—The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**ART. X.**—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

**ART. XI.**—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

**ART. XII.**—The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot, for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves ; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as president, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as vice-president ; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to

a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death, or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president—a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person, constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.







Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: April 2010

**PreservationTechnologies**

**A WORLD LEADER IN COLLECTIONS PRESERVATION**

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 482 9

